This BOOK may be kept out TWO WEEK ONLY, and is subject to a fine of FIVE CENTS a day thereafter. It is due on the day indicated below.

12/4
THE EVOLUTION OF MAN

Vol. I.—HUMAN EMBRYOLOGY OR ONTOGENY
THE EMBRYONIC DEVELOPMENT OF THE FACE.

The Evolution of Man V Ed
THE EVOLUTION OF MAN

A POPULAR SCIENTIFIC STUDY

LIBRARY

A. AND M. COLLEGE

ERNST HAECKEL

Vol. I.

HUMAN EMBRYOLOGY OR ONTOGENY

Translated from the Fifth (enlarged) Edition by JOSEPH McCABE

New York: G. P. PUTNAM'S SONS
London: WATTS & CO.
1905
CONTENTS

List of Plates - - - - - - - - - vii
List of Figures in Text - - - - - - - - ix
List of Tables - - - - - - - - - - - xiii
Preface to Fourth Edition - - - - - - - - xv
Preface to Fifth Edition - - - - - - - - xxi

Vol. I.—EMBRYOLOGY (ONTOGENY)

CHAP.
I. The Fundamental Law of Organic Evolution - - - - 1
II. The Older Embryology - - - - - - - 21
III. Modern Embryology - - - - - - - 37
IV. The Older Phylogeny - - - - - - - 59
V. The Modern Science of Evolution - - - - 75
VI. The Ovum and the Amëra - - - - - - 96
VII. Conception - - - - - - - 124
VIII. The Gastraea Theory - - - - - - 145
IX. The Gastrulation of the Vertebrate - - - 174
X. The Cælom Theory - - - - - - - 216
XI. The Vertebrate Character of Man - - - 246
XII. Embryonic Shield and Germinative Area - - - 273
XIII. Dorsal Body and Ventral Body - - - - 294
XIV. The Articulation of the Body - - - - 330
XV. Foetal Membranes and Circulation - - - 361
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plate</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Embryology of the Human Face</td>
<td>Chapter XXV., Vol. II.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Gastrulation of Holoblastic Animals</td>
<td>p. 170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Gastrulation of Mesoblastic Animals</td>
<td>p. 170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Sandal-Shaped Embryos of Three Sauropsids</td>
<td>p. 303</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>Sandal-Shaped Embryos of Three Mammals</td>
<td>p. 303</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI</td>
<td>Transverse Sections of Vertebrate Embryos</td>
<td>pp. 326-329</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII</td>
<td>Longitudinal Sections of Vertebrate Embryos</td>
<td>pp. 326-329</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII</td>
<td>Embryos of Three Reptiles</td>
<td>p. 359</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX</td>
<td>Embryos of Three Sauropsids</td>
<td>p. 359</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>Embryos of Three Sauropsids</td>
<td>p. 359</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XI</td>
<td>Embryos of Three Mammals</td>
<td>p. 359</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XII</td>
<td>Embryos of Four Mammals</td>
<td>p. 359</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIII</td>
<td>Embryos of Four Mammals</td>
<td>p. 359</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIV</td>
<td>Human Embryos From the Fourth to the Eighth Week</td>
<td>pp. 304-305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XV</td>
<td>Human Embryo in the Foetal Membranes</td>
<td>p. 411</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XVI</td>
<td>Human Embryo, Five Months Old, in the Foetal Membranes</td>
<td>p. 411</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIGURE</td>
<td>PAGE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. The human ovum</td>
<td>97</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Stem-cell of one of the echinoderms</td>
<td>99</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Three epithelial cells</td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Five spiny or grooved cells</td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Ten liver cells</td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Nine star-shaped bone-cells</td>
<td>101</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Eleven star-shaped cells</td>
<td>102</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Unfertilised ovum of an echinoderm</td>
<td>103</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Large branching nerve-cell</td>
<td>105</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Blood-cells</td>
<td>107</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Indirect or mitotic cell-division</td>
<td>108</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Mobile cells from the inflamed eye of a frog</td>
<td>110</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Ova of various animals</td>
<td>111</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. The human ovum</td>
<td>112</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Fertilised ovum from the oviduct of a hen</td>
<td>114</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. A creeping ameba</td>
<td>117</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. Division of a unicellular ameba</td>
<td>119</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. Ovum of a sponge</td>
<td>120</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. Blood-cells, or phagocytes</td>
<td>121</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. Spermia or spermatozoa</td>
<td>127</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. Spermatozoa of various animals</td>
<td>128</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. A single human spermatozoon</td>
<td>129</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. Fertilisation of the ovum</td>
<td>130</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24. Unfertilised ovum of an echinoderm</td>
<td>133</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25. Impregnated echinoderm ovum</td>
<td>133</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26. Impregnation of the ovum of a star-fish</td>
<td>135</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27. Impregnation of the ovum of the sea-urchin</td>
<td>136</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28. Stem-cell of a sea-urchin</td>
<td>137</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29. Stem-cell of a hare</td>
<td>143</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30. Gastrula of a coral</td>
<td>150</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31. Gastrula of a gastræad</td>
<td>153</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32. Gastrula of a worm</td>
<td>153</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33. Gastrula of an echinoderm</td>
<td>153</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34. Gastrula of an arthropod</td>
<td>153</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35. Gastrula of a mollusc</td>
<td>153</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36. Gastrula of a vertebrate</td>
<td>153</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37. Gastrula of a lower sponge</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38. Cells from the primary germinal layers</td>
<td>158</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39. Gastrulation of the amphioxus</td>
<td>159</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40. Gastrulation of the amphioxus</td>
<td>160</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41. Cleavage of the frog’s ovum</td>
<td>176</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42. Sections of the fertilised ovum of the toad</td>
<td>179</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43. Embryonic vesicle of the water-salamander</td>
<td>181</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44. Embryonic vesicle of triton</td>
<td>182</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45. Sagittal section of a hooded-embryo of triton</td>
<td>183</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46. Section of the gastrula of triton</td>
<td>183</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47. Segmentation in the lamprey</td>
<td>184</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48. Gastrulation of the lamprey</td>
<td>184</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49. Gastrulation of ceratodus</td>
<td>186</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50. Ovum of a pelagic bony fish</td>
<td>188</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51. Segmentation of a bony fish</td>
<td>189</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52. Discoid gastrula of a bony fish</td>
<td>190</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53. Section of the blastula of a shark</td>
<td>193</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54. Section of the blastula of a shark</td>
<td>194</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55. Mature ovum of a hen</td>
<td>196</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56. Diagram of discoid segmentation</td>
<td>197</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57. Section of the blastula of a hen</td>
<td>199</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58. Germinal disk of the hen’s ovum</td>
<td>199</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59. Section of the germinal disk of a siskin</td>
<td>199</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60. Section of the discoid gastrula of the nightingale</td>
<td>200</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61. Germinal disk of the lizard</td>
<td>202</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62. Ovum of the opossum</td>
<td>204</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63. Blastula of the opossum</td>
<td>205</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64. Blastula of the opossum</td>
<td>206</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
69. Gastrula of the opossum - 206
70. Section of the gastrula of the opossum - 207
71. Stem-cell of the mammal ovum - 208
72. Incipient cleavage of the mammal ovum - 208
73. First segmentation-cells of the mammal ovum - 208
74. Mammal ovum with eight segmentation-cells - 208
75. Gastrula of the placental mammal - 209
76. Gastrula of the hare - 210
77, 78. Diagram of the four secondary germ-layers - 219
79, 80. Ccelomula of sagitta - 225
81. Section of a young sagitta - 226
82, 83. Section of amphioxus-larvae - 227
84, 85. Section of amphioxus-embryo - 228
86, 87. Chordula of the amphioxus - 230
88, 89. Chordula of the amphibia - 230
90, 91. Section of ccelomula-embryos of vertebrates - 233
92, 93. Section of ccelomula-triton - 234
94. Section of three triton-embryos - 235
95. Section of the chordula-embryo of a bird - 236
96. Section of the vertebraella-embryo of a bird - 237
97, 98. Section of the primitive streak of the chick - 238
99. Section of the primitive groove of a hare - 239
100. Section of the primitive mouth of a human embryo - 240
101-105. The ideal primitive vertebrate - 253
106. Instances of redundant mammary glands - 266
107. A Greek gynecomast - 268
108. Severance of the discoid mammal embryo - 277
109, 110. The visceral embryonic vesicle of a hare - 281
111. Four entodermic cells - 282
112. Two entodermic cells - 282
113-117. Ovum of a hare - 285
118. Round germinative area of the hare - 286
119. Oval area - 286
120. Oval germinal disk of the hare - 288
121. Pear-shaped germinal shield of the hare - 288
122. Section of the gastrula of four vertebrates - 291
123. Embryonic vesicle of a hare - 295
124. Oval embryonic shield of the hare - 295
125. Dorsal shield of a hare-embryo - 296
126. Embryonic shield of a hare - 297
127. Section of the ccelomula of amphioxus - 297
128. Section of the chordula of a frog - 298
129. Section of a frog-embryo - 298
130, 131. Dorsal shield of the chick - 299
132. Section of the hinder end of a chick - 300
133. Germinal area of the hare - 300
134. Embryo of the opossum - 301
135. Sandal-shaped embryonic shield of a hare - 301
136. Human embryo at the sandal-stage - 301
137. Sandal-shaped embryonic shield of a hare - 302
138. Sandal-shaped embryonic shield of an opossum - 304
139. Section of the embryonic shield of a chick - 306
140. Section of the embryonic disk of a chick - 306
141. Section of the embryonic shield of a chick - 307
142. Sections of the embryonic disk of the higher vertebrates - 309
143-147. Sections of the maturing mammal embryo and its envelopes - 310
148-151. Sections of chick-embryos - 314
152. Section of the embryo of a chick - 317
153. Section of the fore-half of a chick-embryo - 318
154. Section of a human embryo - 320
155. Section of a human embryo - 321
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIGURE</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>150.</td>
<td>Section of a shark embryo</td>
<td>321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>157.</td>
<td>Section of a duck embryo</td>
<td>322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>158-160.</td>
<td>Embryonic disk of the chick</td>
<td>334</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>161.</td>
<td>Embryo of the amphioxus</td>
<td>336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>162, 163.</td>
<td>Embryo of the amphioxus</td>
<td>337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>164-166.</td>
<td>Embryo of the amphioxus</td>
<td>338</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>167.</td>
<td>Section of an amphioxus embryo</td>
<td>339</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>168, 169.</td>
<td>Section of shark embryos</td>
<td>340</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>170.</td>
<td>Frontal section of a triton embryo</td>
<td>341</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>171.</td>
<td>Section of a chick embryo</td>
<td>341</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>172.</td>
<td>Section of a chick embryo</td>
<td>342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>173.</td>
<td>The third cervical vertebra</td>
<td>344</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>174.</td>
<td>The sixth dorsal vertebra</td>
<td>344</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>175.</td>
<td>The second lumbar vertebra</td>
<td>344</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>176.</td>
<td>Section of the trunk of a primitive vertebrate</td>
<td>347</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>177.</td>
<td>Section of the primitive vertebrate</td>
<td>348</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>178.</td>
<td>Head of a shark embryo</td>
<td>350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>179, 180.</td>
<td>Head of a chick embryo</td>
<td>350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>181.</td>
<td>Head of a dog embryo</td>
<td>350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>182.</td>
<td>Human embryo of the fourth week</td>
<td>352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>183.</td>
<td>Section of shoulder of chick embryo</td>
<td>353</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>184.</td>
<td>Section of pelvic region of chick embryo</td>
<td>354</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>185.</td>
<td>Development of the lizard's legs</td>
<td>355</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>186.</td>
<td>Human embryo, five weeks old</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>187-189.</td>
<td>Embryos of the bat</td>
<td>357</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>190.</td>
<td>Sandal-shaped human embryo</td>
<td>364</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>191.</td>
<td>Human embryos from second to fifteenth week</td>
<td>365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>192.</td>
<td>Human embryo of fourth week</td>
<td>366</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>193.</td>
<td>Human embryo of fifth week</td>
<td>366</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>194.</td>
<td>Section of tail of a human embryo</td>
<td>368</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195.</td>
<td>Tail of a six-months-old boy</td>
<td>369</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>196.</td>
<td>Human embryo, four weeks old</td>
<td>370</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>197.</td>
<td>Human embryo, five weeks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>198.</td>
<td>Head of Miss Julia Pastrana</td>
<td>370</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>199.</td>
<td>Human ovum (twelve days)</td>
<td>372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200.</td>
<td>Human ovum (ten days)</td>
<td>374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.</td>
<td>Human foetus (ten days)</td>
<td>374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202.</td>
<td>Human ovum (twenty to twenty-two days)</td>
<td>374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>203.</td>
<td>Human foetus (twenty to twenty-two days)</td>
<td>374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>204.</td>
<td>Human embryo of sixteen to eighteen weeks</td>
<td>375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205.</td>
<td>Human embryo of fourth week</td>
<td>376</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>206.</td>
<td>Human embryo of fourth week</td>
<td>376</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>207.</td>
<td>Human embryo with its membranes</td>
<td>377</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>208.</td>
<td>Section of embryo of a chick</td>
<td>377</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>209.</td>
<td>Embryonic organs of the mammal</td>
<td>378</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210.</td>
<td>Embryo of a dog</td>
<td>379</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>211.</td>
<td>Embryo of a dog</td>
<td>380</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>212.</td>
<td>Section of the pregnant human womb</td>
<td>381</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>213-215.</td>
<td>Embryos of the kalawet-gibbon</td>
<td>382</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>216.</td>
<td>Male embryo of the simang-gibbon</td>
<td>383</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>217.</td>
<td>Section of pregnant human womb</td>
<td>384</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>218.</td>
<td>Human foetus, twelve weeks old</td>
<td>385</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>219.</td>
<td>Mature human foetus</td>
<td>386</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>220.</td>
<td>Section of the lower half of the trunk of a woman in advanced pregnancy</td>
<td>387</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>221-225.</td>
<td>Sections of the maturing mammal embryo</td>
<td>389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>226.</td>
<td>Section of the embryo of a chick</td>
<td>391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>227.</td>
<td>Section of the embryo of a chick</td>
<td>391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>228.</td>
<td>Section of the embryo of a chick</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>229.</td>
<td>Human embryo (fourteen to eighteen days)</td>
<td>393</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>230.</td>
<td>Section of the head of a mammal embryo</td>
<td>394</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>231.</td>
<td>Vitelline vessels in the germinative area of a chick embryo</td>
<td>395</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>232.</td>
<td>Boat-shaped embryo of the dog</td>
<td>396</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>233.</td>
<td>Embryonic shield of a hare</td>
<td>397</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIGURE</td>
<td>PAGE</td>
<td>FIGURE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>234</td>
<td>Embryonic shield of a hare</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>235</td>
<td>Lar or white-handed gibbon</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>236</td>
<td>Young orang</td>
<td>401</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>237</td>
<td>Wild orang</td>
<td>402</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>238</td>
<td>Head of an old male orang</td>
<td>403</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>239</td>
<td>The bald-headed chimpanzee</td>
<td>404</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LIST OF GENETIC TABLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Composition of the organic cell</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Differences in segmentation and gastrulation</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Four embryonal stages in animals</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Chief variations in segmentation</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Phylogeny of vertebrate gastrulation</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Four types of vertebrate gastrulation</td>
<td>242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Names of the germinal layers</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Origin and function of the fundamental organs of the chordula</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Fundamental organs and body-cavities of the chordula</td>
<td>245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Four chief groups of the metazoa</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Chief organs of the provertebrates</td>
<td>293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Composition of the amniote embryo</td>
<td>324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Composition of the vertebrate body</td>
<td>360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Organisation and articulation of the vertebrates and articulates</td>
<td>410</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Embryonic plates of the vertebrates</td>
<td>410</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
When the first edition of this work appeared in 1874, and the third edition followed three years afterwards, the circumstances of biology were very different from what they are to-day. It is true that the struggle for the recognition of the great truths of science, which Darwin had initiated by the publication of his epoch-making work in 1859, had already been decided in his favour on the main issue. But the most important consequence of the new evolutionary doctrine (now firmly established for the first time through his theory of selection)—that is to say, its application to man—still met with the most spirited and widespread opposition.

I had in my *Generelle Morphologie*, published in 1866, made the first attempt to trace the series of man's ancestors, and to indicate the several stages of animal organisation which led up to his appearance; and I had continued this task in my *History of Creation*, published in 1868. The profound importance that the facts of human embryology have in the attempt to construct our ancestral tree became more and more evident to me. A prolonged study of human embryology, and the giving of university lectures on this first base of physical anthropology, emboldened me to attack the difficult task of applying it to the history of our species.

The complete application to man of the first law of biogeny seemed to me the more useful and desirable as the great majority of embryologists at that time knew nothing about it. The only work that dealt comprehensively with human embryology after 1859—namely, Albert Kölliker's widely-circulated *Manual*—took an entirely opposite view; even in the latest edition (1884) the distinguished author adheres to the opinion

---

*Not translated into English.*

xv
that "the laws governing the evolution of living things are still wholly unknown; it is believed that the development took place by abrupt stages rather than by a continuous growth, as the Darwinians imagine."

In opposition to this dualistic idea that was then prevalent on all sides, I attempted in 1874 to obtain a hearing for my monistic conception of the embryological phenomena. I started from the following general principles:

1. There is a direct causal connection between the observed facts of human embryology and the theoretical ancestry of our race, which, for obvious reasons, for the most part lies outside our sphere of observation.

2. This mechanical causal nexus finds its simplest expression in the fundamental law of biogeny: "Ontogeny is a brief and imperfect recapitulation of phylogeny."

3. The phylogenetic process, or the gradual development of man's higher vertebral ancestors through a long series of lower animal forms, is a very complex historical fact, due to a manifold play of heredity and adaptation.

4. Each one of the processes involved depends on the physiological functions of the organism, and can be traced to the action of either reproduction (heredity) or nutrition (adaptation).

5. The fact of human embryology can only be explained as the inheriting of phylogenetic (ancestral) forms, in which the palingenetic phenomena are to be carefully distinguished from the cenogenetic.

6. Only the palingenetic phenomena (that is to say, such reminiscences of earlier stages as the temporary formation of the spinal cord, the primitive kidneys, or the gill-clefts) are of direct interest in the tracing of our animal ancestors, because they are due to the inheritance of adaptive structures in earlier animals.

---

1 Biogeny is the general science of the development of life; ontogeny is the genesis of the individual (or the science dealing with this—embryology); and phylogeny the genesis of the species. Further explanation will be given presently.—Trans.

2 Palingenesis = "repeated" or inherited evolutionary phenomena; cenogenesis = "foreign," or more recently acquired phenomena.—Trans.
On the other hand, the cenogenetic phenomena (such as, for instance, the embryonic formation of the foetal membranes, the allantois, the dual structure of the heart, etc.) have only a subordinate and indirect interest for phylogeny, as they have arisen later by the adaptation of the foetus to its embryonic conditions.

The many gaps in phylogeny, which are due to the lack of empirical material in embryology, may be remedied for the most part from paleontology and comparative anatomy.

The application of these general principles of biogeny to the particular case of the evolution of man, as I first attempted it in my Anthropogenie, was bound, of course—being the earliest independent advance into a fresh field of investigation—to be imperfect. At the most it could only hope to attract attention to this new inquiry, and to induce other students to test the results in their special provinces. When we compare the condition of our science at that time with its situation to-day, I think we must admit that my Anthropogenie fully achieved its aim in this respect. Most men of science who have since worked in the field of comparative evolution are convinced to-day that the two chief sections of it which I was the first to distinguish—Ontogeny and Phylogeny—have a causal connection of the closest character, and that the one cannot be understood apart from the other. The great majority of the useful results which their sedulous and searching inquiries have yielded can only be thoroughly appreciated when we recognise that the facts of ontogeny have found an explanation in phylogeny. Twenty-five years ago, when my Generelle Morphologie appeared, human embryology was generally looked upon as a sort of fairyland, in which a number of most extraordinary and enigmatic processes were linked together without any visible ground in the shape of causal connection. To-day, on the contrary, we see in this chain of wonderful processes an historical document of the first importance, a chapter of the story of creation, which gives us most valuable information as to the chief features of the bodily structure and mode of life of our animal ancestors.
The brilliant progress that comparative embryology has made during the last few decades is often attributed to extrinsic considerations—to the great number of fresh workers in this field of research, and to the improvement in the technical methods of investigation and the instruments used in the study. Certainly we must not fail to appreciate these advantages, especially the improvement of the microscope and microtome; but the chief cause of progress has been the application of phylogenetic methods. It is to this we owe that immense enlargement of our intellectual horizon which enables us to regard the whole story of organic life, from the earliest beginning to the present day, as a vast mechanical process. It is reserved for phylogeny "to reduce the constructive forces of the animal body to the general forces or life-tendencies of the universe." No sooner does the science of the evolution of species shed its light on the dark puzzles of embryology than the true laws of development take definite shape.

It is becoming clearer every year that this alone is the right path; that the facts of ontogeny can only be really explained by the theories of phylogeny. Moreover, the number and importance of the facts which we borrow from two other fields of research, the cognate sciences of paleontology and comparative anatomy, also grow every year. The profound and intimate connection of the historical documents furnished by these two sciences with those of ontogeny is growing clearer and more impressive the more we penetrate to these three sources of history. The need for using the three classes of documents in equal measure and with discrimination in the tracing of our ancestral tree is more evident every day.

These leading principles, which I had presented and followed in the first edition of the Anthropogenie, have been applied far more thoroughly and comprehensively in the fourth edition, as our biological knowledge has been greatly enlarged in all three fields of inquiry during the last fifteen years. In thus recognising and appreciating these general biogenetic principles, I find myself completely opposed to the
purely descriptive and so-called "exact" method of embryological study, which takes the careful description of the facts of the science to be its sole proper purpose. When this "descriptive embryology" rises, in spite of its restriction, to an explanation of the facts it describes, it assumes the proud title of "physiological embryology." It fancies it has found the real mechanical causes of the facts of embryology when it has traced them to simple physical processes, such as the bending and folding of elastic plates, the hollowing of vesicles, and so forth.

The chief defect of this "exact" or physiological—it would be better to say, "pseudo-mechanical"—method in embryology is seen in its attempt to reduce most complex historical processes to simple physical phenomena. When, for instance, the spinal cord of the vertebrate embryo severs itself from the general envelope, or when the five cerebral vesicles are formed by transverse folds at its bulbous upper extremity, it might seem to a superficial observer that these are simple physical processes. But we do not really understand them until we trace them to their true phylogenetic causes, and see that each of these apparently simple processes is the recapitulation of a long series of historical changes (modified by being inherited in a concentrated form), for the production of which in the race-history of our animal ancestors a vast number of instances of adaptation and heredity have co-operated during millions of years. Naturally, each of these physiological processes has in turn been determined by mechanical causes, or by physical and chemical conditions; but these are far removed from direct and exact observation, as they are "pre-historic" phenomena of the remote past.

I have already, in my essays on Aims and Methods of the Modern Science of Evolution (1875) and The Origin and Development of Animal Tissues (1884), pointed out the chief errors of this pretentious "mechanical science of embryology," and shown its radical opposition to our phylogenetic method. Surprise has often been expressed that so superficial a method, directed solely to the external appearance of the embryonic
processes, and ignoring their historic nature, should have attained such considerable results. It is due mainly to the restriction of its aim. This narrowness of the pseudo-mechanical school is, in fact, three-fold. Firstly, it restricts itself in the use of its empirical material, as it only uses one of the three great documents—ontogeny—and ignores the other two—paleontology and comparative anatomy. Secondly, it restricts itself in its scientific method, in assuming as its sole aim the exact determination, with rule and compasses, of the embryonic forms. And, thirdly, it restricts itself in its philosophic insight, since it excludes all comparison with cognate phenomena and all correlation of the parts with the whole. However, this concentration—in itself a most prolific source of error—is welcomed in many quarters to-day, at a time when the narrowest specialism obtains its greatest triumphs, when the study of history is reversed, and when every thoughtful scientist who looks to the connection of phenomena is tabooed as "a natural philosopher." For all that, the science of evolution is an historical, and not an "exact," inquiry.

Convinced that this method of anthropogenetic research is the method of the future, I conclude with the hope that this enlarged fourth edition of the *Anthropogenie* may, like its predecessors, contribute towards the enkindling of a deeper interest in the most important basis of anthropology. "Know thyself": that is the source of all wisdom. But it is impossible for a man to have real self-knowledge unless he is acquainted with the story of his development.

Ernst Haeckel.

Jena, August 18th, 1891.
Nearly thirty years have elapsed since the appearance of the first edition of the *Anthropogenie*, and twelve years since the publication of the fourth edition. In the long interval scientific research into the subject of the work has made extraordinary progress, not only in the great enlargement of the field of inquiry and the multiplication of workers, but also by the improvement of methods and greater thoroughness in the treatment of the most important questions. Hence I found it no light task to undertake a new issue of my work after such a lapse of time, and in advanced age. But, after long hesitation, I was moved to do so by the following considerations.

My *Anthropogenie* was in a twofold sense a "first attempt" when it appeared in 1874. In the first place, I approached the difficult and hitherto neglected task of applying to man the chief law of biogeny in all its force, and of giving a hypothetical sketch of the course of his ancestral development founded on the observed facts of embryology. But I also made the still more difficult attempt to render these complicated embryological facts, and the cognate theories of phylogeny, intelligible, not merely to the small circle of my scientific colleagues, but also, by a popular presentation, to the general public. In both respects my work has remained for thirty years the only one of its kind; and on this account I deemed it my duty, in spite of its great defects, of which I am not unconscious, to undertake a revision of the book.

Many disapproved of the presentation of so difficult and delicate a subject to the general reader. A number of my colleagues expressed the opinion that it was impossible and undesirable to give a popular treatment of so obscure and unfamiliar a study as human embryology; and that it was
still more regrettable to associate with these facts of embryology the airy and precarious hypotheses of phylogeny. This academic view, which is widely shared in learned circles, was extended to the popularisation of the whole science of evolution and the monistic conception of life which is founded thereon. I have never been able to accept this opinion of the German professors; I share, on the contrary, the view of the learned among our neighbours, that the whole educated world has a right to be acquainted with the most important advances of science, even when their general results are only matters of theory and are opposed to the prevailing beliefs. It is enough to quote the instance of geology. With this conviction I undertook, in my History of Creation, in 1868, the difficult task of introducing the modern science of evolution, founded by Darwin, to the general reader, and to win for phylogeny the general recognition which its sister-science, geology, had long enjoyed. The immense correspondence I have had in connection with the ten editions of this book has proved to me that it met a real want on the part of the public. The same may be said of my work, The Riddle of the Universe, in which I gathered together the conclusions of fifty years of study in 1899. I attribute the remarkable success of this "popular study of the monistic philosophy" to no special merit of my book, but to the eagerness of the majority of educated people to acquaint themselves with the results of progressive science and cast off the superstitions of conventional theology and metaphysics.

Interest in the embryology of plants and animals—that is, in the experimental study of these mysterious processes—has increased during the last ten years to an extent that was undreamt-of fifty years ago. Every year a number of specialist publications are issued which deal with one or other subject in this very attractive and most fruitful field of research. An introduction to this wonderful study, once so remote and exclusive, is provided by well-illustrated manuals and text-books. Unfortunately, many of these works show a lack of general morphological (or anatomical) knowledge, and of the indispensable method of comparison with related
phenomena—not only of "comparative embryology," but also "comparative anatomy"; that is to say, of a discerning and philosophical study of the complicated conditions of the whole series of forms, or the stem, to which the organism in question belongs. It is also necessary to have a thorough preparatory training in classification, or an acquaintance with the relations of affinity, on the ground of which our "natural system" arranges the classes, orders, families, and so on. I have shown in my Systematische Phylogenie (1894–6—three volumes) how profound an insight this "phyletic classification" gives us into the history of the stem.

Paleontology is even more neglected than comparative anatomy and classification by most of our modern embryologists. Many of them are totally ignorant of it. Nevertheless, the fossils, the historical succession and systematic arrangement of which are taught in paleontology, are just as important documents for the history of the stem as the embryos which are taken by these one-sided embryologists to be the only fitting subject of research. We must, it is true, grant that most of the paleontologists are equally narrow; they commonly lack the necessary preliminary training in comparative anatomy and embryology which is indispensable for the correct appreciation of the fossilised remains and their phylogenetic significance.

It was my chief and constant care, in the heavy task of preparing this fifth edition of my Anthropogenie, to avoid this narrowness, and to use all three documents bearing on our ancestral history in even greater force and harmony than in the preceding editions. Paleontology, comparative anatomy, and ontogeny must complete each other's work, and give to the historical hypotheses of phylogeny that firmness and fullness which they are bound to secure. In order to make this work accessible to a wider class of readers, I have considerably increased the number of illustrations in the present edition. The number of plates (originally twelve) is now thirty, and the illustrations in the text have been

¹ Not translated into English.
increased from 210 to 512; the number of genealogical tables is raised from thirty-six to sixty. The text has also been much extended; the forty-six sheets of the first edition, and fifty-seven of the fourth, have now grown to sixty-two. I have, nevertheless, left unchanged the general arrangement of the thirty chapters. I must express my gratitude to the house of Wilhelm Engelmann for the excellent production of the work and assistance in preparing its many illustrations; and to my pupil, Heinrich Schmidt, for his aid in correcting proofs and revision of the index.

To speak of the alterations in detail, most of the chapters have been substantially improved, and some of them have been entirely re-written. I thought it necessary to include at least the most important advances that have been made in each branch from the vast and increasing literature of the subject. I fear that many errors may have been overlooked. That was inevitable in view of the intricacy of the work and the defects of the craftsman. Yet I hope the book will attain its chief purpose of introducing the thoughtful reader into the great and wonderful realm of the evolution of man, and stimulate him to reflect on its significance. I would include especially teachers, doctors, and students, among these "thoughtful readers"; but I appeal also to the many educated men and women who desire to know the full truth as to the origin and development of their individual being and the place of man in nature.

Ernst Haeckel.

Jena, September 7th, 1903.
CHAPTER I.

THE FUNDAMENTAL LAW OF ORGANIC EVOLUTION

General importance of the science of human evolution. Ignorance of it among educated people. The two sections of the science of evolution: Ontogeny or embryology, and Phylogeny or stem-history. Causal connection between the two sections. Phylogeny is the cause of ontogeny. Ontogeny as a summary or recapitulation of Phylogeny. Incompleteness of this summary. The chief law of biogeny. Heredity and adaptation are the two constructive functions, or the mechanical causes, of evolution. Exclusion of final causes. Sole validity of mechanical causes. Supplanting of the dualistic by the monistic philosophy. Great importance of the facts of embryology for the monistic philosophy. Palingenesis and cenogenesis. Evolution of structure and function. Necessary connection of physiogeny and morphogeny. Evolutionary science hitherto an achievement of morphology, not physiology. The evolution of the central nervous system (the brain and spinal cord) proceeds step by step with that of the psychic or mental life.

The field of natural phenomena into which I would introduce my readers in the following chapters has a quite peculiar place in the broad realm of scientific inquiry. There is no object of investigation that touches man more closely, and the knowledge of which should be more acceptable to him, than his own frame. But among all the various branches of the natural history of mankind, or anthropology, the story of his development by natural means must excite the most lively interest. It gives us the key of the great world-riddles at which the human mind has been working for thousands of years. The problem of the nature of man, or the question of man's place in nature, and the cognate inquiries as to the past, the earliest history, the present situation, and the future of humanity—all these most important questions are directly and intimately connected with that branch of study which we call the science of the

1 The English works recommended by Professor Haeckel are: Chap. xiii. of Darwin's Origin of Species, Spencer's Principles of Biology, and Haeckel's Riddle of the Universe.—TRANS.
evolution of man, or, in one word, "Anthropogeny" (the genesis of man). Yet it is an astonishing but incontestable fact that the science of the evolution of man does not even yet form part of the scheme of general education. In fact, educated people even in our day are for the most part quite ignorant of the important truths and remarkable phenomena which anthropogeny teaches us.

As an illustration of this curious state of things, it may be pointed out that most of what are considered to be "educated" people do not know that every human being is developed from an egg, or ovum, and that this egg is one simple cell, like any other plant or animal egg. They are equally ignorant that in the course of the development of this tiny, round egg-cell there is first formed a body that is totally different from the human frame, and has not the remotest resemblance to it. Most of them have never seen such a human foetus or embryo in the earlier period of its development, and do not know that it is quite indistinguishable from other animal embryos. At first the embryo is no more than a globular group of cells, then it becomes a simple hollow sphere, the wall of which is composed of a layer of cells. Later it approaches very closely, at one period, to the anatomic structure of the lanceolot, afterwards to that of a fish, and again to the typical build of the amphibia and mammals. As it continues to develop a form appears which is like those we find at the lowest stage of mammal-life (such as the duck-bills), then a form that resembles the marsupials, and only at a late stage a form that has a resemblance to the ape; until at last the definite human form emerges and closes the series of transformations. These suggestive facts are, as I said, still almost unknown to the general public—so completely unknown that, if one casually mentions them, they are called into doubt or denied outright as fairy-tales. Everybody knows that the butterfly emerges from the pupa, and the pupa from a quite different thing called a larva, and the larva from the butterfly's egg. But few besides medical men are aware that man, in the course of his individual formation, passes through a series of transformations which are not less
surprising and wonderful than the familiar metamorphoses of the butterfly.

The mere description of these remarkable changes through which man passes during his embryonic life should arouse considerable interest. But the mind will experience a far keener satisfaction when we trace these curious facts to their causes, and when we learn to behold in them natural phenomena which are of the highest importance throughout the whole field of human knowledge. They throw light first of all on the "natural history of creation," then on psychology, or "the science of the soul," and through this on the whole of philosophy. And as the general results of every branch of inquiry are summed up in philosophy, all the sciences come in turn to be touched and influenced more or less by the study of the evolution of man.

But when I say that I propose to present here the most important features of these phenomena and trace them to their causes, I take the term, and I interpret my task, in a very much wider sense than is usual. The lectures which have been delivered on this subject in the universities during the last half-century are almost exclusively adapted to medical men. Certainly, the medical man has the greatest interest in studying the origin of the human body, with which he is daily occupied. But I must not give here this special description of the embryonic processes such as it has hitherto been given, as most of my readers have not studied anatomy, and are not likely to be entrusted with the care of the adult organism. I must content myself with giving some parts of the subject only in general outline, and must not enter upon all the marvellous, but very intricate and not easily described, details that are found in the story of the development of the human frame. To understand these fully a knowledge of anatomy is needed. I will endeavour to be as plain as possible in dealing with this branch of science. Indeed, a sufficient general idea of the course of the embryonic development of man can be obtained without going too closely into the anatomic details. I trust we may be able to arouse the same interest in this delicate field of inquiry as has been
excited already in other branches of science; though we shall meet more obstacles here than elsewhere.

The story of the evolution of man, as it has hitherto been expounded to medical students, has usually been confined to embryology—or, more correctly, ontogeny—or the science of the development of the individual human organism. But this is really only the first part of our task, the first half of the story of the evolution of man in that wider sense in which we understand it here. We must add as the second half—as another and not less important and interesting branch of the science of the evolution of the human stem—phylogeny: this may be described as the science of the evolution of the various animal forms from which the human organism has been developed in the course of countless ages. Everybody now knows of the great scientific activity that was occasioned by the publication of Darwin's *Origin of Species* in 1859. The chief direct consequence of this publication was to provoke a fresh inquiry into the origin of the human race, and this has proved beyond question our gradual evolution from the lower species. We give the name of "Phylogeny" to the science which describes this ascent of man from the lower ranks of the animal world. The chief source that it draws upon for facts is "Ontogeny," or embryology, the science of the development of the individual organism. Moreover, it derives a good deal of support from paleontology, or the science of fossil remains, and even more from comparative anatomy, or morphology.

These two branches of our science—one on the one side ontogeny or embryology, and on the other phylogeny, or the science of race-evolution—are most vitally connected. The one cannot be understood without the other. It is only when the two branches fully co-operate and supplement each other that "Biogeny" (or the science of the genesis of life in the widest sense) attains to the rank of a philosophic science. The connection between them is not external and superficial, but profound, intrinsic, and causal. This is a discovery made by recent research, and it is most clearly and correctly expressed in the comprehensive law which I have called
"the fundamental law of organic evolution," or "the fundamental law of biogeny." This general law, to which we shall find ourselves constantly recurring, and on the recognition of which depends one's whole insight into the story of evolution, may be briefly expressed in the phrase: "The history of the foetus is a recapitulation of the history of the race"; or, in other words, "Ontogeny is a recapitulation of phylogeny." It may be more fully stated as follows: The series of forms through which the individual organism passes during its development from the ovum to the complete bodily structure is a brief, condensed repetition of the long series of forms which the animal ancestors of the said organism, or the ancestral forms of the species, have passed through from the earliest period of organic life down to the present day.

The causal character of the relation which connects embryology with stem-history is due to the action of heredity and adaptation. When we have rightly understood these, and recognised their great importance in the formation of organisms, we can go a step further and say: Phylogenesis is the mechanical cause of ontogenesis.1 In other words, the development of the stem, or race, is the cause, in accordance with the physiological laws of heredity and adaptation, of all the changes which appear in a condensed form in the evolution of the foetus.

The chain of manifold animal forms which represent the ancestry of each higher organism, or even of man, according to the theory of descent, always form a connected whole. We may designate this uninterruptcd series of forms with the letters of the alphabet: A, B, C, D, E, etc., to Z. In apparent contradiction to what I have said, the story of the development of the individual, or the ontogeny of most organisms, only offers to the observer a part of these forms;
so that the defective series of embryonic forms would run: A, B, D, F, H, K, M, etc.; or, in other cases, B, D, H, L, M, N, etc. Here, then, as a rule, several of the evolutionary forms of the original series have fallen out. Moreover, we often find—to continue with our illustration from the alphabet—one or other of the original letters of the ancestral series represented by corresponding letters from a different alphabet. Thus, instead of the Roman B and D, we often have the Greek B and Δ. In this case the text of the biogenetic law has been corrupted, just as it had been abbreviated in the preceding case. But, in spite of all this, the series of ancestral forms remains the same, and we are in a position to discover its original complexion.

In reality, there is always a certain parallel between the two evolutionary series. But it is obscured from the fact that in the embryonic succession much is wanting that certainly existed in the earlier ancestral succession. If the parallel of the two series were complete, and if this great fundamental law affirming the causal nexus between ontogeny and phylogeny in the proper sense of the word were directly demonstrable, we should only have to determine, by means of the microscope and the dissecting knife, the series of forms through which the fertilised ovum passes in its development; we should then have before us a complete picture of the remarkable series of forms which our animal ancestors have successively assumed from the dawn of organic life down to the appearance of man. But such a repetition of the ancestral history by the individual in its embryonic life is very rarely complete. We do not often find our full alphabet. In most cases the correspondence is very imperfect, being greatly distorted and falsified by causes which we will consider later. We are thus, for the most part, unable to determine in detail, from the study of its embryology, all the different shapes which an organism’s ancestors have presented; we usually—and especially in the case of the human foetus—encounter many gaps. It is true that we can fill up most of these gaps satisfactorily with the help of comparative anatomy, but we cannot do so from direct embryological
observation. Hence it is important that we find a large number of lower animal forms to be still represented in the course of man's embryonic development. In these cases we may draw our conclusions with the utmost security as to the nature of the ancestral form from the features of the form which the embryo momentarily assumes.

To give a few examples, we can infer from the fact that the human ovum is a simple cell that the first ancestor of our species was a tiny unicellular being, something like the amœba. In the same way, we know, from the fact that the human foetus consists, at the first, of two simple cell-layers (the gastrula), that the gastræa, a form with two such layers, was certainly in the line of our ancestry. A later human embryonic form (the chordula) points just as clearly to a worm-like ancestor (the prochordonia), the nearest living relation of which is found among the actual ascidia. To this succeeds a most important embryonic stage (acrania), in which our headless foetus presents, in the main, the structure of the amphioxus. But we can only indirectly and approximately, with the aid of comparative anatomy and ontogeny, conjecture what lower forms enter into the chain of our ancestry between the gastræa and the chordula, and between this and the amphioxus. In the course of the historical development (by means of heredity in a condensed form) many intermediate structures have gradually fallen out, which must certainly have been represented in our ancestry. But, in spite of these many, and sometimes very appreciable, gaps, there is no contradiction between the two successions. In fact, it is the chief purpose of this work to prove the real harmony and the original parallelism of the two. I hope to show, on a substantial basis of facts, that we can draw most important conclusions as to our genealogical tree from the actual and easily-demonstrable series of embryonic changes. We shall then be in a position to form a general idea of the wealth of animal forms which have figured in the direct line of our ancestry in the lengthy history of organic life.

In this phylogenetic appreciation of the facts of embryology we must, of course, take particular care to distinguish
sharply and clearly between the primitive, palingenetic (or ancestral) evolutionary processes and those due to cenogenesis. By palingenetic processes, or embryonic recapitulations, we understand all those phenomena in the development of the individual which are transmitted from one generation to another by heredity, and which, on that account, allow us to draw direct inferences as to corresponding structures in the development of the species. On the other hand, we give the name of cenogenetic processes, or embryonic variations, to all those phenomena in the foetal development that cannot be traced to inheritance from earlier species, but are due to the adaptation of the foetus, or the infant-form, to certain conditions of its embryonic development. These cenogenetic phenomena are foreign or later additions; they allow us to draw no direct inference whatever as to corresponding processes in our ancestral history, but rather hinder us from doing so.

This careful discrimination between the primary or palingenetic processes and the secondary or cenogenetic is of great importance for the purposes of the scientific history of a species, which has to draw conclusions from the available facts of embryology, comparative anatomy, and paleontology, as to the processes in the formation of the species in the remote past. It is of the same importance to the student of evolution as the careful distinction between genuine and spurious texts in the works of an ancient writer, or the purging of the real text from interpolations and alterations, is for the student of philology. It is true that this distinction has not yet been fully appreciated by many scientists. For my part, I regard it as the first condition for forming any just idea of the evolutionary process, and I believe that we must, in accordance with it, divide embryology into two sections—palingenesis, or the science of repetitive forms; and cenogenesis, or the science of supervening structures.

1 Palingenesis = new birth, or re-incarnation (palin = again, genesis or genea = development); hence its application to the phenomena which are recapitulated by heredity from earlier ancestral forms. Cenogenesis = foreign or negligible development (kenos and genea); hence, those phenomena which come later in the story of life to disturb the inherited structure, by a fresh adaptation to environment. — Trans.
To give at once a few examples from the science of man's origin in illustration of this important distinction, I may instance the following processes in the embryology of man, and of all the higher vertebrates, as *palingenetetic*: the formation of the two primary germinal layers and of the primitive gut, the undivided structure of the dorsal nerve-tube, the appearance of a simple axial rod between the medullary tube and the gut, the temporary formation of the gill-clefts and arches, the primitive kidneys, and so on. All these, and many other important structures, have clearly been transmitted by a steady heredity from the early ancestors of the mammal, and are, therefore, direct indications of the presence of similar structures in the history of the stem. On the other hand, this is certainly not the case with the following embryonic changes, which we must describe as *cenogenetic processes*: the formation of the yolk-sac, the allantois, the placenta, the amnion, the serolemma, and the chorion—or, generally speaking, the various fetal membranes and the corresponding changes in the blood vessels. Further instances are: the dual structure of the heart cavity, the temporary division of the plates of the primitive vertebrae and lateral plates, the secondary closing of the ventral and intestinal walls, the formation of the navel, and so on. All these and many other phenomena are certainly not traceable to similar structures in any earlier and completely-developed ancestral form, but have arisen simply by adaptation to the peculiar conditions of embryonic life (within the fetal membranes). In view of these facts, we may now give the following more precise expression to our chief law of biogeny:—The evolution of the foetus (or *ontogenesis*) is a condensed and abbreviated recapitulation of the evolution of the stem (or *phylogenetesis*); and this recapitulation is the more complete in proportion as the original development (or *palingenetesis*) is preserved by a constant heredity; on the other hand, it becomes less complete in proportion as a varying adaptation to new conditions increases the disturbing factors in the development (or *cenogenesis*).
The cenogenetic alterations or distortions of the original palingenetic course of development take the form, as a rule, of a gradual displacement of the phenomena, which is slowly effected by adaptation to the changed conditions of embryonic existence during the course of thousands of years. This displacement may take place as regards either the locality or the time of a phenomenon. The first is called heterotopism, the second heterochronism.

Heterotopisms, or variations in locality, affect, in the first place, the cells, or elementary parts of which the organs are composed; but they also affect the organs themselves. Thus, for instance, the sexual glands in the human embryo, and most of the higher animals, arise out of the middle germinal layer. On the other hand, the comparative embryology of the lower animals shows us that originally they did not arise from this, but from one of the primary germinal layers. However, the germ-cells have gradually changed their position, and passed over at so early a period from their original situation into the middle layer that they now seem really to arise from it. A similar heterotopism is observed in the case of the primitive renal (kidney) passages of the higher vertebrates, which originally took their rise in the external skin. Even in the case of the origin of the mesoderm (middle-skin) itself heterotopism, in connection with a removal of embryonic cells from one skin layer to another, plays an important part.

Heterochronism, or variation in time, is not less instructive. It consists in the fact that the series of forms in which the organs successively appear is different in embryology from what the stem history leads us to expect. Just as the spatial disposition is falsified in heterotopism, so we find the time arrangement altered in heterochronism. This may appear either as an acceleration or a delay in the rise of an organ. As cases of ontogenetic acceleration we may instance, in the embryonic development of man, the early appearance of the heart, the gill-cLEFTs, the brain, the eyes, etc. These organs clearly arise much earlier, in comparison with others, than was originally the case with our ancestors.
We find the reverse of this in the retarded formation of the gut, the ventral cavity, and the sexual organs. These are clear instances of ontogenetic retardation.

The great importance and strict regularity of these time variations in embryology have been carefully studied recently by Ernest Mehnert, in his *Biomechanik* (Jena, 1898). He formulates his "chief law of organogenesis" in the following words: "The rapidity of the embryonic development of an organ is in proportion to its stage of evolution, which has been retarded for a time. It rises with the increase and falls with the diminution of the stage of evolution once attained." Mehnert contends that our biogenetic law has not been impaired by the attacks of its opponents, and goes on to say: "Scarcelly any piece of knowledge has contributed so much to the advance of embryology as this; its formulation is one of the most signal services to general biology. It was not until this law passed into the flesh and blood of investigators, and they had accustomed themselves to see a reminiscence of ancestral history in embryonic structures, that we witnessed the great progress which embryological research has made in the last two decades." The best proof of the correctness of this opinion is that now the most fruitful work is done in all branches of embryology with the aid of this biogenetic law, and that it enables students to attain every year thousands of brilliant results that they would never have reached without it.

It is only when one appreciates the cenogenetic processes in relation to the palingenetic, and when one takes careful account of the changes which the latter may suffer from the former, that the radical importance of the biogenetic law is recognised, and it is felt to be the most illuminating principle in the science of evolution. In this task of discrimination it is the silver thread in relation to which we can arrange all the phenomena of this realm of marvels—the "Ariadne thread," which alone enables us to find our way through this labyrinth of forms. Hence the brothers Sarasin, the zoologists, could say with perfect justice, in their study of the evolution of the *Ichthyophis*, that "the great biogenetic law is
just as important for the zoologist in tracing long-extinct processes as spectrum analysis is for the astronomer."

Even at an earlier period, when a correct acquaintance with the evolution of the human and animal frame was only just being obtained—and that is scarcely eighty years ago!—the greatest astonishment was felt at the remarkable similarity observed between the embryonic forms, or stages of foetal development, in very different animals; attention was called even then to their close resemblance to certain fully-developed animal forms belonging to some of the lower groups. The older scientists (Oken, Treviranus, and others) knew perfectly well that these lower forms in a sense illustrated and fixed, in the hierarchy of the animal world, a temporary stage in the evolution of higher forms. The famous anatomist Meckel spoke in 1821 of a "similarity between the development of the embryo and the series of animals." Baer raised the question in 1828 how far, within the vertebrate type, the embryonic forms of the higher animals assume the permanent shapes of members of lower groups. But it was impossible fully to understand and appreciate this remarkable resemblance at that time. We owe our capacity to do this to the theory of descent; it is this that puts in their true light the action of heredity on the one hand and adaptation on the other. It explains to us the vital importance of their constant reciprocal action in the production of organic forms. Darwin was the first to teach us the great part that was played in this by the ceaseless struggle for existence between living things, and to show how, under the influence of this (by natural selection), new species were produced and maintained solely by the interaction of heredity and adaptation. It was thus Darwinism that first opened our eyes to a true comprehension of the supremely important relations between the two parts of the science of organic evolution—Ontogeny and Phylogeny.

Heredity and adaptation are, in fact, the two constructive physiological functions of living things: unless we understand these properly we can make no headway in the study of evolution. Hence, until the time of Darwin no one had a clear idea of the real nature and causes of embryonic
development. It was impossible to explain the curious series of forms through which the human embryo passed; it was quite unintelligible why this strange succession of animal-like forms appeared in the series at all. It had previously been generally assumed that the man was found complete in all his parts in the ovum, and that the development consisted only in an unfolding of the various parts, a simple process of growth. This is by no means the case. On the contrary, the whole process of the development of the individual presents to the observer a connected succession of various animal-forms; and these forms display a great variety of external and internal structure. But why each individual human being should pass through this series of forms in the course of his embryonic development it was quite impossible to say until Lamarck and Darwin established the theory of descent. Through this theory we have at last detected the real causes, the cause efficientes, of the individual development; we have learned that these mechanical causes suffice of themselves to effect the formation of the organism, and that there is no need of the final causes which were formerly assumed. It is true that in the academic philosophies of our time these final causes still figure very prominently; in the new philosophy of nature we can entirely replace them by efficient causes.

Before I pass from the subject I must speak further of this, one of the most brilliant achievements of the human mind in modern times. The history of philosophy shows us that final causes are still generally regarded in philosophic circles, just as among the philosophers of antiquity, as the real sources of the phenomena of organic life, and especially of human life. This dominant teleology, which is largely based on Kant, assumes that the processes of organic life, especially those of development, can only be explained by final causes, and are not susceptible of a mechanical—that is to say, a really scientific—explanation. But the darkest enigmas which had hitherto beset us in this connection, and which seemed to be only approachable through teleology, have been fully solved in a mechanical sense by the theory of descent. The
reconstruction of the science of human evolution which this brought about removed the greatest impediments from the path of research. We shall see, in the course of our inquiry, how the most wonderful and hitherto insoluble enigmas in the human and animal frame have proved amenable to a mechanical explanation, by causes acting without prevision, through Darwin’s reform of the science of evolution. We have everywhere been able to substitute unconscious causes, acting from necessity, for conscious, purposive causes.¹

If the new science of evolution had done no more than this, every thoughtful man would have to admit that it had accomplished an immense advance in knowledge. It means that in the whole of philosophy that tendency which we call monistic, in opposition to the dualistic, which has hitherto prevailed, must be accepted.² At this point the science of human evolution has a direct and profound bearing on the foundations of philosophy. I have dealt with this relation very fully in my *Riddle of the Universe*. In the first part I show how modern anthropology has, by its astounding discoveries during the second half of the nineteenth century, compelled us to take a completely monistic view of life. Our bodily structure and its life, our embryonic development and our evolution as a species, teach us that the same laws of nature rule in the life of man as in the rest of the universe. For this reason, if for no others, it is desirable, nay, indispensable, that every man who wishes to form a serious and philosophic view of life, and, above all, the expert philosopher, should acquaint himself with the chief facts of this branch of science.

¹ The monistic or mechanical philosophy of nature holds that only unconscious, necessary, efficient causes are at work in the whole field of nature, in organic life as well as in inorganic changes. On the other hand, the dualist or vitalist philosophy of nature affirms that unconscious forces are only at work in the inorganic world, and that we find conscious, purposive, or final causes in organic nature.

² Monism is neither purely materialistic nor purely spiritualistic, but a reconciliation of these two principles, since it regards the whole of nature as one, and sees only efficient causes at work in it. Dualism, on the contrary, holds that nature and spirit, matter and force, the world and God, inorganic and organic nature, are separate and independent existences. Cf. *The Riddle of the Universe*, chap. xii.
The facts of embryology have so great and obvious a significance in this connection that even in recent years dualist and teleological philosophers have tried to rid themselves of them by simply denying them. This was done, for instance, as regards the fact that man is developed from an egg, and that this egg or ovum is a simple cell, as in the case of other animals. When I had explained this pregnant fact and its significance in my *Natural History of Creation*, it was described in many of the theological journals as a dishonest invention of my own. The fact that the embryos of man and the dog are, at a certain stage of their development, almost indistinguishable, was also denied. When we examine the human embryo in the third or fourth week of its development, we find it to be quite different in shape and structure from the full-grown human being, but almost identical with that of the ape, the dog, the hare, and other mammals, at the same stage of ontogeny. We find a bean-shaped body of very simple construction, with a tail below and a pair of fins at the sides, something like those of a fish, but very different from the limbs of man and the mammals. Nearly the whole front half of the body is taken up by a shapeless head without face, at the sides of which we find gill-clefts and arches as in the fish (see the thirteenth plate at the end of Chapter xiv.). At this stage of its development the human embryo does not differ in any essential detail from that of the ape, dog, horse, ox, etc., at a corresponding period. This important fact can easily be verified at any moment by a comparison of the embryos of man, the dog, hare, etc. Nevertheless, the theologians and dualist philosophers pronounced it to be a materialistic invention; even scientists, to whom the facts should be known, have sought to deny them.

There could not be a clearer proof of the profound importance of these embryological facts in favour of the monistic philosophy than is afforded by these efforts of its opponents to get rid of them by silence or denial. The truth is that these facts are most inconvenient for them, and are quite irreconcilable with their views. We must be all the
more pressing on our side to put them in their proper light. I fully agree with Huxley when he says, in his *Man's Place in Nature*: "Though these facts are ignored by several well-known popular leaders, they are easy to prove, and are accepted by all scientific men; on the other hand, their importance is so great that those who have once mastered them will, in my opinion, find few other biological discoveries to astonish them."

We shall make it our chief task to study the evolution of man's bodily frame and its various organs in their external form and internal structures. But I may observe at once that this is accompanied step by step with a study of the evolution of their functions. These two branches of inquiry are inseparably united in the whole of anthropology, just as in zoology (of which the former is only a section) or general biology. Everywhere the peculiar form of the organism and its structures, internal and external, is directly related to the special physiological functions which the organism or organ has to execute. This intimate connection of structure and function, or of the instrument and the work done by it, is seen in the science of evolution and all its parts. Hence the story of the evolution of structures, which is our immediate concern, is also the history of the development of functions; and this holds good of the human organism as of any other.

At the same time, I must admit that our knowledge of the evolution of functions is very far from being as complete as our acquaintance with the evolution of structures. One might say, in fact, that the whole science of evolution, or biogeny (both in ontogeny and phylogeny), has almost confined itself to the study of structures; the biogeny of *functions* hardly exists even in name. That is the fault of the physiologists, who have as yet concerned themselves very little about evolution. It is only in recent times that physiologists like W. Engelmann, W. Preyer, M. Verworn, and a few others, have attacked the biogeny of functions.

For a long time now the two great branches of biological research, morphology and physiology, have pursued separate ways. That is quite natural. The aims and methods of the
two are very different. Morphology (anatomy), or the science of forms, seeks a scientific knowledge of organic structure, internal and external. On the other hand, physiology, or the science of functions, studies the vital phenomena. The two together make up biology. But the development of physiology during the last fifty years has been much more one-sided than that of morphology. It has not only failed to make much use of the comparative method, which has given such great results in morphology, but it has also neglected evolutionary principles. Hence in the last few decades morphology has far outrun physiology, though the latter is apt to put on superior airs in regard to its rival. Morphology has achieved its finest results in the way of comparative anatomy and ontogeny, and nearly all that I shall put before the reader in this work as to the evolution of man has been obtained by the labours, not of the physiologist, but of the morphologist. In fact, the one-sidedness of modern physiology is so great that it has hitherto neglected the study of the most important evolutionary functions, heredity and adaptation, and abandoned even these purely physiological subjects to the morphologist. We owe nearly all that we know about them to the morphologist, not to the physiologist. The latter concerns himself little more with the functions (or agencies) of evolution than with the evolution of functions.

It will be the task of some future physiologist to engage in the study of the evolution of functions with the same zeal and success as has been done for the evolution of structures in morphogeny (the genesis of forms). Let me illustrate the close connection of the two by a couple of examples. The heart in the human embryo has at first a very simple construction, such as we find in permanent form among the ascidia and other low organisms; with this is associated a very simple system of circulation of the blood. Now, when we find that with the full-grown heart there comes a totally different and much more intricate circulation, our inquiry into the development of the heart becomes at once, not only a morphological, but also a physiological, study. Thus it is clear that the ontogeny of the heart can only be understood in
the light of its phylogeny (or development in the past), both as regards function and structure. The same holds true of all the other organs and their functions. For instance, the science of the evolution of the alimentary canal, the lungs, or the sexual organs, gives us at the same time, through the exact comparative investigation of structure-development, most important information with regard to the evolution of the functions of these organs.

This significant connection is very clearly seen in the evolution of the nervous system. This system is in the economy of the human body the medium of sensation, will, and even thought, the highest of the psychic functions; in a word, of all the various functions which constitute the proper object of psychology. Modern anatomy and physiology have proved that these psychic functions are immediately dependent on the fine structure and the composition of the central nervous system, or the internal texture of the brain and spinal cord. In these we find the elaborate cell-machinery, of which the psychic or soul-life is the physiological function. It is so intricate that most men still look upon the mind as something supernatural that cannot be explained on mechanical principles.

But embryological research into the gradual appearance and the formation of this important system of organs yields the most astounding and significant results. The first sketch of a central nervous system in the human embryo presents the same very simple type as in the other vertebrates. A spinal tube is formed in the external skin of the back, and from this first comes a simple spinal cord without brain, such as we find to be the permanent psychic organ in the lowest type of mammal, the amphioxus. Not until a later stage is a brain formed at the anterior end of this cord, and then it is a brain of the most rudimentary kind, such as we find permanently among the lower fishes. This simple brain develops step by step, successively assuming forms which correspond to those of the amphibia, the reptiles, the duck-bills, and the prosimiae. Only in the last stage does it reach the highly organised form which distinguishes the
apes from the other vertebrates, and which attains its full development in man.

Comparative physiology discovers a precisely similar growth. The function of the brain, the psychic activity, rises step by step with the advancing development of its structure.

Thus we are enabled, by this story of the evolution of the nervous system, to understand at length the natural development of the human mind and its gradual unfolding. It is only with the aid of embryology that we can grasp how these highest and most striking faculties of the animal organism have been historically evolved. In other words, a knowledge of the evolution of the spinal cord and brain in the human embryo leads us directly to a comprehension of the historic development (or phylogeny) of the human mind, that highest of all faculties, which we regard as something so marvellous and supernatural in the adult man. This is certainly one of the greatest and most pregnant results of evolutionary science. Happily, our embryological knowledge of man's central nervous system is now so adequate, and agrees so thoroughly with the complementary results of comparative anatomy and physiology, that we are thus enabled to obtain a clear insight into one of the highest problems of philosophy, the phylogeny of the soul, or the ancestral history of the mind of man. Our chief support in this comes from the embryological study of it, or the ontogeny of the soul. This important section of psychology owes its origin especially to W. Preyer, in his interesting works, The Mind of the Child (English translation) and Spezielle Physiologie des Embryo, The Biography of a Baby (1900), of Milicent Washburn Shinn, also deserves mention. [See also Preyer's Mental Development in the Child (translation), and Sully's Studies of Childhood and Children's Ways.]

In this way we follow the only path along which we may hope to reach the solution of this difficult problem.

Thirty-six years have now elapsed since I established phylogeny as an independent science and showed its intimate causal connection with ontogeny in my Generelle Morphologie; thirty years have passed since I gave in my gastræa-theory
the proof of the justice of this, and completed it with the theory of germinal layers. When we look back on this period we may ask, What has been accomplished during it by the fundamental law of biogeny? If we are impartial, we must reply that it has proved its fertility in hundreds of sound results, and that by its aid we have acquired a vast fund of knowledge which we should never have obtained without it.

There has been no dearth of attacks—often violent attacks—on my conception of an intimate causal connection between ontogenesis and phylogeny; but no other satisfactory explanation of these important phenomena has yet been offered to us. I say this especially with regard to Wilhelm His's theory of a "mechanical evolution," which questions the validity of phylogeny generally, and would explain the complicated embryonic processes without going beyond by simple physical changes—such as the bending and folding of leaves by electricity, the origin of cavities through unequal strain of the tissues, the formation of processes by uneven growth, and so on. But the fact is that these embryological phenomena themselves demand explanation in turn, and this can only be found, as a rule, in the corresponding changes in the long ancestral series, or in the physiological functions of heredity and adaptation.

Heinrich Schmidt (of Jena) has given a good account and criticism of the many attacks on the biogenetic law in his interesting pamphlet, *Haeckel's biogenetisches Grundgesetz und seine Gegner* (Odenkirchen, 1902). He shows that not only distinguished zoologists, but botanists also, have recognised it, and made profitable use of it; it holds good of the evolution of plants no less than of animals. On the other hand, none of its critics has offered anything better to replace it. Many of the criticisms, in fact, arise from pure misunderstanding, as is quite to be expected in so difficult and complicated a subject, or from a wrong idea of the relation of *cenogenesis* and *palingenesis*. But, in spite of all this, our knowledge of the mutual relations of these two series of phenomena grows every day, and our conviction increases that "Phylogenesis is the mechanical cause of ontogenesis."
CHAPTER II.

THE OLDER EMBRYOLOGY


It is in many ways useful, on entering upon the study of any science, to cast a glance at its historical development. The saying that "everything is best understood in its growth" has a distinct application to science. While we follow its gradual development we get a clearer insight into its aims and objects. Moreover, we shall see that the present condition of the science of human evolution, with all its characteristics, can only be rightly understood when we examine its historical growth. This task will, however, not detain us long. The study of man's evolution is one of the latest branches of natural science, whether you consider the embryological or the phylogenetic section of it.

Apart from the few germs of our science which we find in classical antiquity, and which we shall notice presently, we may say that it takes its definite rise, as a science, in the year 1759, when one of the greatest German scientists, Caspar Friedrich Wolff, published his *Theoria generationis*. That was the foundation-stone of the science of animal embryology. It was not until fifty years later, in 1809, that Jean Lamarck
published his *Philosophie Zoologique*—the first effort to provide a base for the theory of evolution; and it was another half-century before Darwin's work appeared (in 1859), which we may regard as the first scientific attainment of this aim. But before we go further into this solid establishment of evolution, we must cast a brief glance at that famous philosopher and scientist of antiquity, who stood alone in this, as in many other branches of science, for more than 2,000 years: the "father of natural history," Aristotle.

The extant scientific works of Aristotle deal with many different sides of biological research; the most comprehensive of them is his famous *History of Animals*. But not less interesting is the smaller work, *On the Generation of Animals* (*Peri zoon geneseos*). This work treats especially of embryonic development, and it is of great interest as being the earliest of its kind and the only one that has come down to us in any completeness from classical antiquity. Like Aristotle's other scientific writings, this substantial little work has dominated the whole of science for 2,000 years. The philosopher was as keen in observation as he was profound in thought. Nevertheless, while his philosophic distinction has never been questioned, it is only in recent years that his worth as an observer has been properly appreciated. The men of science who turned to his scientific writings about the middle of the nineteenth century were astonished at the amount of information and the notable discoveries that they found.

In connection with embryological questions, we must particularly note that Aristotle studied them in various classes of animals, and that among the lower groups he learned many most remarkable facts which we only re-discovered between 1830 and 1860. It is certain, for instance, that he was acquainted with the very peculiar mode of propagation of the cuttle-fishes, or cephalopods, in which a yolk-sac hangs out of the mouth of the foetus. He knew, also, that embryos come from the eggs of the bee even when they have not been fertilised. This "parthenogenesis" (or virgin-birth) of the bees has only been established in our
time by the distinguished zoologist of Munich, Siebold. He discovered that male bees come from the unfertilised, and female bees only from the fertilised, eggs. Aristotle further states that some kinds of fishes (of the genus *serranus*) are hermaphrodites, each individual having both male and female organs and being able to fertilise itself; this, also, has been recently confirmed. He knew that the embryo of many fishes of the shark family is attached to the mother's body by a sort of placenta, or nutritive organ very rich in blood; apart from these, such an arrangement is only found among the higher mammals and man. This placenta of the shark was looked upon as legendary for a long time, until Johannes Müller proved it to be a fact in 1839. Thus a number of remarkable discoveries were found in Aristotle's embryological work, proving a very good acquaintance of the great scientist—possibly helped by his predecessors—with the facts of ontogeny, and a great advance upon succeeding generations in this respect.

In the case of most of these discoveries he did not merely describe the fact, but added a number of observations on its significance. Some of these theoretical remarks are of particular interest, because they show a correct appreciation of the nature of the embryonic processes. He conceives the development of the individual as a new formation, in the course of which the various parts of the body take shape successively. When the human or animal frame is developed in the mother's body, or separately in an egg, the heart—which he regards as the starting-point and centre of the organism—must appear first. Once the heart is formed the other organs arise, the internal ones before the external, the upper (those above the diaphragm) before the lower (or those beneath the diaphragm). The brain is formed at an early stage, and the eyes grow out of it. These observations are quite correct. And, if we try to form some idea from these data of Aristotle's general conception of the embryonic process, we find a dim prevision of the theory which we now call *epigenesis*, and which Wolff showed 2,000 years afterwards to be the correct view. It is significant, for instance,
that Aristotle denied the eternity of the individual in any respect. He said that the species or genus, the group of similar individuals, might be eternal, but the individual itself is temporary. It comes into being in the act of procreation, and passes away at death.

During the 2,000 years after Aristotle no progress whatever was made in general zoology, or in embryology in particular. People were content to read, copy, translate, and comment on Aristotle. Scarcely a single independent effort at research was made in the whole of the period. During the Middle Ages the spread of strong religious beliefs put formidable obstacles in the way of independent scientific investigation. There was no question of resuming the advance of biology. Even when human anatomy began to stir itself once more in the sixteenth century, and independent research was resumed into the structure of the developed body, anatomists did not dare to extend their inquiries to the unformed body, the embryo, and its development. There were many reasons for the prevailing horror of such studies. It is natural enough, when we remember that a Bull of Boniface VIII. excommunicated every man who ventured to dissect a human corpse. If the dissection of a developed body were a crime to be thus punished, how much more dreadful must it have seemed to deal with the embryonic body still enclosed in the womb, which the Creator himself had decently veiled from the curiosity of the scientist! The Christian Church, then putting many thousands to death for unbelief, had a shrewd presentiment of the menace that science contained against its authority. It was powerful enough to see that its rival did not grow too quickly.

It was not until the Reformation broke the power of the Church, and a refreshing breath of the spirit dissolved the icy chains that bound science, that anatomy and embryology, and all the other branches of research, could begin to advance once more. However, embryology lagged far behind anatomy. The first works on embryology appear at the beginning of the sixteenth century. The Italian anatomist, Fabricius ab Aquapendente, a professor at Padua,
opened the advance. In his two books (*De formato foetu*, 1600, and *De formatione foetus*, 1604) he published the older illustrations and descriptions of the embryos of man and other mammals, and of the hen. Similar imperfect illustrations were given by Spigelius (*De formato foetu*, 1631), and by Needham (1667) and his more famous compatriot, Harvey (1652), who discovered the circulation of the blood in the animal body and formulated the important principle, *Omne vivum ex vivo* (all life comes from pre-existing life). The Dutch scientist, Swammerdam, published in his *Bible of Nature* the earliest observations on the embryology of the frog and the division of its egg-yelk. But the most important embryological studies in the sixteenth century were those of the famous Italian, Marcello Malpighi, of Bologna, who led the way both in zoology and botany. His treatises, *De formatione pulli* and *De ovo incubato* (1687), contain the first consistent description of the development of the chick in the fertilised egg.

Here I ought to say a word about the important part played by the chick in the growth of our science. The development of the chick, like that of the young of all other birds, agrees in all its main features with that of the other chief vertebrates, and even of man. The three highest classes of vertebrates—mammals, birds, and reptiles (lizards, serpents, tortoises, etc.)—have from the beginning of their embryonic development so striking a resemblance in all the chief points of structure, and especially in their first forms, that for a long time it is impossible to distinguish between them (see plates viii–xiii.). We have known now for some time that we need only examine the embryo of a bird, which is the easiest to get at, in order to learn the typical mode of development of a mammal (and therefore of man). As soon as scientists began to study the human embryo, or the mammal-embryo generally, in its earlier stages about the middle and end of the seventeenth century, this important fact was very quickly discovered. It is both theoretically and practically of great value. As regards the theory of evolution, we can draw the most weighty inferences from this
similarity between the embryos of widely different classes of animals. But for the practical purposes of embryological research the discovery is invaluable, because we can fill up the gaps in our imperfect knowledge of the embryology of the mammals from the more thoroughly studied embryology of the bird. Hens' eggs are easily to be had in any quantity, and the development of the chick may be followed step by step in artificial incubation. The development of the mammal is much more difficult to follow, because here the embryo is not detached and enclosed in a large egg, but the tiny ovum remains in the womb until the growth is completed. Hence, it is very difficult to keep up sustained observation of the various stages in any great extent, quite apart from such extrinsic considerations as the cost, the technical difficulties, and many other obstacles which we encounter when we would make an extensive study of the fertilised mammal. The chicken has, therefore, always been the chief object of study in this connection. The excellent incubators we now have enable us to observe it in any quantity and at any stage of development, and so follow the whole course of its formation step by step.

By the end of the seventeenth century Malpighi had advanced as far as it was possible to do with the imperfect microscope of his time in the embryological study of the chick. Further progress was arrested until the instrument and the technical methods should be improved. The vertebrate embryos are so small and delicate in their earlier stages that you cannot go very far into the study of them without a good microscope and other technical aid. But this substantial improvement of the microscope and the other apparatus did not take place until the beginning of the nineteenth century.

Embryology made scarcely any advance in the first half of the eighteenth century, when the systematic natural history of plants and animals received so great an impulse through the publication of Linné's famous Systema Naturae. Not until 1759 did the genius arise who was to give it an entirely new character, Caspar Friedrich Wolff. Until then embryology
had been occupied almost exclusively in unfortunate and misleading efforts to build up theories on the imperfect empirical material then available.

The theory which then prevailed, and remained in favour throughout nearly the whole of the eighteenth century, was commonly called at that time "the evolution theory"; it is better to describe it as "the preformation theory." Its chief point is this: There is no new formation of structures in the embryonic development of any organism, animal or plant, or even of man; there is only a growth, or unfolding, of parts which have been constructed and ready from all eternity, though on a very small scale and closely packed together. Hence, every living germ contains all the organs and parts of the body, in the form and arrangement they will present later, already within it, and thus the whole embryological process is merely an evolution in the literal sense of the word, or an unfolding, of parts that were pre-formed and folded up in it. So, for instance, we find in the hen's egg not merely a simple cell, that divides and sub-divides and forms germinal layers, and at last, after all kinds of variation and cleavage and reconstruction, brings forth the body of the chick; but there is in every egg from the first a complete chicken, with all its parts made and neatly packed. These parts are so small or so transparent that the microscope cannot detect them. In the hatching, these parts merely grow larger, and spread out in the normal way.

When this theory is consistently developed it becomes a "scatulation theory." According to its teaching, there was made in the beginning one couple or one individual of each species of animal or plant; but this one individual contained the germs of all the other individuals of the same species who should ever come to life. As the age of the earth was

---

1 This theory is usually known as the "evolution theory" in Germany, in contradistinction to the "epigenesis theory." But as it is the latter that is called the "evolution theory" in England, France, and Italy, and "evolution" and "epigenesis" are taken to be synonymous, it seems better to call the first the "preformation theory." Kölliker has recently given the name of "evolutionism" to his "theory of heterogeneous conception."

2 "Packing theory" would be the literal translation. Scatula is the Latin for a case or box. —Trans.
generally believed at that time to be fixed by the Bible at 5,000 or 6,000 years, it seemed possible to calculate how many individuals of each species had lived in the period, and so had been packed inside the first being that was created. The theory was consistently extended to man, and it was affirmed that our common parent Eve had had stored in her ovary the germs of all the children of men.

The theory at first took the form of a belief that it was the females who were thus encased in the first being. One couple of each species was created, but the female contained in her ovary all the future individuals of the species, of either sex. However, this had to be altered when the Dutch microscopist, Leeuwenhoek, discovered the male spermatozoa in 1690, and showed that an immense number of these extremely fine and mobile thread-like beings exist in the male sperm (this will be explained in the seventh chapter). This astonishing discovery was further advanced when it was proved that these living bodies, swimming about in the seminal fluid, were real animalcules, and, in fact, were the pre-formed germs of the future generation. When the male and female procreative elements came together at conception, these thread-like spermatozoa ("seed-animals") were supposed to penetrate into the fertile body of the ovum and begin to develop there, as the plant seed does in the fruitful earth. Hence, every spermatozoon was regarded as a homunculus, a tiny complete man; all the parts were believed to be pre-formed in it, and merely grew larger when it reached its proper medium in the female ovum. This theory, also, was consistently developed in the sense that in each of these thread-like bodies the whole of its posterity was supposed to be present in the minutest form. Adam's sexual glands were thought to have contained the germs of the whole of humanity.

This "theory of male scatulation" found itself at once in keen opposition to the prevailing "female" theory. All that was common to them was the erroneous idea that there are in every germ the germs of innumerable organisms to come enfolded in it—an idea that served as the ground of Linné's
curious "prolepsis theory." The two rival theories at once opened a very lively campaign, and the physiologists of the eighteenth century were divided into two great camps—the Animalculists and the Ovulists—which fought vigorously. The struggle rather amuses us to-day when we know that both parties were wrong. As Kirchhoff says in his admirable biographical sketch of Wolff: "This controversy was as difficult to close as that on the question whether the angels live in the eastern or the western part of heaven."

The animalculists held that the spermatozoa were the true germs, and appealed to the lively movements and the structure of these bodies. In the case of man and most of the other animals, these spermatozoa have a rather oval or pear-shaped head and a thickish stem, ending in an extremely fine and hair-like tail (Fig. 20). The whole structure is really only one cell—a ciliated cell. The head is the nucleus enclosed in a little of the cell-matter, and this is prolonged in the thick stem and fine, mobile tail; the latter is the "whip" (or ciliun) by which it moves about, and corresponds to the ciliun in a ciliated cell. But the animalculists believed that the "head" was a real head, and the rest of it a complete body. Leeuwenhoek, Hartsoeker, and Spallanzani were the chief champions of these fantastic speculations.

The opposing party of the Ovulists, who clung to the older "evolution theory," affirmed that the ovum is the real germ, and that the spermatozoa merely stimulate it at conception to begin its growth; all the future generations are stored in the ovum. This view was held by the great majority of the biologists of the eighteenth century, in spite of the fact that Wolff proved it in 1759 to be without foundation. It owed its prestige chiefly to the circumstance that the most weighty authorities in the biology and philosophy of the day decided in favour of it, especially Haller, Bonnet, and Leibnitz.

Albrecht Haller, professor at Göttingen, who is often called the father of physiology, was a man of wide and varied learning, but he does not occupy a very high position in regard to insight into natural phenomena. He has
unconsciously given the best description of himself in his famous saying: "No created mind can penetrate into the heart of Nature; happy the man to whom she does but show the outer shell." Goethe made the best reply to this "shell theory" of observation in the noble poem which closes with the words: "Nature has neither kernel nor shell; she is all one. Try yourself whether you are either kernel or shell." Yet there has been no lack, even of late years, of attempts to defend Haller's "shell theory." Wilhelm His, especially, has made a strange effort to justify it.

Haller made a vigorous defence of the "evolution theory" in his famous work, *Elementa physiologiae*, affirming: "There is no such thing as formation (*nulla est epigenesis*). No part of the animal frame is made before another; all were made together." He thus denied that there was any evolution in the proper sense of the word, and even went so far as to say that the beard existed in the new-born child and the antlers in the hornless fawn; all the parts were there in advance, and were merely hidden from the eye of man for the time being. Haller even calculated the number of human beings that God must have created on the sixth day and stored away in Eve's ovary. He put the number at 200,000 millions, assuming the age of the world to be 6,000 years, the average age of a human being to be thirty years, and the population of the world at that time to be 1,000 millions. And the famous Haller maintained all this nonsense, in spite of its ridiculous consequences, even after Wolff had discovered the real course of embryonic development and established it by direct observation!

Among the philosophers of the time the distinguished Leibnitz was the chief defender of the "preformation theory," and by his authority and literary prestige won many adherents to it. Supported by his system of monads, according to which body and soul are united in inseparable association and by their union form the individual, or the "monad," Leibnitz consistently extended the "scatulation theory" to the soul, and held that this was no more evolved than the body. He says, for instance, in his *Théodicée*: "I mean that these souls,
which one day are to be the souls of men, are present in the seed, like those of other species; in such wise that they existed in our ancestors as far back as Adam, or from the beginning of the world, in the forms of organised bodies."

The theory seemed to receive considerable support from the observations of one of its most zealous supporters, Bonnet. In 1745 he discovered, in the plant-louse, a case of parthenogenesis, or virgin-birth, an interesting form of reproduction that has lately been found by Siebold and others among various classes of the articulata, especially crabs and insects. Among these and other animals of certain lower species the female may reproduce for several generations without having been fertilised by the male. These ova that do not need fertilisation are called "false ova," pseudova or spores. Bonnet saw that a female plant-louse, which he had kept in cloistral isolation, and rigidly removed from contact with males, had on the eleventh day (after forming a new skin for the fourth time) a living daughter, and during the next twenty days ninety-four other daughters; and that all of them went on to reproduce in the same way without any contact with males. It seemed as if this furnished an irrefutable proof of the truth of the scatulation theory, as it was held by the Ovulists; it is not surprising to find that the theory then secured general acceptance.

This was the condition of things when suddenly, in 1759, Caspar Friedrich Wolff appeared, and dealt a fatal blow at the whole preformation theory with his new theory of epigenesis. Wolff, the son of a Berlin tailor, was born in 1733, and went through his scientific and medical studies, first at Berlin under the famous anatomist Meckel, and afterwards at Halle. Here he secured his doctorate in his twenty-sixth year, and in his academic dissertation (November 28th, 1759) expounded the new theory of a real development, the *theoria generationis*, on a basis of epigenesis. This treatise is, in spite of its smallness and its obscure phraseology, one of the most valuable in the whole range of biological literature. It is equally distinguished for the mass of new and careful observations it contains, and the far-reaching and
pregnant ideas which the author everywhere extracts from his observations and builds into a luminous and accurate theory of generation. Nevertheless, it met with no success at the time. Although scientific studies were then assiduously cultivated owing to the impulse given by Linneé—although botanists and zoologists were no longer counted by dozens, but by hundreds, hardly any notice was taken of Wolff's theory. Even when he established the truth of epigenesis by the most rigorous observations, and demolished the airy structure of the preformation theory, the "exact" scientist Haller proved one of the most strenuous supporters of the old theory, and rejected Wolff's correct view with a dictatorial Nulla est epigenesis. He even went on to say that religion was menaced by the new theory! It is not surprising that the whole of the physiologists of the second half of the eighteenth century submitted to the ruling of this physiological pontiff, and attacked the theory of epigenesis as a dangerous innovation. It was not until more than fifty years afterwards that Wolff's work was appreciated. Only when Meckel translated into German in 1812 another valuable work of Wolff's on The Formation of the Alimentary Canal (written in 1768), and called attention to its great importance, did people begin to think of him once more; yet this obscure writer had evinced a profounder insight into the nature of the living organism than any other scientist of the eighteenth century.

Thus, as has so often happened in the history of thought, the newly-discovered truth was crushed by the powerful untruth, supported by the might of authority. The luminous theory of epigenesis could not penetrate the mists of the preformation theory, and its gifted author succumbed to his enemies in the fight for truth. All further advance in embryology was thus prevented for the time being. It was the more unfortunate as Wolff was compelled by the poverty of his circumstances to leave Germany on account of this opposition. Henceforward without resources, he could only complete his classical work under the most pressing difficulties, and had then to earn his living by medical practice.
During the Seven Years' War he worked in the hospitals of Schleswig, and gave brilliant lectures on anatomy in the field-hospital at Breslau, and so attracted the attention of the director-general of hospitals, Cothenius. At the conclusion of the war this patron endeavoured to obtain a professorship for Wolff at Berlin. But he failed, owing to the opposition of the narrow-minded professors of the Berlin Medico-chirurgical College, who were ill-disposed to scientific progress. They declared the epigenesis theory to be a deadly heresy, just as they condemned the theory of descent only a few decades ago. Although Cothenius and other admirers struggled bravely for Wolff, they could not even get him permission to give public lectures on physiology at Berlin. In the end Wolff was compelled to accept an honourable position that was offered to him in 1766 by Catharine of Russia. He went to St. Petersburg, and continued his researches there for twenty-seven years.

Wolff's ideas led to an appreciable advance over the whole field of biology. There is such a vast number of new and important observations and pregnant thoughts in his writings that we have only gradually learned to appreciate them rightly in the course of the nineteenth century. He opened up the true path for research in many directions. In the first place, his theory of epigenesis gave us our first real insight into the nature of embryonic development. He showed convincingly that the development of every organism consists of a series of new formations, and that there is no trace whatever of the complete form either in the ovum or the spermatozoon. On the contrary, these are quite simple bodies, with a very different purport. The embryo which is developed from them is also quite different, in its internal arrangement and outer configuration, from the complete organism. There is no trace whatever of preformation or in-folding of organs. To-day we can scarcely call epigenesis a theory, because we are convinced it is a fact, and can demonstrate it at any moment with the aid of the microscope.

Wolff furnished the conclusive empirical proof of his theory in his classic dissertation on The Formation of the
Alimentary Canal (1768). In its complete state the alimentary canal of the hen is a long and complex tube, with which the lungs, liver, salivary glands, and many other small glands, are connected. Wolff showed that in the early stages of the embryonic chick there is no trace whatever of this complicated tube with all its dependencies, but instead of it only a flat, leaf-shaped body; that, in fact, the whole embryo has at first the appearance of a flat, oval-shaped leaf. When we remember how difficult the exact observation of so fine and delicate a structure as the early leaf-shaped body of the chick must have been with the poor microscopes then in use, we must admire the rare faculty for observation which enabled Wolff to make the most important discoveries in this most difficult part of embryology. By this laborious research he reached the correct opinion that the embryonic body of all the higher animals, such as the birds, is for some time merely a flat, thin, leaf-shaped disk—consisting at first of one, but afterwards of several, layers. The lowest of these layers is the alimentary canal, and Wolff followed its development from its commencement to its completion. He showed how this leaf-shaped structure first turns into a groove, then the margins of this groove fold together and form a closed canal, and at length the two external openings of the tube (the mouth and anus) appear.

Moreover, the important fact that the other systems of organs are developed in the same way, from tubes formed out of simple layers, did not escape Wolff. The nervous system, muscular system, and vascular (blood-vessel) system, with all the organs appertaining thereto, are, like the alimentary system, developed out of simple leaf-shaped structures. Hence, Wolff came to the view by 1768 which Pander developed in the Theory of Germinal Layers fifty years afterwards. The words in which Wolff anticipates the chief feature of this are so remarkable that they deserve to be quoted in full:—

This wonderful analogy between parts that seem to be so widely removed from each other in Nature—no product of the imagination, but supported by the most confident observations—merits the attention of physiologists in the highest degree, for it must be admitted to have a profound significance, and to
be intimately connected with the generation and the nature of animals. It seems as if, at various and successive stages, different systems are formed after the same type, and these then unite to form the complete animal; and as if these really resemble each other in spite of their differences. The first system to be produced and take definite shape is the nervous system. When this is done, the mass of muscle which constitutes the embryo takes shape after the same fashion. To this succeeds a third system, that of the blood-vessels, which is not so unlike the first as to prevent us from seeing in it the form which is common to all three. After this comes the fourth, the alimentary canal, which again is constructed on the same type, and resembles the other three, in being a complete and self-contained whole.

In this important discovery Wolff laid the foundation of the theory of germinal layers, which was not fully developed until much later by Pander (1817) and Baer (1828). Wolff's principles are not literally correct; but he comes as near to the truth in them as was possible at that time, and could be expected of him.

Wolff owes a great deal of his success in forming his comprehensive theory to the fact that he was as distinguished in botany as in zoology. He studied at the same time the development of plants, and was the first to establish in botany the theory which Goethe afterwards developed in his famous work on the metamorphosis of plants. Wolff had already shown that all the different parts of the plant could be reduced to the leaf as the fundamental type. The flower and the fruit, with all their parts, are merely modified leaves. The knowledge of this must have much surprised Wolff, as he had found a simple leaf-shaped structure to be the first form of the embryonic body of the animal as well.

Thus we find in Wolff the germs of the two theories which other and much later scientists were to make the basis of a morphological comprehension of the plant and the animal. But our admiration of this gifted genius increases when we find that he was also the precursor of the famous cellular theory. Wolff had, as Huxley showed, a clear presentiment of this cardinal theory, since he recognised small microscopic globules as the elementary parts out of which the germinal layers arose.

Finally, I must invite special attention to the mechanical character of the profound philosophic reflections which Wolff always added to his remarkable observations. He was a
great monistic philosopher, in the best meaning of the word. It is unfortunate that his philosophic discoveries were ignored as completely as his observations for more than half a century. We must be all the more careful to emphasise the fact of their clear monistic tendency.
CHAPTER III.

MODERN EMBRYOLOGY


We may distinguish three chief periods in the growth of our science of human embryology. The first has been considered in the preceding chapter; it embraces the whole of the preparatory period of research, and extends from Aristotle to Caspar Friedrich Wolff, or to the year 1759, in which the epoch-making Theoria generationis was published. The second period, with which we have now to deal, lasts about a century—that is to say, until the appearance of Darwin's Origin of Species, which brought about a change in the very foundations of biology, and, in particular, of embryology. The third period begins with Darwin. When we say that the second period lasted a full century, we must remember that Wolff's work had remained almost unnoticed during half the time—namely, until the year 1812. During the whole of these fifty-three years not a single book that appeared followed up the path that Wolff had opened, or extended his theory of embryonic development. We merely find his views—perfectly correct views, based on extensive observations of fact—
mentioned here and there as erroneous; their opponents, who adhered to the dominant theory of preformation, did not even deign to reply to them. This unjust treatment was chiefly due to the extraordinary authority of Albrecht von Haller; it is one of the most astonishing instances of a great authority, as such, preventing for a long time the recognition of established facts.

The general ignorance of Wolff's work was so great that at the beginning of the nineteenth century two scientists of Jena, Oken (1806) and Kieser (1810), began independent research into the development of the alimentary canal of the chick, and hit upon the right clue to the embryonic puzzle, without knowing a word about Wolff's important treatise on the same subject. They were treading in his very footsteps without suspecting it. This can be easily proved from the fact that they did not travel as far as Wolff. It was not until Meckel translated into German Wolff's book on the alimentary system, and pointed out its great importance, that the eyes of anatomists and physiologists were suddenly opened. At once a number of biologists instituted fresh embryological inquiries, and began to confirm Wolff's theory of epigenesis.

This resuscitation of embryology and development of the epigenesis-theory was chiefly connected with the university of Würzburg. One of the professors there at that time was Döllinger, an eminent biologist, and father of the famous Catholic historian who later distinguished himself by his opposition to the new dogma of papal infallibility. Döllinger was both a profound thinker and an accurate observer. He took the keenest interest in embryology, and worked at it a good deal. However, he is not himself responsible for any important result in this field. In 1816 a young medical doctor, whom we may at once designate as Wolff's chief successor, Karl Ernst von Baer, came to Würzburg. Baer's conversations with Döllinger on embryology led to a fresh series of most extensive investigations. Döllinger had expressed a wish that some young scientist should begin again under his guidance an independent inquiry into the
development of the chick during the hatching of the egg. As neither he nor Baer had money enough to pay for an incubator and the proper control of the experiments, and for a competent artist to illustrate the various stages observed, the lead of the enterprise was given to Christian Pander, a wealthy friend of Baer's, who had been induced by Baer to come to Würzburg. An able engraver, Dalton, was engaged to do the copper-plates.

Thus was formed, in the words of Baer, "an association of memorable importance to science, in which a veteran of physiological research (Döllinger), an ardent scientific neophyte (Pander), and an unrivalled artist (Dalton), joined forces in order to provide a firm foundation for the embryology of the animal organism." In a short time the embryology of the chick, in which Baer was taking the greatest indirect interest, was so far advanced that Pander was able to sketch the main features of it on the ground of Wolff's theory in the dissertation he published in 1817. He clearly enunciated the theory of germinal layers which Wolff had anticipated, and established the truth of Wolff's idea of a development of the complicated systems of organs out of simple leaf-shaped primitive structures. According to Pander, the leaf-shaped object in the hen's egg divides, before the incubation has proceeded twelve hours, into two different layers, an external serous layer and an internal mucous layer; between the two there develops later a third layer, the vascular (blood-vessel) layer.¹

Karl Ernst von Baer, who had set afoot Pander's investigation, and had shown the liveliest interest in it after Pander's departure from Würzburg, began his own much more comprehensive research in 1819. He published the mature result nine years afterwards in his famous work, *Animal Embryology: Observation and Reflection* (not translated). This classic work still remains a model of careful observation united to profound philosophic speculation. The first part appeared in 1828, the second in 1837. The book proved to

¹ I need scarcely note that the technical terms which are bound to creep into this chapter will be fully understood later on.—Trans.
be the foundation on which the whole science of embryology has built down to our own day. It so far surpassed its predecessors, and Pander in particular, that it has become, after Wolff's work, the chief base of modern embryology. As Baer was one of the greatest scientists of the nineteenth century, and exercised considerable influence on other branches of biology as well, it will be interesting to add a few points with regard to his life.

Karl Ernst von Baer was born at Esthland, in Piep, a small estate belonging to his father, in 1794. He studied from 1810 to 1814 at Dorpat, and went from there to Würzburg, where Döllinger not only initiated him to comparative anatomy and embryology, but had a very beneficial general influence over him in the way of scientific method. From Würzburg he went to Berlin, and then, at the invitation of the physiologist Burdach, to Königsberg, where, with few interruptions, he lectured on zoology and embryology until 1834, and wrote his chief works. In 1834 he went to St. Petersberg and became a member of the academy of that city. Here he almost deserted his earlier field, and engaged in various kinds of research of a quite different character, especially in geography, geology, ethnography, and anthropology. During the last forty years his general views gradually altered, as I have described in my Riddle of the Universe. In earlier years he had been a consistent supporter of the monistic system. He had in his chief work (especially in the preface and at the close) insisted on the unity and naturalness of evolution. But in later years he leaned more and more to mystical and teleological considerations; and, in the end, his anthropistic dualism led him to embrace a curious form of theology. He spent his last years at Dorpat, where he died in 1876. His most important works are certainly those dealing with animal embryology, and were all written in Königsberg, though partly published elsewhere. Their great service extends, like that of Baer, over the whole field of embryology in many different directions.

Baer built up the theory of germinal layers, as a whole and in detail, so clearly and solidly that it has been the
starting-point of ontogenetic research ever since. He taught that in all the vertebrates first two and then four of these germinal layers are formed; and that the earliest rudimentary organs of the body arise by the conversion of these layers into tubes. He described the first appearance of the vertebrate embryo, as it may be seen in the globular yolk of the fertilised egg, as an oval disk which first divides into two layers. From the upper or *animal* layer are developed all the organs which accomplish the phenomena of animal life—the functions of sensation and motion, and the covering of the body. From the lower or *vegetative* layer come the organs which effect the vegetative life of the organism—nutrition, digestion, blood-formation, respiration, secretion, reproduction, etc.

Each of these original layers divides, according to Baer, into two thinner and superimposed layers or plates. He calls the two plates of the animal layer, the skin-stratum and muscle-stratum. From the upper of these plates, *the skin-stratum*, the external skin, or outer covering of the body, the central nervous system, and the sense-organs, are formed. From the lower, or *muscle-stratum*, the muscles, or fleshy parts and the bony skeleton—in a word, the motor organs—are evolved. In the same way, Baer said, the lower or vegetative layer splits into two plates, which he calls the vascular-stratum and the mucous-stratum. From the outer of the two (the *vascular*) the heart, blood-vessels, spleen, and the other vascular glands, the kidneys, and sexual glands, are formed. From the fourth or *mucous* layer, in fine, we get the internal and digestive lining of the alimentary canal and all its dependencies, the liver, lungs, salivary glands, etc.

Baer had, in the main, correctly judged the significance of these four secondary embryonic layers, and he followed the conversion of them into the tube-shaped primitive organs with great perspicacity. He first solved the difficult problem of the transformation of this four-fold, flat, leaf-shaped, embryonic disk into the complete vertebrate body, through the conversion of the layers or plates into tubes. The flat leaves bend themselves in obedience to certain laws of growth; the
borders of the curling plates approach nearer and nearer; until at last they come into actual contact. Thus out of the flat gut-plate is formed a hollow gut-tube, out of the flat spinal plate a hollow nerve-tube, from the skin-plate a skin-tube, and so on.

Among the many great services which Baer rendered to embryology, especially vertebrate embryology, we must not forget his discovery of the human ovum. Earlier scientists had, as a rule, assumed that man developed out of an egg, like the other animals. In fact, the preformation theory held that the germs of the whole of humanity were stored already in Eve's ova. But the real ovum escaped detection until the year 1827. This ovum is extremely small, being a tiny round vesicle about the \( \frac{1}{16} \) of an inch in diameter; it can be seen under very favourable circumstances with the naked eye as a tiny particle, but is otherwise quite invisible. This particle is formed in the ovary inside a much larger globule, which takes the name of the Graafian follicle, from its discoverer, Graaf, and had previously been regarded as the true ovum. However, in 1827 Baer proved that it was not the real ovum, which is much smaller, and is contained within the follicle. (Compare the end of the twenty-ninth chapter.)

Baer was also the first to observe what is known as the segmentation sphere of the vertebrate; that is to say, the globular vesicle which first develops out of the impregnated ovum, and the thin wall of which is made up of a single layer of regular, polygonal (many-cornered) cells (see the illustration in the twelfth chapter). Another discovery of his that was of great importance in constructing the vertebrate stem and the characteristic organisation of this extensive group (to which man belongs) was the detection of the axial rod, or the chorda dorsalis. This is a long, round, cylindrical rod of cartilage which runs down the longer axis of the vertebrate embryo; it appears at an early stage, and is the first sketch of the spinal column, the solid skeletal axis of the vertebrate. In the lowest of the vertebrates, the amphioxus, the internal skeleton consists only of this cord throughout life. But even
in the case of man and all the higher vertebrates it is round this cord that the spinal column and the brain are afterwards formed.

However, important as these and many other discoveries of Baer's were in vertebrate embryology, his researches were even more influential, from the circumstance that he was the first to employ the comparative method in studying the development of the animal frame. Baer occupied himself chiefly with the embryology of vertebrates (especially the birds and fishes). But he by no means confined his attention to these, gradually taking the various groups of the invertebrates into his sphere of study. As the general result of his comparative embryological research, Baer distinguished four different modes of development and four corresponding groups in the animal world. These chief groups or types are: 1, the vertebrata; 2, the articulata; 3, the mollusca; and 4, all the lower groups which were then wrongly comprehended under the general name of the radiata. Georges Cuvier had been the first to formulate this distinction, in 1812. He showed that these groups present specific differences in their whole internal structure, and the connection and disposal of their systems of organs; and that, on the other hand, all the animals of the same type—say, the vertebrates—essentially agreed in their inner structure in spite of the greatest superficial differences. But Baer proved that these four groups are also quite differently developed from the ovum; and that the series of embryonic forms is the same throughout for animals of the same type, but different in the case of other animals. Up to that time the chief aim in the classification of the animal kingdom was to arrange all the animals from lowest to highest, from the infusorium to man, in one long and continuous series. The erroneous idea prevailed nearly everywhere that there was one uninterrupted chain of evolution from the lowest animal to the highest. Cuvier and Baer proved that this view was false, and that we must distinguish four totally different types of animals, on the ground of anatomic structure and embryonic development.

Following up this discovery, Baer came to formulate a
very important law, which is called after him Baer’s law, and which he himself expressed in these words:—

The development of an individual of any animal type is characterised by two features: firstly, by the progressive construction of the animal body through a continuous histological and morphological segmentation; secondly, by an advance from a more general to a more special form of structure. The degree of development of the organism consists in the greater or less measure of the heterogeneity of its elementary parts and of the several sections of its connected system; in other words, in its greater histological and morphological subdivision (or differentiation). On the other hand, the type consists in the disposition of the organic elements in the organs. The type is an entirely different thing from the degree of development; the same type may be found in various stages of development, and, vice versa, the same stage of development may be had in different types.

Hence it is that the most advanced animals of each type—for instance, the highest articulata and mollusca—are much more highly organised (or more effectively differentiated) than the lowest animals of every other type, such as the lowest vertebrates and the echinoderms.

This law of Baer has proved of great service in our study of animal organisation, although we were not in a position to understand and appreciate its real significance until Darwin appeared. I may add that a thorough comprehension of it is only possible in the light of the theory of descent, and after recognising the important part that heredity and adaptation play in the production of organic forms. As I showed in my Generelle Morphologie (Band II., § 10), the type of development is a mechanical result of heredity; but the degree of development is a mechanical consequence of adaptation. Heredity and adaptation are the mechanical agents in organic construction which Darwin’s theory of selection introduced into embryology, and through which we have at last come to understand Baer’s law.

Baer’s epoch-making works aroused an extraordinary and widespread interest in embryological research. Immediately afterwards we find a great number of observers at work in the newly opened field, enlarging it in a very short time with great energy by their various discoveries in detail. Next to Baer’s comes the admirable work of Heinrich Rathke, of Königsberg (died 1860); he made an extensive study of the embryology, not only of the invertebrates (crabs, insects,
molluscs), but also, and particularly, of the vertebrates (fishes, tortoises, serpents, crocodiles, etc.). We owe the first comprehensive studies of mammal embryology to the careful research of Wilhelm Bischoff, of Munich; his embryology of the hare (1840), the dog (1842), the guinea-pig (1852), and the doe (1854), still form classical studies. About the same time a great impetus was given to the embryology of the invertebrates. The way was opened through this obscure province by the studies of the famous Berlin zoologist, Johannes Müller, on the echinoderma. He was followed by Albert Kölliker, of Würzburg, writing on the cuttle-fish (or the cephalopods), Siebold and Huxley on worms and zoophytes, Fritz Müller (Desterro) on the crustacea, Weismann on insects, and so on. The number of workers in this field has greatly increased of late, and a quantity of new and astonishing discoveries have been made. One notices, in several of these recent works on embryology, that their authors are too little acquainted with comparative anatomy and classification. Paleontology is, unfortunately, altogether neglected by many of these new workers, although this interesting science furnishes most important facts for phylogeny, and thus often proves of very great service in ontogeny.

A very important advance was made in our science in 1839, when the cellular theory was established, and a new field of inquiry bearing on embryology was suddenly opened. When the famous botanist, M. Schleiden, of Jena, showed in 1838, with the aid of the microscope, that every plant was made up of innumerable elementary parts, which we call cells, a pupil of Johannes Müller at Berlin, Theodor Schwann, applied the discovery at once to the animal organism. He showed that in the animal body as well, when we examine its tissues in the microscope, we find these cells everywhere to be the elementary units. All the different tissues of the organism, especially the very dissimilar tissues of the nerves, muscles, bones, external skin, mucous lining etc., are originally formed out of cells; and this is also true of all the tissues of the plant. These cells are separate
living beings; they are the citizens of the State which the entire multicellular organism seems to be. This important discovery was bound to be of service to embryology, as it raised a number of new questions. What is the relation of the cells to the germinal layers? Are the germinal layers composed of cells, and what is their relation to the cells of the tissues that form later? How does the ovum stand in the cellular theory? Is the ovum itself a cell, or is it composed of cells? These important questions were now imposed on the embryologist by the cellular theory.

The most notable effort to answer these questions—which were attacked on all sides by different students—is contained in the famous work, *Inquiries into the Development of the Vertebrates* (not translated) of Robert Remak, of Berlin (1851). This gifted scientist succeeded in mastering, by a complete reform of the science, the great difficulties which the cellular theory had at first put in the way of embryology. A Berlin anatomist, Carl Boguslaus Reichert, had already attempted to explain the origin of the tissues. But this attempt was bound to miscarry, since its not very clear-headed author lacked a sound acquaintance with embryology and the cell theory, and even with the structure and development of the tissue in particular. An examination of Reichert's discoveries shows how inaccurate his observations were, and how false the conclusions he drew from them. I need only give one illustration: he believed the whole of the outer germinal layer, from which the most important organs are developed (the brain, spinal cord, skin, etc.), to be only a temporary integument of the embryo, which had nothing to do with the actual construction of the organism. According to him, the forms of the various organs did not come for the most part from the original germinal layers, but arose independently of these out of the yolk, and were only gradually joined to the layers. Reichert's perverse studies of embryology only obtained a certain amount of passing attention through the audacious way in which they were pushed and the attack he made on Baer's theory of the germinal layers; and, in fact, they were so badly presented
that nobody really understood them. However, on that very account they won the admiration of a good many readers, who felt that there must be some fund of wisdom at the back of all these cloudy oracles and mysteries. We see the same thing here and there to-day, especially as regards the confused writings of the "mechanical embryologists" (such as Dreisch and his colleagues).

Remak at length brought order into the dreadful confusion that Reichert had caused; he gave a perfectly simple explanation of the origin of the tissues. In his opinion the animal ovum is always a simple cell: the germinal layers which develop out of it are always composed of cells; and these cells that constitute the germinal layers arise simply from the continuous and repeated cleaving (segmentation) of the original solitary cell. It first divides into two and then into four cells; out of these four cells are born eight, then sixteen, thirty-two, and so on. Thus, in the embryonic development of every animal and plant there is formed first of all out of the simple egg cell, by a repeated sub-division, a cluster of cells, as Kölliker had already stated in connection with the cephalopods in 1844. The cells of this group spread themselves out flat and form leaves or plates; each of these leaves is formed exclusively out of cells. The cells of different layers assume different shapes, increase, and differentiate; and in the end there is a further cleavage (differentiation) and division of work (ergonomy) of the cells within the layers, and from these all the different tissues of the body proceed.

These are the simple foundations of histogeny, or the science that treats of the development of the tissues (hista), as it was established by Remak and Kölliker. Remak, in determining more closely the part which the different germinal layers play in the formation of the various tissues and organs, and in applying the theory of epigenesis to the cells and the tissues they compose, raised the theory of germinal layers, at least as far as it regards the vertebrates, to a high degree of perfection.

Remak showed that three layers are formed out of the two germinal layers which compose the first simple leaf-shaped
MODERN EMBRYOLOGY

structure of the vertebrate body (or the "germinal disk"), as the lower layer splits into two plates. These three layers have a very definite relation to the various tissues. First of all, the cells which form the outer skin of the body (the epidermis), with its various dependencies (hairs, nails, etc.)—that is to say, the entire outer envelope of the body—are developed out of the outer or upper layer; but there are also developed in a curious way out of the same layer the cells which form the central nervous system, the brain and the spinal cord. In the second place, the inner or lower germinal layer gives rise only to the cells which form the epithelium (the whole inner lining) of the alimentary canal and all that depends on it (the lungs, liver, pancreas, etc.), or the tissues that receive and prepare the nourishment of the body. Finally, the middle layer gives rise to all the other tissues of the body, the muscles, blood, bones, cartilage, etc. Remak further proved that this middle layer, which he calls "the motor-germinative layer," proceeds to sub-divide into two secondary layers. Thus we find once more the four layers which Baer had indicated. Remak calls the outer secondary leaf of the middle layer (Baer's "muscular layer") the "skin layer" (it would be better to say, skin-fibre layer); it forms the outer wall of the body (the true skin, the muscles, etc.). To the inner secondary leaf (Baer's "vascular layer") he gave the name of the "alimentary-fibre layer"; this forms the outer envelope of the alimentary canal, with the mesentery, the heart, the blood-vessels, etc.

On this firm foundation provided by Remak for histogeny, or the science of the formation of the tissues, our knowledge has been gradually built up and enlarged in detail. There have been several attempts to restrict and even destroy Remak's principles. The two anatomists, Reichert (of Berlin) and Wilhelm His (of Leipzic), especially, have endeavoured in their works to introduce a new conception of the embryonic development of the vertebrate, according to which the two primary germinal layers would not be the sole sources of formation. But these efforts were so seriously marred by ignorance of comparative anatomy, an imperfect acquaintance
with ontogenesis, and a complete neglect of phylogensis, that they could not have more than a passing success. We can only explain how these curious attacks of Reichert and His came to be regarded for a time as advances by the general lack of discrimination and of grasp of the true object of embryology.

Wilhelm His published, in 1868, his extensive *Researches into the Earliest Form of the Vertebrate Body*, one of the curiosities of embryological literature. The author imagines that he can build a "mechanical theory of embryonic development" by merely giving an exact description of the embryology of the chick, without any regard to comparative anatomy and phylogeny, and thus falls into an error that is almost without parallel in the history of biological literature. As the final result of his laborious investigations, His tells us "that a comparatively simple law of growth is the one essential thing in the first development. Every formation, whether it consist in cleavage of layers, or folding, or complete division, is a consequence of this fundamental law." Unfortunately, he does not explain what this "law of growth" is; just as other opponents of the theory of selection, who would put in its place a great "law of evolution," omit to tell us anything about the nature of this. Nevertheless, it is quite clear from His's works that he imagines constructive Nature to be a sort of skilful tailor. The ingenious operator succeeds in bringing into existence, by "evolution," all the various forms of living things by cutting up in different ways the germinal layers, bending and folding, tugging and splitting, and so on. Bending and folding, especially, play an important part in this sartorial theory of embryology. "Not only the division of head from trunk, stem from periphery, but even the form of the members and the separation of the brain, the sense-organs, the primitive vertebral column, the heart, and the rudimentary bowels, can be proved convincingly to be mechanical consequences of the first folding process." The funniest part of it is when the tailor comes to fashion the two

---

1 None of His's works have been translated into English.
pairs of limbs: "The form is like the four corners of a letter, obtained by the crossing of four folds that surround the body." But this "envelope theory" is surpassed by the "rag-bag theory" with which His explains the rudimentary organs: "Organs (such as the hypophysis or the thyroid gland) for which no physiological function has yet been found; they are embryonic remnants, which we might compare to the superfluous pieces that are left over when a coat is cut out even in the most economic fashion" (!). So our Nature-tailor now throws her leavings into the rag-bag. If our skull-less ancestors of the Silurian period had had any presentiment of such vagaries as these on the part of their human successors, they would certainly have preferred to abandon altogether the ciliated groove at their gill-openings, rather than pass it on to the amphioxus, and thus leave us the equivocal gift of the thyroid gland (which becomes the dreaded goitre when it is morbidly enlarged).

But the most important and extensive of the embryological theories of His was his famous "theory of the parablasts." According to this, the human body (and that of all other vertebrates) is made up at first of two different organisms, which arise from two entirely separate embryonic structures, the chief embryo and the secondary embryo. It is only the chief embryo, or the "Archiblast," that develops from the fertilised ovum, and is built from the two primary germinal layers which are formed by its repeated sub-division. On the other hand, the secondary embryo, or the "Parablast," is formed, not out of the germinal layers, but from parts of the white yolk; the cells which compose it come from the follicle-cells of the membrana granulosa, and have passed from the ovary into the yolk. Hence the parablast is an additional gift from the mother, the archiblast alone coming from both parents, as a product of the fertilised ovum, and transmitting their features to the offspring. From this secondary embryo are developed (parthenogenetically) the tissues of the blood-vessels and the connective parts (bones, cartilages, etc.); while all the other tissues of the vertebrate body are formed from the sexually-produced
chief embryo. The two embryos are at first quite independent, "sharply distinguished, not only in regard to origin, but also from the histological and physiological points of view." Thus the vertebrate organism is a double being, formed by the "symbiosis," or the gradual coalescence, of two animals that were at first distinct. As the lichen is made up of two distinct plants, a fungus and an alga, so, according to His, every vertebrate is composed of two separate animals, an archiblast and a parablast. I have pointed out in my essay on The Origin and Development of the Animal Tissues (1884) the far-reaching consequences that would follow from this "symbiosis of the vertebrate."

This parablast theory, like His's other embryological theories, excited a good deal of interest at the time of its publication, and has evoked a fair amount of literature in the last few decades. His professed to explain the most complicated parts of organic construction (such as the development of the brain) in the simplest way on mechanical principles, and to derive them immediately from simple physical processes (such as unequal distribution of strain in an elastic plate). It is quite true that a mechanical or monistic explanation (or a reduction of natural phenomena to physical and chemical processes) is the ideal of modern science, and this ideal would be realised if we could succeed in expressing these formative processes in mathematical formulae. His has, therefore, inserted plenty of numbers and measurements in his embryological works, and given them an air of "exact" scholarship by putting in a quantity of mathematical tables. Unfortunately, they are of no value, and do not help us in the least in forming an "exact" acquaintance with the embryonic phenomena. Indeed, they wander from the true path altogether by neglecting the phylogenetic method; this, he thinks, is "a mere by-path," and is "not necessary at all for the explanation of the facts of embryology," which are the direct consequence of physiological principles. What His takes to be a simple physical process—for instance, the folding of the germinal layers (in the formation of the medullary tube, alimentary tube, etc.)—
MODERN EMBRYOLOGY

is, as a matter of fact, the direct result of the growth of the various cells which form those organic structures; but these growth-motions have themselves been transmitted by heredity from parents and ancestors, and are only the hereditary repetition of countless phylogenetic changes which have taken place for thousands of years in the race-history of the said ancestors.

Each of these historical changes was, of course, originally due to adaptation; it was, in other words, physiological, and reducible to mechanical causes. But we have, naturally, no means of observing them now. It is only by the hypotheses of the science of evolution that we can form an approximate idea of the organic links in this historic chain. I have contrasted these phylogenetic theories with the pseudo-mechanical theories of His in my essay on *The Aims and Methods of Modern Embryology* (1875). I have also given in this essay a criticism of the curious theories of evolution which Alexander Goette has put forward in his comprehensive and finely illustrated study (1875) of the development of the ringed-snake; and of the religious and mystic views of Louis Agassiz. Such vagaries as these are scarcely possible in any other science to-day. That they crop up in the science of embryology is due in part to the extreme difficulty and intricacy of its object, and in part to the inadequate training of many of the workers in this field. In fine, it is worth noting that, though His's pseudo-mechanical method has (like the very different method of Goette) been much admired, it has not been developed or applied with any success by any other scientist. No results of any value have been attained by it.

All the best recent research in animal embryology has led to the confirmation and development of Baer and Remak's theory of the germinal layers. One of the most important advances in this direction of late was the discovery that the two primary layers out of which is built the body of all vertebrates (including man) are also present in all the invertebrates, with the sole exception of the lowest group, the unicellular protozoa. Huxley had detected them in the
medusa in 1849. He showed that the two layers of cells from which the body of this zoophyte is developed correspond, both morphologically and physiologically, to the two original germinal layers of the vertebrate. The outer layer, from which come the external skin and the muscles, was then called by Allman (1853) the "ectoderm" (= outer layer, or skin); the inner layer, which forms the alimentary and reproductory organs, was called the "entoderm" (= inner layer). In 1867 and the following years the discovery of the germinal layers was extended to other groups of the invertebrates. In particular, the indefatigable Russian zoologist, Kowalevsky, found them in all the most diverse sections of the invertebrates—the worms, tunicates, echinoderms, molluscs, articulate, etc. In my monograph on the sponges (1872) I myself proved that these two primary germinal layers are also found in that group, and that they may be traced from it right up to man, through all the various classes, in analogous (or homologous) form. This "homology of the two primary germinal layers" extends through the whole of the metazoa, or tissue-forming animals; that is to say, through the whole animal kingdom, with the one exception of its lowest section, the unicellular beings, or protozoa. These lowly organised animals do not form germinal layers, and therefore do not succeed in forming true tissue. Their whole body consists of a single cell (as is the case with the amœbœ and infusoria), or of a loose aggregation of only slightly differentiated cells, though it may not even reach the full structure of a single cell (as with the monera). But in all other animals the ovum first grows into two primary layers, the outer or animal layer (the ectoderm, epiblast, or ectoblast), and the inner or vegetal layer (the entoderm, hypoblast, or endoblast); and from these the tissues and organs are formed. The first and oldest organ of all these metazoa is the primitive gut (or progaster) and its opening, the primitive mouth (prostoma). The typical embryonic form of the metazoa, as it is presented for a time by this simple structure of the two-layered body, is called the gastrula; it is to be conceived as the hereditary
reproduction of some primitive common ancestor of the metazoa, which we call the gastrea. This applies to the sponges and other zoophyta, and to the worms, the mollusca, echinoderma, articulata, and vertebrata. All these animals may be comprised under the general heading of "gut animals," or metazoa, in contradistinction to the gutless protozoa.

I have pointed out in my Study of the Gastrea Theory (1873) the important consequences of this conception in the morphology and classification of the animal world. I also divided the realm of metazoa into two great groups, the lower and higher metazoa. In the first are comprised the cælenterata (also called zoophytes, or "plant-animals"). In the lower forms of this group the body consists throughout life merely of the primary germinal layers, with the cells sometimes more and sometimes less differentiated; this is the case with the gastreaeds, the simpler sponges (protospongia), the hydropolyps, and the lower medusæ. But with the higher forms of the cælenterata (the corals, higher meduse, ctenophora, and platodes) a middle layer, or mesoderm, often of considerable size, is developed between the other two layers; but blood and an internal cavity are still lacking.

To the second great group of the metazoa I gave the name of the cælomaria, or bilaterata (or the bilateral higher forms). They all have a cavity within the body (cæloma), and most of them have blood and blood-vessels. In this are comprised the six higher stems of the animal kingdom, the annulata and their descendants, the mollusca, echinoderma, articulata, tunicata, and vertebrata. In all these bilateral organisms the two-sided body is formed out of four secondary germinal layers, of which the inner two construct the wall of the alimentary canal, and the outer two the wall of the body. Between the two pairs of layers lies the cavity (cæloma).

Although I laid special stress on the great morphological importance of this cavity in my Study of the Gastrea Theory, and endeavoured to prove the significance of the four secondary germinal layers in the organisation of the cælomaria, I was unable to deal satisfactorily with the difficult question of the
mode of their origin. This was done eight years afterwards by the brothers Oscar and Richard Hertwig in their careful and extensive comparative studies. In their masterly Cælum Theory: An Attempt to Explain the Middle Germinal Layer [not translated] (1881) they showed that in most of the metazoa, especially in all the vertebrates, the body-cavity arises in the same way, by the turning up of two of the entoderm sacs. These two cælum-pouches grow out from the rudimentary mouth of the gastrula, between the two primary layers. The inner plate of the two-layered cælum-pouch (the visceral layer) joins itself to the entoderm; the outer plate (parietal layer) unites with the ectoderm. Thus are formed the double-layered gut-wall within and the double-layered body-wall without; and between the two is formed the cavity of the cælum, by the blending of the right and left cælum-sacs.

The many new points of view and fresh ideas suggested by my gastæa theory and Hertwig’s cælum theory led to the publication of a number of writings on the theory of germinal layers. Most of them set out to oppose it at first, but in the end the majority supported it. Of late years both theories are accepted in their essential features by nearly every competent man of science, and light and order have been introduced into this once dark and contradictory field of research. A further cause of congratulation for this solution of the great embryological controversy is that it brought with it a recognition of the need for phylogenetic study and explanation.

Interest and practice in embryological research have been remarkably stimulated during the past thirty years by this appreciation of phylogenetic methods. Hundreds of assiduous and able observers are now engaged in the development of comparative embryology and its establishment on a basis of evolution, whereas they numbered only a few dozen not many decades ago. It would take too long to enumerate even the most important of the countless valuable works which have enriched embryological literature since that time. References to them will be found in the latest manuals of
embryology of Kölliker, Balfour, Hertwig, Kollman, Korschelt, and Heider.

Kölliker's *Entwickelungsgeschichte des Menschen und der höherer Thiere*, the first edition of which appeared forty-two years ago, had the rare merit at that time of gathering into presentable form the scattered attainments of the science, and expounding them in some sort of unity on the basis of the cellular theory and the theory of germinal layers. Unfortunately, the distinguished Würzburg anatomist, to whom comparative anatomy, histology, and ontogeny owe so much, is opposed to the theory of descent generally and to Darwinism in particular. In the latest edition of his work (1884) he rejected the evolutionary significance of the facts of embryology, as I pointed it out, and the gastræa theory. On the other hand, he subscribes (though less fully of late years) to the theories of His, and has contributed a good deal by his great authority to the prestige they enjoyed for a time.

All the other manuals I have mentioned take a decided stand on evolution. Francis Balfour has carefully collected and presented with discrimination, in his *Manual of Comparative Embryology* (1880), the very scattered and extensive literature of the subject; he has also widened the basis of the gastræa theory by a comparative description of the rise of the organs from the germinal layers in all the chief groups of the animal kingdom, and has given a most thorough empirical support to the principles I have formulated. A comparison of his work with the excellent *Text-book of the Embryology of the Vertebrates* (1890) [translation, 1895] of Korschelt and Heider shows what astonishing progress has been made in the science in the course of ten years. I would especially recommend the manuals of Julius Kollman and Oscar Hertwig to those readers who are stimulated to further study by these chapters on human embryology. Kollmann's *Lehrbuch der entwicklungsgeschichte des Menschen* (1898) is commendable for its clear treatment of the subject and very fine original illustrations; its author adheres firmly to the biogenetic law, and uses it throughout with considerable profit. That is not the case in Oscar Hertwig's recent *Text-book of the Embryology of
Man and the Mammals [translations 1892 and 1899] (seventh edition, 1902). This able anatomist has of late often been quoted as an opponent of the biogenetic law, although he himself had demonstrated its great value thirty years ago in his Untersuchungen über Bau und Entwicklung der Plakoid-schuppen. His recent vacillation is partly due to the timidity which our “exact” scientists have with regard to hypotheses; though it is quite impossible to make any headway in the explanation of facts without them. However, the purely descriptive part of embryology in Hertwig's Text-book is very thorough and reliable. A shorter account is given in his Elemente der Entwicklungsllehre (Jena, 1900), and a very good summary of special work done by many authors in his Handbuch der vergleichenden und experimentellen Entwicklungsllehre der Wirbelthiere (Jena, 1901).

A new branch of embryological research has been studied very assiduously in the last decade of the nineteenth century—namely, “experimental embryology.” The great importance which has been attached to the application of physical experiments to the living organism for the last hundred years, and the valuable results that it has given to physiology in the study of the vital phenomena, have led to its extension to embryology. I was the first to make experiments of this kind during a stay of four months on the Canary Island, Lanzereote, in 1866. I there made a thorough investigation of the almost unknown embryology of the siphonophora. I cut a number of the embryos of these animals (which develop freely in the water, and pass through a very curious transformation), at an early stage, into several pieces, and found that a fresh organism (more or less complete, according to the size of the piece) was developed from each particle. I have given illustrations of the curious larvae (sometimes of quite monstrous shapes) which form from them on plates 11-14 of my Entwicklungsgeschichte der Siphonophoren (Utrecht, 1869).

More recently some of my pupils have made similar experiments with the embryos of vertebrates (especially the frog) and some of the invertebrates. Wilhelm Roux, in
particular, has made extensive experiments, and based on them a special "mechanical embryology," which has given rise to a good deal of discussion and controversy. Roux has published a special journal for these subjects since 1895, the *Archiv für Entwickelungsmechanik*. The contributions to it are very varied in value. Many of them are valuable papers on the physiology and pathology of the embryo. Pathological experiments—the placing of the embryo in abnormal conditions—have yielded many interesting results; just as the physiology of the normal body has for a long time derived assistance from the pathology of the diseased organism. Other of these mechanical-evolutionary articles return to the erroneous methods of His, and are only misleading. This must be said of the many contributions of mechanical embryology which take up a position of hostility to the theory of descent and its chief embryological foundation—the biogenetic law. This law, however, when rightly understood, is not opposed to, but is the best and most solid support of, a sound mechanical embryology. Impartial reflection and a due attention to paleontology and comparative anatomy should convince these one-sided mechanists that the facts they have discovered—and, indeed, the whole embryological process—cannot be fully understood without the theory of descent and the biogenetic law.
CHAPTER IV.

THE OLDER PHYLOGENY


The embryology of man and the animals, the history of which we have reviewed in the last two chapters, was mainly a descriptive science forty years ago. The earlier investigations in this province were chiefly directed to the discovery, by careful observation, of the wonderful facts of the embryonic development of the animal body from the ovum. Forty years ago no one dared attack the question of the causes of these phenomena. For fully a century, from the year 1759, when Wolff's solid Theoria generationis appeared, until 1859, when Darwin published his famous Origin of Species, the real causes of the embryonic processes were quite unknown. No one thought of seeking the agencies that effected this marvellous succession of structures. The task was thought to be so difficult as almost to pass beyond the limits of human thought. It was reserved for Charles Darwin to initiate us into the knowledge of these causes. This compels us to recognise in this great genius, who wrought a complete revolution in the whole field of

1 Cf. Clodd's Pioneers of Evolution and Packard's Lamarck and New-Lamarckism and Lamarck the Founder of Evolution.
biology, a founder at the same time of a new period in embryology. It is true that Darwin occupied himself very little with direct embryological research, and even in his chief work he only touches incidentally on the embryonic phenomena; but by his reform of the theory of descent and the founding of the theory of selection he has given us the means of attaining to a real knowledge of the causes of embryonic formation. That is, in my opinion, the chief feature in Darwin's incalculable influence on the whole science of evolution.

When we turn our attention to this latest period of embryological research, we pass into the second division of organic evolution—stem-evolution, or phylogeny. I have already indicated in the first chapter the important and intimate causal connection between these two sections of the science of evolution—between the evolution of the individual and that of his ancestors. We have formulated this connection in the biogenetic law; the shorter evolution, that of the individual, or ontogenesis, is a rapid and summary repetition, a condensed recapitulation, of the larger evolution, or that of the species. In this principle we express all the essential points relating to the causes of evolution; and we shall seek throughout this work to confirm this principle and lend it the support of facts. When we look to its causal significance, perhaps it would be better to formulate the biogenetic law thus: "The evolution of the species and the stem (phylon) shows us, in the physiological functions of heredity and adaptation, the conditioning causes on which the evolution of the individual depends"; or, more briefly: "Phylogenesis is the mechanical cause of ontogenesis."

We owe it to Darwin that we are now in a position to trace and appreciate these hitherto obscure causes of embryonic development, and so we give his name to a new period in embryology. But before we examine the great achievement by which Darwin revealed the causes of evolution to us, we must glance at the efforts of earlier scientists to attain this object. Our historical inquiry into these will be even shorter than that into the work done in the field of ontogeny. We
have very few names to consider here. At the head of them we find the great French naturalist, Jean Lamarck, who first established evolution as a scientific theory in 1809. Even before his time, however, the chief philosopher, Kant, and the chief poet, Goethe, of Germany had occupied themselves with the subject. But their efforts passed almost without recognition in the eighteenth century. A "philosophy of nature" did not arise until the beginning of the nineteenth century. In the whole of the time before this no one had ventured to raise seriously the question of the origin of species, which is the culminating point of phylogeny. On all sides it was regarded as an insoluble enigma.

The whole science of the evolution of man and the other animals is intimately connected with the question of the nature of species, or with the problem of the origin of the various animals which we group together under the name of species. Thus the definition of the species becomes important. It is well known that this definition was given by Linné, who, in his famous Systema Naturae (1735), was the first to classify and name the various groups of animals and plants, and drew up an orderly scheme of the species then known. Since that time "species" has been the most important and indispensable idea in descriptive natural history, in zoological and botanical classification; although there have been endless controversies as to its real meaning.

What, then, is this "organic species"? Linné himself did not give a very clear account of it. He unfortunately relied on religious notions which the dominant creed had founded on the Mosaic story of creation, and which have not yet wholly disappeared. Linné, in fact, appealed directly to the Mosaic narrative; he believed that, as it is stated in Genesis, one pair of each species of animals and plants was created in the beginning, and that all the individuals of each species are the descendants of these created couples. As for the hermaphrodites (organisms that have male and female organs in one being), he thought it sufficed to assume the creation of one sole individual, since this would be fully competent to propagate its species. Further developing
these mystic ideas, Linné went on to borrow from Genesis the account of the deluge and of Noah’s ark as a ground for the chorology of organisms—that is to say, for a science of their geographical and topographical distribution. He accepted the story that all the plants, animals, and men on the earth were swept away in a universal deluge, except the couples preserved with Noah in the ark, and ultimately landed on Mount Ararat. This mountain seemed to Linné particularly suitable for the landing, as it reaches a height of more than 16,000 feet, and thus provides in its higher zones the several climates demanded by the various species of animals and plants: the animals that were accustomed to a cold climate could remain at the summit; those used to a warm climate could descend to the foot; and those requiring a temperate climate could remain half-way down. From this point the re-population of the earth with animals and plants could proceed.

It was impossible to have any scientific notion of the method of evolution in Linné’s time, as one of the chief sources of information, paleontology, was still wholly unknown. This science of the fossil remains of extinct animals and plants is very closely bound up with the whole question of evolution. It is impossible to explain the origin of living organisms without appealing to it. But this science did not rise until a much later date. The real founder of scientific paleontology was Georges Cuvier, the most distinguished zoologist who, after Linné, worked at the classification of the animal world, and effected a complete revolution in systematic zoology at the beginning of the nineteenth century. The influence of this famous scientist, which was of extraordinary service, especially in the first three decades of the century, was so great that he opened up new paths in nearly every part of scientific zoology, particularly in classification, comparative anatomy, and paleontology. It is important, therefore, to inquire what idea Cuvier had of the nature of the species. In this respect he associated himself with Linné and the Mosaic story of creation, though this was more difficult for him with his acquaintance with
fossil remains. He clearly showed that a number of quite different animal populations have lived on the earth; and he claimed that we must distinguish a number of stages in the history of our planet, each of which was characterised by a special population of animals and plants.

Cuvier had, naturally, to meet the question of the origin of these different populations, and if they were connected with each other or not. He answered this question in the negative, affirming that the successive populations were quite independent of each other, and that therefore the supernatural creative act, which was demanded as the origin of the animals and plants by the dominant creed, must have been repeated several times. In this way a whole series of different creative periods must have succeeded each other; and in connection with these he had to assume that stupendous revolutions or cataclysms—something like the legendary deluge—must have taken place repeatedly. Cuvier was all the more interested in these catastrophes or cataclysms as geology was just beginning to assert itself, and great progress was being made in our knowledge of the structure and formation of the earth's crust. The various strata of the crust were being carefully examined, especially by the famous geologist Werner and his school, and the fossils found in them were being classified; and these researches also seemed to point to a variety of creative periods. In each period the earth's crust, composed of the various strata, seemed to be differently constituted, just like the population of animals and plants that then lived on it. Cuvier combined this notion with the results of his own paleontological and zoological research; and in his effort to get a consistent view of the whole process of the earth's history he came to form the theory which is known as "the catastrophic theory," or the theory of terrestrial revolutions. According to this theory, there have been a series of mighty cataclysms on the earth, and these have suddenly destroyed the whole animal and plant population then living on it; after each cataclysm there was a fresh creation of living things throughout the earth. As this creation could not be
explained by natural laws, it was necessary to appeal to an intervention on the part of the Creator. This catastrophic theory, which Cuvier described in a special work, was soon generally accepted, and retained its position in biology for half a century.

However, Cuvier's theory was completely overthrown sixty years ago by the geologists, led by Charles Lyell, the most distinguished worker in this field of science. Lyell proved in his famous *Principles of Geology* (1830) that the theory was false, in so far as it concerned the crust of the earth; that it was totally unnecessary to bring in supernatural agencies or general catastrophes in order to explain the structure and formation of the mountains; and that we can explain them by the familiar agencies which are at work to-day in altering and reconstructing the surface of the earth. These causes are—the action of the atmosphere and water in its various forms (snow, ice, fog, rain, the wear of the river, and the stormy ocean), and the volcanic action which is exerted by the glowing central mass. Lyell convincingly proved that these natural causes are quite adequate to explain every feature in the build and formation of the crust. Hence Cuvier's theory of cataclysms was very soon driven out of the province of geology.

Nevertheless, the theory remained for another thirty years in undisputed authority in biology. All the zoologists and botanists who gave any thought to the question of the origin of organisms adhered to Cuvier's erroneous idea of revolutions and new creations. It is one of the most curious instances on record of two cognate sciences pursuing for some time totally different ways from each other. Biology lagged behind on the paths of dualism, and declared it impossible to solve the problem of the formation of species on natural principles; geology, on the contrary, advanced rapidly along the monistic path, and solved the problem by the indication of the natural agencies at work.

In order to illustrate the complete stagnancy of biology from 1830 to 1859, on the question of the origin of organisms, or the formation of the various species of animals and plants,
I may say, from my own experience, that during the whole of my university studies I never heard a single word said about this most important problem of the science. I was fortunate enough at that time (1852–1857) to have the most distinguished masters for every branch of biological science. Not one of them ever mentioned this question of the origin of species. Not a word was ever said about the earlier efforts to understand the formation of living things, nor about Lamarck's Philosophie Zoologique which had made a fresh attack on the problem in 1809. Hence it is easy to understand the enormous opposition that Darwin encountered when he took up the question for the first time. His views seemed to float in the air, without a single previous effort to support them. The whole question of the formation of living things was considered by biologists, until 1859, as pertaining to the province of religion and transcendentalism; even in speculative philosophy, in which the question had been approached from various sides, no one had ventured to give it serious treatment.

This last circumstance was due to the dualistic system of Immanuel Kant, and the enormous influence of this most important of recent thinkers down to our own time. Kant, a genius both in science and philosophy, taught a natural system of evolution as far as the inorganic world was concerned; but, on the whole, adopted a supernaturalist system as regards the origin of living things. In his General History and Theory of the Heavens [translated in Kant's Cosmogony] Kant made a very happy effort to deal with the structure and mechanical origin of the universe on Newton's principles—in other words, to explain it on mechanical and monistic principles; and this effort to explain the origin of the universe by natural, efficient causes is still the basis of cosmogony. But Kant affirmed that this "principle of natural mechanicism, without which there can be no real science," was quite incapable of furnishing an explanation of organic phenomena, and especially of the origin of living things; and that we must turn to supernatural or final causes for the explanation of the origin of these designed structures.
He even went so far as to say: "It is quite certain that we cannot even satisfactorily understand, much less explain, the nature of an organism and its internal forces on purely mechanical principles; it is so certain, indeed, that we may confidently say: 'It is absurd for a man to imagine even that some day a Newton will arise who will explain the origin of a single blade of grass by natural laws not controlled by design'—such a hope is entirely forbidden us." In these words Kant definitely adopts the dualistic and teleological point of view for biological science.¹

Nevertheless, Kant deserted this point of view at times, particularly in several remarkable passages which I have dealt with at length in my *Natural History of Creation* (chap. v.), where he expresses himself in the opposite, or monistic, sense. In fact, these passages would justify one, as I showed, in claiming his support for the theory of evolution. Several very significant passages which Fritz Schultze has brought to light in his interesting work, *Kant und Darwin*, seem to give Kant the character of being the first Darwinian prophet. He quite clearly enunciates the great idea of an all-embracing and monistic evolution. He speaks of "a falling away from the primitive type of the genus by natural variations." In fact, he affirms that "man originally walked on four legs, and only gradually developed the erect attitude, and raised himself so proudly above his former animal comrades." However, these monistic passages are only stray gleams of light; as a rule, Kant adheres in biology to the obscure dualistic ideas, according to which the forces at work in inorganic nature are quite different from those of the organic world. This dualistic system prevails in academic philosophy to-day—most of our philosophers still regarding these two provinces as totally distinct. They put, on the one side, the inorganic or "lifeless" world, in which there are at work only mechanical laws, acting necessarily and without design; and, on the other, the province of organic nature, in which none of the phenomena can be properly understood,

¹ *Kritik der teleologischen Urtheilskraft*, §§ 74 and 79. [I translate Haeckel's quotation.—Trans.]
either as regards their inner nature or their origin, except in the light of preconceived design, carried out by final or purposive causes.

The prevalence of this unfortunate dualistic prejudice prevented the problem of the origin of species, and the connected question of the origin of man, from being regarded by the bulk of people as a scientific question at all until 1859. Nevertheless, a few distinguished students, free from the current prejudice, began, at the commencement of the nineteenth century, to make a serious attack on the problem. The merit of this attaches particularly to what is known as "the older school of natural philosophy," which has been so much misrepresented, and which included Jean Lamarck, Buffon, Geoffroy St. Hilaire, and Blainville in France; Wolfgang Goethe, Reinhold Treviranus, Schelling, and Lorentz Oken in Germany [and Erasmus Darwin in England].

The gifted natural philosopher who treated this difficult question with the greatest sagacity and comprehensiveness was Jean Lamarck. He was born at Bazentin, in Picardy, on August 1st, 1744; he was the son of a clergyman, and was destined for the Church. But he turned to seek glory in the army. In his sixteenth year he distinguished himself by his bravery in the battle of Lippstadt, and was then in garrison in the south of France for several years. Here he began to study the interesting flora of the Mediterranean coast, and it inspired him with a love of botany. He resigned his commission, and in 1778 published his important work, Flore Française. For a long time he failed to secure a place in science, and it was not until his fiftieth year (1794) that he was offered the chair of zoology at the museum of the Jardin des Plantes at Paris. He then went deeper into zoology, and he soon rendered as great a service in zoological classification as he had done in botany. In 1802 he published his Considerations sur les corps vivants, in which we find the germs of his theory of evolution. In 1809 appeared his chief work, the famous Philosophie Zoologique, in which he developed his theory. In 1815 he published his comprehensive natural history of the vertebrates (Histoire naturelle des
animaux sans vertèbres), in the introduction to which his theory is again touched upon. About this time he became totally blind. Fortune, in her jealousy, never favoured him. While his fortunate rival, Cuvier, rose to the highest point of scientific fame and prestige at Paris, the great Lamarck—far greater than Cuvier in the vastness of his speculations and his conception of Nature—had to struggle in solitude for the necessities of life. His laborious life ended, in circumstances of great poverty, in 1829.

Lamarck's Philosophie Zoologique was the first scientific attempt to sketch the real course of the origin of species, the first "natural history of creation" of plants, animals, and men. But, as in the case of Wolff's book, this remarkably able work had no influence whatever; neither one nor the other could obtain any recognition from their prejudiced contemporaries. No man of science was stimulated to take an interest in the work, and to develop the germs it contained of the most important biological truths. The most distinguished botanists and zoologists entirely rejected it, and did not even deign to reply to it. Cuvier, who lived and worked in the same city, has not thought fit to devote a single syllable to this great achievement in his memoir on progress in the sciences, in which the pettiest observations found a place. In short, Lamarck's Philosophie Zoologique shared the fate of Wolff's theory of development, and was for half a century ignored and neglected. The German scientists, especially Oken and Goethe, who were occupied with similar speculations at the same time, seem to have known nothing about Lamarck's work. If they had known it, they would have been greatly helped by it, and might have carried the theory of evolution much farther than they found it possible to do.

To give an idea of the great importance of the Philosophie Zoologique, I will briefly explain Lamarck's leading thought. He held that there was no essential difference between living and lifeless beings. Nature is one united and connected system of phenomena; and the forces which fashion the

1 New edition, with biographical introduction by Charles Martin. (Paris, 1873.)
lifeless bodies are the only ones at work in the kingdom of living things. We have, therefore, to use the same method of investigation and explanation in both provinces. Life is only a physical phenomenon. All the plants and animals, with man at their head, are to be explained, in structure and life, by mechanical or efficient causes, without any appeal to final causes, just as in the case of minerals and other inorganic bodies. This applies equally to the origin of the various species. We must not assume any original creation, or repeated creations (as in Cuvier's theory), to explain this, but a natural, continuous, and necessary evolution. The whole evolutionary process has been uninterrupted. All the different kinds of animals and plants which we see to-day, or that have ever lived, have descended in a natural way from earlier and different species; all come from one common stock, or from a few common ancestors. These remote ancestors must have been quite simple organisms of the lowest type, arising by spontaneous generation from inorganic matter. The succeeding species have been constantly modified by adaptation to their varying environment (especially by use and habit), and have transmitted their modifications to their successors by heredity.

These are the chief outlines of Lamarck's theory, which we now call the theory of descent or "transformism," and which was unrecognised till Darwin took it up and gave it fresh support fifty years later. Lamarck is the real founder of the theory of evolution, and it is incorrect to speak of Darwin as its first champion. Lamarck was the first to formulate as a scientific theory the natural origin of living things, including man, and to push the theory to its extreme conclusions—the rise of the earliest organisms by spontaneous generation (or abiogenesis) and the descent of man from the nearest related mammal, the ape.

Lamarck sought to explain this last point, which is of especial interest to us here, by the same agencies which he found at work in the natural origin of the plant and animal species. He considered use and habit (adaptation) on the one hand, and heredity on the other, to be the chief of these
agencies. The most important modifications of the organs of plants and animals are due, in his opinion, to the function of these very organs, or to the use or disuse of them. To give a few examples, the woodpecker and the humming-bird have got their peculiarly long tongues from the habit of extracting their food with their tongues from deep and narrow folds or canals; the frog has developed the web between his toes by his own swimming; the giraffe has lengthened his neck by stretching up to the higher branches of trees, and so on. It is quite certain that this use or disuse of organs is a most important factor in organic development, but it is not sufficient to explain the origin of species.

To adaptation we must add heredity as the second and not less important agency, as Lamarck perfectly recognised. He said that the modification of the organs in any one individual by use or disuse was slight, but that it was increased by accumulation in passing by heredity from generation to generation. But he missed altogether the principle which Darwin afterwards found to be the chief factor in the theory of transformation—namely, the principle of natural selection in the struggle for existence. It was partly owing to his failure to detect this supremely important element, and partly to the poor condition of all biological science at the time, that Lamarck did not succeed in establishing more firmly his theory of the common descent of man and the other animals.

Lamarck tried to explain the descent of man from the ape chiefly by advance in the habits of the ape, and by a progressive development and use of its organs and the transmission to posterity of the modifications thus produced. He considered the most important of these improvements to be man's erect attitude, the modification of the hands and feet, and the acquisition of speech and accompanying development of the brain. He believed that the man-like apes, which were man's ancestors, had taken the first step towards humanity when they ceased to climb trees and began to walk erect. This led to the distinctive human carriage, the modification of the vertebral column and the pelvis, and the
differentiation of the upper and lower limbs: the upper limbs became hands, and were used for grasping and touching things, while the lower were confined to locomotive purposes, and became feet pure and simple.

As a result of this complete change of habits, and in virtue of the correlation of the various organs and their functions, a number of other modifications were caused. Thus the change in diet led to a modification of the jaws and teeth, and therefore of the whole face. The tail was no longer of any use, and it gradually disappeared. And as these apes lived in troops and had regular family relations (as is the case to-day with the higher apes), the gregarious or social instincts were strongly developed. The simple sound-speech of the ape grew into the articulate speech of the man; abstract ideas were formed from the groups of concrete impressions. Thus step by step the brain advanced, and with it the larynx—the organ of mind simultaneously with the organ of speech. In these most interesting speculations of Lamarck we have the germs of a sound theory of the evolution of man. (Cf. Packard).

Independently of Lamarck, the older German school of natural philosophy, especially Reinhold Treviranus, in his Biologie (1802), and Lorentz Oken, in his Naturphilosophie (1809), turned its attention to the problem of evolution about the end of the eighteenth and beginning of the nineteenth century. I have described its work in my Natural History of Creation (chap. iv.). Here I can only deal with the brilliant genius whose evolutionary ideas are of special interest—the greatest of German poets, Wolfgang Goethe. With his keen eye for the beauties of nature, and his profound insight into its life, Goethe was early attracted to the study of various natural sciences. It was the favourite occupation of his leisure hours throughout life. He gave particular and protracted attention to the theory of colours. But the most valuable of his scientific studies are those which relate to that "living, glorious, precious thing," the organism. He made profound research into the science of structures or morphology (morphae = forms). Here, with the aid of comparative
anatomy, he obtained the most brilliant results, and went far in advance of his time. I may mention, in particular, his vertebral theory of the skull, his discovery of the pineal gland in man, his system of the metamorphosis of plants, etc. These morphological studies led Goethe on to research into the formation and modification of organic structures which we must count as the first germ of the science of evolution. He approaches so near to the theory of descent that we must regard him, after Lamarck, as one of its earliest founders. It is true that he never formulated a complete scientific theory of evolution, but we find a number of remarkable suggestions of it in his splendid miscellaneous essays on morphology. Some of them are really among the very basic ideas of the science of evolution. I will quote here only one or two of the most remarkable passages: "We have got far enough, then, to say confidently that all the higher organic natures, in which we include the fishes, amphibia, birds, and mammals, with man at their head, are made after one primitive type, and this only oscillates a little to one side or other of its steady features, and daily advances and is modified by reproduction" (1796). This "primitive type," on which even man is modelled, corresponds to our common ancestral form of the vertebrate stem, from which all the different species of vertebrates have arisen by "incessant formation, modification, and reproduction." In another place Goethe says (1807): "When we compare plants and animals in their most rudimentary forms, it is almost impossible to distinguish between them. But we may say that the plants and animals, beginning with an almost inseparable closeness, gradually advance along two divergent lines, until the plant at last grows in the solid, enduring tree and the animal attains in man to the highest degree of mobility and freedom."

That Goethe was not merely speaking in a poetical, but in a literal genealogical, sense of this close affinity of organic forms is clear from other remarkable passages in which he treats of their variety in outward form and unity in internal structure. He believes that every living thing has arisen by
the interaction of two opposing formative forces or impulses. The internal or "centripetal" force, the type or "impulse to specification," seeks to maintain the constancy of the specific forms in the succession of generations: this is heredity. The external or "centrifugal" force, the element of variation or "impulse to metamorphosis," is continually modifying the species by changing their environment: this is adaptation. In these significant conceptions Goethe approaches very close to a recognition of the two great mechanical factors which we now assign as the chief causes of the formation of species.

However, in order to appreciate Goethe's views on morphology, one must associate his decidedly monistic conception of nature with his pantheistic philosophy. The warm and keen interest with which he followed, in his last years, the controversies of contemporary French scientists, and especially the struggle between Cuvier and Geoffroy St. Hilaire (see chap. iv. of The Natural History of Creation), is very characteristic. It is also necessary to be familiar with his style and general tenour of thought in order to appreciate rightly the many allusions to evolution found in his writings. Otherwise, one is apt to make serious errors.

In a lecture that I delivered in 1882 at the Congress of German scientists and medical men at Eisenach I made a rather full comparison of the scientific ideas of Darwin, Goethe, and Lamarck, and showed their important bearing on the pantheistic philosophy. In my opinion, these three greatest figures in modern thought stand on the common ground of Monism, or the system which teaches the unity of the universe on scientific grounds. All held the belief in the unity of God and Nature which was defended by Giordano Bruno and Spinoza, and which Goethe expressed so nobly in his writings on God and the World. We can understand, therefore, the lively interest which Goethe maintained till his last days in the highest questions of biology. The passages which I have quoted on the title-pages of the chapters in my Generelle Morphologie show how firm a grasp he had of the intimate genetic relation of all organic forms. He approached
so close, at the end of the eighteenth century, to the principles of the science of evolution that he may well be described as the first forerunner of Darwin, although he did not go so far as to formulate evolution as a scientific system, as Lamarek did.
its influence, new structures, or alterations of structure, are produced; and these are purposive in the sense that they serve the organism when formed, but they were produced without any pre-conceived aim.

This simple idea is the central thought of Darwinism, or the theory of selection. Darwin conceived this idea at an early date, and then, for more than twenty years, worked at the collection of empirical evidence in support of it before he published his theory. I have described the chief features of his method, his life, and his writings in my *Natural History of Creation*. The ample biography, in three volumes, published by his son, Francis Darwin, in 1887, gives full information about him. Here I will only refer to some of the salient points. Charles Darwin was born on February 12th, 1809, at Shrewsbury, where his father, Robert Darwin, had a medical practice. His grandfather, Erasmus Darwin, was an able scientist of the older school of natural philosophy, who published a number of natural-philosophic works about the end of the eighteenth century. The most important of them is his *Zoonomia*, published in 1794, in which he expounds views similar to those of Goethe and Lamarck, without, however, knowing anything of the work of these contemporaries. By the law of latent heredity, or "atavism," Erasmus Darwin transmitted a part of his ability to his grandson Charles, though no trace of it is found in his son Robert. This is a very interesting case of atavism, a process which Charles Darwin himself treated so admirably. However, in the writings of the grandfather the plastic imagination rather outran the judgment, while in Charles Darwin the two were better balanced. As many narrow-minded scientists of our own day regard the imagination as superfluous in biology, and think their lack of it a great advantage in the way of "exactness," it is interesting to call attention to a striking saying of a gifted man of science who was himself one of the founders of the "exact" or strictly empirical school. Johannes Müller, the German Cuvier, whose works will ever remain a model of accurate research, declared that a constant interaction and harmonious adjustment of the imagination and
the intellect was an indispensable condition for making great discoveries.

Charles Darwin was fortunate enough to take part in a scientific expedition at the close of his university career in his twenty-second year. This lasted five years, and greatly stimulated him and enriched his fund of knowledge. At the very beginning of it, as soon as he landed in America, he was attracted by a number of phenomena which suggested the chief problem of his life—the question of the origin of species. The instructive facts of the geographical distribution of species, on the one hand, and the relation of living to dead species of the same locality on the other, prompted him to surmise that closely-related species must have descended from a common stem form. Then, at the close of his voyage, when he devoted himself for a year with great vigour to the systematic study of domestic animals and garden plants, he noticed the obvious analogies in structures between them and the corresponding species in the wild state. But he did not come to conceive the chief point of his theory, natural selection through the struggle for life, until he read Malthus's famous Essay on Population. He then saw clearly the analogy between the relations of population and over-population in civilised communities and the mutual relations of animals and plants in a natural state. For many years he collected material to give a massive support to his theory. At the same time, he made a number of experiments himself in artificial selection, and gave special attention to the action of selection on tame pigeons. The quietness of his life on his estate at Down, near Beckenham, gave him requisite leisure. He died there on April 19th, 1882, working assiduously until death at the establishment of his epoch-making theory by new discoveries.

Darwin did not publish any account of his theory until 1858, when Alfred Russel Wallace, who had independently reached the same theory of selection, published his own work. In the following year appeared the Origin of Species, in which he develops it at length and supports it with a mass of proof. As I have given my opinion on it fully in my Generelle
Morphologic and *Natural History of Creation*, I need not stay to do so here, and will only add a word on the essence of the Darwinian theory, on the understanding of which all the rest depends. This is the simple principle that the struggle for life modifies living things in the natural condition, and produces new species, through the same agencies which man employs in artificially forming new varieties of animals and plants. These agencies virtually exercise a *selection* among the individuals brought into existence, heredity and adaptation acting together throughout as the chief plastic forces.

Darwin's younger contemporary, Alfred Russel Wallace, the famous traveller, had reached the same conclusion. But he had not so clear a perception as Darwin of the effectiveness of natural selection in forming species, and did not develop the theory so fully. Nevertheless, Wallace's writings, especially those on mimicry, etc., and an admirable work on *The Geographical Distribution of Animals*, contain many fine original contributions to the theory of selection. Unfortunately, this gifted scientist has since devoted himself to spiritism.

Darwin's *Origin of Species* had an extraordinary influence, though not at first on the experts of the science. It took zoologists and botanists several years to recover from the astonishment into which they had been thrown through the revolutionary idea of the work. But its influence on the special sciences with which we zoologists and botanists are concerned has increased from year to year; it has introduced a most healthy fermentation in every branch of biology, especially in comparative anatomy and ontogeny, and in zoological and botanical classification. In this way it has brought about almost a revolution in the prevailing views.

However, the point which chiefly concerns us here—the extension of the theory to man—was not touched at all in Darwin's first work in 1859. It was believed for several years that he had no thought of applying his principles to man,

---

1 Darwin and Wallace arrived at the theory quite independently. *Vide* Wallace's *Contributions to the Theory of Natural Selection* (1870) and *Darwinism* (1891).
but that he shared the current idea of man holding a special position in the universe. Not only ignorant laymen (especially several theologians), but also a number of men of science, said very naively that Darwinism in itself was not to be opposed; that it was quite right to use it to explain the origin of the various species of plants and animals, but that it was totally inapplicable to man.

In the meantime, however, it seemed to a good many thoughtful people, laymen as well as scientists, that this was wrong; that the descent of man from some other animal species, and immediately from some ape-like mammal, followed logically and necessarily from Darwin's reformed theory of evolution. Many of the acuter opponents of the theory saw at once the justice of this position, and, as this consequence was intolerable, they wanted to get rid of the whole theory.

The first scientific application of the Darwinian theory to man was made by Huxley, the greatest zoologist in England. This able and learned scientist, to whom zoology owes much of its progress, published in 1863 a small work entitled *Evidence as to Man's Place in Nature*. In the extremely important and interesting lectures which made up this work he proved clearly that the descent of man from the ape followed necessarily from the theory of descent. If that theory is true, we are bound to conceive the animals which most closely resemble man as those from which humanity has been gradually evolved. About the same time Carl Vogt published a larger work on the same subject—*Vorlesungen über den menschen seine Stellung in der Schöpfung und in der Geschichte der Erde*. We must also mention Gustav Jaeger and Friedrich Rolle among the zoologists who accepted and taught the theory of evolution immediately after the publication of Darwin's book, and maintained that the descent of man from the lower animals logically followed from it. The latter published, in 1866, a work on the origin and position of man.

About the same time I attempted, in the second volume of my *Generelle Morphologie der Organismen* (1866), to apply the
theory of evolution to the whole organic kingdom, including man. 1 I endeavoured to sketch the probable ancestral trees of the various classes of the animal world, the protists, and the plants, as it seemed necessary to do on Darwinian principles, and as we can actually do now with a high degree of confidence. If the theory of descent which Lamarck first clearly formulated and Darwin thoroughly established is true, we seem to be able to draw up a natural classification of plants and animals in the light of their genealogy, and to conceive the large and small divisions of the system as the branches and twigs of an ancestral tree. The eight genealogical tables which I inserted in the second volume of the Generelle Morphologie are the first sketches of their kind. In the twenty-seventh chapter, particularly, I trace the chief stages in man’s ancestry, as far as it is possible to follow it through the vertebrate stem. I tried especially to determine, as well as one could at that time, the position of man in the classification of the mammals and its genealogical significance. I have greatly improved this attempt, and treated it in a more popular form, in chaps. xxvi.–xxviii. of my Natural History of Creation (1868). 2

It was not until 1871, twelve years after the appearance of The Origin of Species, that Darwin published the famous work which made the much-contested application of his theory to man, and crowned the splendid structure of his system. This important work was The Descent of Man, and Selection in Relation to Sex. In this Darwin expressly drew the conclusion, with rigorous logic, that man also must have been developed out of lower species, and described the important part played by sexual selection in the elevation of man and the other higher animals. He showed that the careful selection which the sexes exercise on each other in regard to sexual relations and procreation, and the aesthetic feeling which the higher animals develop through this, are of the

1 Huxley spoke of this as “one of the greatest scientific works ever published.”—Trans.

2 Of which Darwin said that the Descent of Man would probably never have been written if he had seen it earlier.—Trans.
utmost importance in the progressive development of forms and the differentiation of the sexes. The males choosing the handsomest females in one class of animals, and the females choosing only the finest-looking males in another, the special features and the sexual characteristics are increasingly accentuated. In fact, some of the higher animals develop in this connection a finer taste and less prejudiced judgment than man himself. But, even as regards man, it is to this sexual selection that we owe the family-life, which is the chief foundation of civilisation. The rise of the human race is due for the most part to the advanced sexual selection which our ancestors exercised in choosing their mates. (Cf. the eleventh chapter of the *Natural History of Creation* and the second volume of the *Generelle Morphologie*.)

Darwin accepted in the main the general outlines of man's ancestral tree, as I gave it in the *Generelle Morphologie* and the *Natural History of Creation*, and admitted that his studies led him to the same conclusion. That he did not at once apply the theory to man in his first work was a commendable piece of discretion; such a sequel was bound to excite the strongest opposition to the whole theory. The first thing to do was to establish it as regards the animal and plant worlds. The subsequent extension to man was bound to be made sooner or later.

It is important to understand this very clearly. If all living things come from a common root, man must be included in the general scheme of evolution. On the other hand, if the various species were separately created, man, too, must have been created, and not evolved. We have to choose between these two alternatives. This cannot be too frequently or too strongly emphasised. *Either* all the species of animals and plants are of supernatural origin—created, not evolved—and in that case man also is the outcome of a creative act, as religion teaches; *or* the different species have been evolved from a few common, simple ancestral forms, and in that case man is the highest fruit of the tree of evolution.

We may state this briefly in the following principle:—*The
descent of man from the lower animals is a special deduction which inevitably follows from the general inductive law of the whole theory of evolution. In this principle we have a clear and plain statement of the matter. Evolution is in reality nothing but a great induction, which we are compelled to make by the comparative study of the most important facts of morphology and physiology. But we must draw our conclusion according to the laws of induction, and not attempt to determine scientific truths by direct measurement and mathematical calculation. In the study of living things we can scarcely ever directly and fully, and with mathematical accuracy, determine the nature of phenomena, as is done in the simpler study of the inorganic world—in chemistry, physics, mineralogy, and astronomy. In the latter, especially, we can always use the simplest and absolutely safest method—that of mathematical determination. But in biology this is quite impossible for various reasons; one very obvious reason being that most of the facts of the science are very complicated and much too intricate to allow a direct mathematical analysis. The greater part of the phenomena that biology deals with are complicated historical processes, which are related to a far-reaching past, and as a rule can only be approximately estimated. Hence we have to proceed by induction—that is to say, to draw general conclusions, stage by stage, and with proportionate confidence, from the accumulation of detailed observations. These inductive conclusions cannot command absolute confidence, like mathematical axioms; but they approach the truth, and gain increasing probability, in proportion as we extend the basis of observed facts on which we build. The importance of these inductive laws is not diminished from the circumstance that they are looked upon merely as temporary acquisitions of science, and may be improved to any extent in the progress of scientific knowledge. The same may be said of the attainments of many other sciences, such as geology or archeology. However much they may be altered and improved in detail in the course of time, these inductive truths may retain their substance unchanged.
Now, when we say that the theory of evolution in the sense of Lamarck and Darwin is an inductive law—in fact, the greatest of all biological inductions—we rely, in the first place, on the facts of paleontology. This science gives us some direct acquaintance with the historical phenomena of the changes of species. From the situations in which we find the fossils in the various strata of the earth we gather confidently, in the first place, that the living population of the earth has been gradually developed, as clearly as the earth's crust itself; and that, in the second place, several different populations have succeeded each other in the various geological periods. Modern geology teaches that the formation of the earth has been gradual, and unbroken by any violent revolutions. And when we compare together the various kinds of animals and plants which succeed each other in the history of our planet, we find, in the first place, a constant and gradual increase in the number of species from the earliest times until the present day; and, in the second place, we notice that the forms in each great group of animals and plants also constantly improve as the ages advance. Thus, of the vertebrates there are at first only the lower fishes; then come the higher fishes, and later the amphibia. Still later appear the three higher classes of vertebrates—the reptiles, birds, and mammals, for the first time; only the lowest and least perfect forms of the mammals are found at first; and it is only at a very late period that placental mammals appear, and man belongs to the latest and youngest branch of these. Thus perfection of form increases as well as variety from the earliest to the latest stage. That is a fact of the greatest importance. It can only be explained by the theory of evolution, with which it is in perfect harmony. If the different groups of plants and animals do really descend from each other, we must expect to find this increase in their number and perfection under the influence of natural selection, just as the succession of fossils actually discloses it to us.

Comparative anatomy furnishes a second series of facts which are of great importance for the forming of our inductive law. This branch of morphology compares the adult
Structures of living things, and seeks in the great variety of organic forms the stable and simple law of organisation, or the common type or structure. Since Cuvier founded this science at the beginning of the nineteenth century it has been a favourite study of the most distinguished scientists. Even before Cuvier's time Goethe had been greatly stimulated by it, and induced to take up the study of morphology. Comparative osteology, or the philosophic study and comparison of the bony skeleton of the vertebrates—one of its most interesting sections—especially fascinated him, and led him to form the theory of the skull which I mentioned before. Comparative anatomy shows that the internal structure of the animals of each stem and the plants of each class is the same in its essential features, however much they differ in external appearance. Thus man has so great a resemblance in the chief features of his internal organisation to the other mammals that no comparative anatomist has ever doubted that he belongs to this class. The whole internal structure of the human body, the arrangement of his various systems of organs, the distribution of the bones, muscles, blood-vessels, etc., and the whole structure of these organs in the larger and the finer scale, agree so closely with those of the other mammals (such as the apes, rodents, ungulates, cetacea, marsupials, etc.) that their external differences are of no account whatever. We learn further from comparative anatomy that the chief features of animal structure are so similar in the various classes (fifty to sixty in number altogether) that they may all be comprised in from eight to twelve great groups. But even in these groups, the stem-forms or animal types, certain organs (especially the alimentary canal) can be proved to have been originally the same for all. We can only explain by the theory of evolution this essential unity in internal structure of all these animal forms that differ so much in outward appearance. This wonderful fact can only be really understood and explained when we regard the internal resemblance as an inheritance from common-stem forms, and the external differences as the effect of adaptation to different environments.
In recognising this, comparative anatomy has itself advanced to a higher stage. Gegenbaur, the most distinguished of living students of this science, says that with the theory of evolution a new period began in comparative anatomy, and that the theory in turn found a touchstone in the science. “Up to now there is no fact in comparative anatomy that is inconsistent with the theory of evolution; indeed, they all lead to it. In this way the theory receives back from the science all the service it rendered to its method.” Until then students had marvelled at the wonderful resemblance of living things in their inner structure without being able to explain it. We are now in a position to explain the causes of this, by showing that this remarkable agreement is the necessary consequence of the inheriting of common stem-forms; while the striking difference in outward appearance is a result of adaptation to changes of environment. Heredity and adaptation alone furnish the true explanation.

But one special part of comparative anatomy is of supreme interest and of the utmost philosophic importance in this connection. This is the science of rudimentary or useless organs; I have given it the name of “dysteleology” in view of its philosophic consequences. Nearly every organism (apart from the very lowest), and especially every highly-developed animal or plant, including man, has one or more organs which are of no use to the body itself, and have no share in its functions or vital aims. Thus we all have, in various parts of our frame, muscles which we never use, as, for instance, in the shell of the ear and adjoining parts. In most of the mammals, especially those with pointed ears, these internal and external ear-muscles are of great service in altering the shell of the ear, so as to catch the waves of sound as much as possible. But in the case of man and other short-eared mammals these muscles are useless, though they are still present. Our ancestors having long abandoned the use of them, we cannot work them at all to-day. In the inner corner of the eye we have a small crescent-shaped fold of skin; this is the last relic of a third inner eye-lid, called
the nictitating (winking) membrane. This membrane is highly developed and of great service in some of our distant relations, such as fishes of the shark type and several other vertebrates; in us it is shrunken and useless. In the intestines we have a process that is not only quite useless, but may be very harmful—the vermiciform appendix. This small intestinal appendage is often the cause of a fatal illness. If a cherry-stone or other hard body is unfortunately squeezed through its narrow aperture during digestion, a violent inflammation is set up, and often proves fatal. This appendix has no use whatever now in our frame; it is a dangerous relic of an organ that was much larger and was of great service in our vegetarian ancestors. It is still large and important in many vegetarian animals, such as the apes and the ungulates.

There are similar rudimentary organs in all parts of our body, and in all the higher animals. They are among the most interesting phenomena to which comparative anatomy introduces us; partly because they furnish one of the clearest proofs of evolution, and partly because they most strikingly refute the teleology of certain philosophers. The theory of evolution enables us to give a very simple explanation of these phenomena.

We have to look on them as organs which have fallen into disuse in the course of many generations. With the decrease in the use of its function, the organ itself shrivels up gradually, and finally disappears. There is no other way of explaining rudimentary organs. Hence they are also of great interest in philosophy; they show clearly that the monistic or mechanical view of the organism is the only correct one, and that the dualistic or teleological conception is wrong. The ancient legend of the direct creation of man according to a pre-conceived plan and the empty phrases about "design" in the organism are completely shattered by them. It would be difficult to conceive a more thorough refutation of teleology than is furnished by the fact that all the higher animals have these rudimentary organs.

Moreover, in the light of these facts of dysteleology, we see
the hollowness of the phrases about a "moral government of the world." No one but a learned idealist or a well-meaning optimist who shuts his eyes to facts can speak to-day of such a "moral order." There is, unfortunately, no more trace of it in nature than in human life—no more in natural history than in the history of civilisation. A grim and ceaseless struggle for life is the real mainspring of the purposeless drama of the world's history. We can only see a "moral order" and "design" in it when we ignore the triumph of immoral force and the aimless features of the organism. Might goes before right as long as organic life exists.

The theory of evolution finds its broadest inductive foundation in the natural classification of living things, which arranges all the various forms in larger and smaller groups, according to their degree of affinity. These groupings or categories of classification—the varieties, species, genera, families, orders, classes, etc.—show such constant features of co-ordination and subordination that we are bound to look on them as genealogical, and represent the whole system in the form of a branching tree. This is the genealogical tree of the variously related groups; their likeness in form is the expression of a real affinity. As it is impossible to explain in any other way the natural tree-like form of the system of organisms, we must regard it at once as a weighty proof of the truth of evolution. The careful construction of these genealogical trees is, therefore, not an amusement, but the chief task of modern classification.

Among the chief phenomena that bear witness to the inductive law of evolution we have the geographical distribution of the various species of animals and plants over the surface of the earth, and their topographical distribution on the summits of mountains and in the depths of the ocean. The scientific study of these features—the "science of distribution," or chorology (chora = a place)—has been pursued with lively interest since the discoveries made by Alexander von Humboldt. Until Darwin's time the work was confined to the determination of the facts of the science, and chiefly aimed at settling the spheres of distribution of the existing
large and small groups of living things. It was impossible at that time to explain the causes of this remarkable distribution, or the reasons why one group is found only in one locality and another in a different place, and why there is this manifold distribution at all. Here, again, the theory of evolution has given us the solution of the problem. It furnishes the only possible explanation when it teaches that the various species and groups of species descend from common stem-forms, whose ever-branching offspring have gradually spread themselves by migration over the earth. For each group of species we must admit a "centre of production," or common home; this is the original habitat in which the ancestral form was developed, and from which its descendants spread out in every direction. Several of these descendants became in their turn the stem-forms for new groups of species, and these also scattered themselves by active and passive migration, and so on. As each migrating organism found a different environment in its new home, and adapted itself to it, it was modified, and gave rise to new forms.

This very important branch of science that deals with active and passive migration was founded by Darwin, with the aid of the theory of evolution; and at the same time he advanced the true explanation of the remarkable chorological relation of the living population in any locality to the fossil forms found in it. Moritz Wagner very ably developed his idea under the title of "the theory of migration." In my opinion, this famous traveller has rather over-estimated the value of his theory of migration when he takes it to be an indispensable condition of the formation of new species and opposes the theory of selection. The two theories are not opposed in their main features. Migration (by which the stem-form of a new species is isolated) is really only a special case of selection. The striking and interesting facts of chorology can only be explained by the theory of evolution, and therefore we must count them among the most important of its inductive bases.

The same must be said of all the remarkable phenomena
which we perceive in the economy of the living organism. The many and various relations of plants and animals to each other and to their environment, which are treated in bionomy (the ecology or ethology of organisms, from nomos, law or norm, and bios, life), the interesting facts of parasitism, domesticity, care of the young, social habits, etc., can only be explained by the action of heredity and adaptation. Formerly people saw only the guidance of a beneficent Providence in these phenomena; to-day we discover in them admirable proofs of the theory of evolution. It is impossible to understand them except in the light of this theory and the struggle for life.

Finally, we must, in my opinion, count among the chief inductive bases of the theory of evolution the foetal development of the individual organism, the whole science of embryology or ontogeny. But as the later chapters will deal with this in detail, I need say nothing further here. I shall endeavour in the following pages to show, step by step, how the whole of the embryonic phenomena form a massive chain of proof for the theory of evolution; for they can be explained in no other way. In thus appealing to the close causal connection between ontogenesis and phylogenesis, and taking our stand throughout on the biogenetic law, we shall be able to prove, stage by stage, from the facts of embryology, the evolution of man from the lower animals.

The general adoption of the theory of evolution has definitely closed the controversy as to the nature or definition of the species. This question had received a great variety of answers during the last century, but no satisfactory result had been reached. Thousands of botanists and zoologists were engaged daily in the classification and description of species, but they made no progress. Many hundreds of thousands of animal and plant groups were declared to be "real species," without the authors being able to give any proof or logical justification of their divisions. There were endless controversies between the classifiers as to whether the group in question was a true or false species, a species or a variety, a sub-species or a race, though they had never
asked themselves the real meaning of these terms. If they had striven to be clear on this point, they would have seen long ago that the words have no absolute meaning whatever, but are only group-names, or categories of classification, with a purely relative value.

In 1857, it is true, a famous and gifted, but inaccurate and dogmatic, scientist, Louis Agassiz, attempted to give an absolute value to these "categories of classification." He did this in his *Essay on Classification*, in which he turns upside down the phenomena of organic nature, and, instead of tracing them to their natural causes, examines them through a theological prism. The true species (*bona species*) was, he said, an "incarnate idea of the Creator." Unfortunately, this pretty phrase has no more scientific value than all the other attempts to save the absolute or intrinsic value of the species. I believe I have shown this clearly enough in the exhaustive criticism of the morphological and physiological idea of the species and the categories of classification which I gave in my *Generelle Morphologie* (Band II., SS. 323–402). Agassiz's "Creator" is an idealised man, an imaginative architect, who is ever planning and producing new species. (See also the third chapter of the *Natural History of Creation*.)

The dogma of the fixity and creation of species lost its last great champion when Agassiz died in 1873. The opposite theory, that all the different species descend from common stem-forms, encounters no serious difficulty to-day. All the endless research into the nature of the species, and the possibility of several species descending from a common ancestor, has been closed to-day by the removal of the sharp limits that had been set up between species and varieties on the one hand, and species and genera on the other. I gave an analytic proof of this in my monograph on the sponges (1872), having made a very close study of variability in this small but highly instructive group, and shown the impossibility of making any dogmatic distinction of species. According as the classifier takes his ideas of genus, species, and variety in a broader or in a narrower sense, he will find in the small
group of the sponges either one genus with three species, or three genera with 238 species, or 113 genera with 591 species. Moreover, all these forms are so connected by intermediate forms that we can convincingly prove the descent of all the sponges from a common stem-form, the olythus.

Here, I think, I have given an analytic solution of the problem of the origin of species, and so met the demand of certain opponents of evolution for an actual instance of descent from a stem-form. Those who are not satisfied with the synthetic proofs of the theory of evolution which are provided by comparative anatomy, embryology, paleontology, dysteleology, chorology, and classification, may try to refute the analytic proof given in my treatise on the sponge, the outcome of five years of assiduous study. I repeat: It is now impossible to oppose evolution on the ground that we have no convincing example of the descent of all the species of a group from a common ancestor. The monograph on the sponges furnishes such a proof, and, in my opinion, an indisputable proof. Any man of science who will follow the protracted steps of my inquiry and test my assertions will find that in the case of the sponges we can follow the actual evolution of species, in statu nascenti. And if this is so, if we can show the origin of all the species from a common form in one single class, we have the solution of the problem of man's origin, because we are in a position to prove clearly his descent from the lower animals.

At the same time, we can now reply to the often-repeated assertion, even heard from scientists of our own day, that the descent of man from the lower animals, and proximately from the apes, still needs to be "proved with certainty." These "certain proofs" have been available for a long time; one has only to open one's eyes to see them. It is a mistake to seek them in the discovery of intermediate forms between man and the ape, or the conversion of an ape into a human being by skilful education. The proofs lie in the great mass of empirical material we have already collected. They are furnished in the strongest form by the data of comparative anatomy and embryology, completed by paleontology. It is
not a question now of detecting new proofs of the evolution of man, but of examining and understanding the proofs we already have.

It seems especially urgent to refer to-day to these various sources of phylogeny, and point out how they confirm each other, because the growth of specialism in every branch of biology and the enormous accumulation of fresh observations in detail have led to a certain amount of narrowness in appreciating them. Many modern embryologists occupy themselves with the application of their improved methods to the detailed study of minute sections of the embryo and the mechanical analysis of them, and fail to keep in view the entire organism and its important relations to others of the same stem, as shown in comparative anatomy and classification. Many of the misleading theories of this modern mechanical embryology would never have been formulated if their authors had been acquainted with the relevant facts of paleontology. On the other hand, however, most of the paleontologists are ignorant of the most important results of comparative embryology, and so fail to appreciate the value of the biogenetic law. However important it is to determine the facts of paleontology accurately, their evolutionary significance cannot be properly appraised without the aid of comparative anatomy and ontogeny. At the same time, workers in these latter sciences must never lose touch with the results of paleontology. Comparative anatomists will reach no satisfactory result if they seek to determine the homologies and affinities of animal forms merely by a comparison of living species, without any regard to their extinct ancestors. The distinguished New York paleontologist, Henry Osborn, has recently laid stress on the wisdom of basing the science of evolution on a comprehensive use of all the three sources of evidence. Our science requires these three supports as much as the stool needs its three legs.

I was almost alone thirty-six years ago when I made the first attempt, in my *Generelle Morphologie*, to put organic morphology on a mechanical foundation through Darwin's theory of descent. The association of ontogeny and
phylogeny and the proof of the intimate causal connection between these two sections of the science of evolution, which I expounded in my work, met with the most spirited opposition on nearly all sides. The next ten years were a terrible "struggle for life" for the new theory. But for the last twenty-five years the tables have been turned. The phylogenetic method has met with so general a reception, and found so prolific a use in every branch of biology, that it seems superfluous to treat any further here of its validity and results. The proof of it lies in the whole morphological literature of the last three decades. But no other science has been so profoundly modified in its leading thoughts by this adoption, and been forced to yield such far-reaching consequences, as that science which I am now seeking to establish—monistic anthropogeny.

This statement may seem to be rather audacious, since the very next branch of biology, anthropology in the stricter sense, makes very little use of these results of anthropogeny, and sometimes expressly opposes them. This applies especially to the attitude which has characterised the German Anthropological Society (the Deutsche Gesellschaft für Anthropologie) for some thirty years. Its powerful president, the famous pathologist, Rudolph Virchow, is chiefly responsible for this. Until his death (September 5th, 1902) he never ceased to reject the theory of descent as unproven, and to ridicule its chief consequence—the descent of man from a series of mammal ancestors—as a fantastic dream. I need only recall his well-known expression at the Anthropological Congress at Vienna in 1894, that "it would be just as well to say man came from the sheep or the elephant as from the ape."

Virchow's assistant, the secretary of the German Anthropological Society, Professor Johannes Ranke of München, has also indefatigably opposed transformism: he has succeeded in writing a work in two volumes (Der Mensch), in which all the facts relating to his organisation are explained in a sense hostile to evolution. This work has had a wide circulation, owing to its admirable illustrations and its able treatment of
the most interesting facts of anatomy and physiology—exclusive of the sexual organs! But, as it has done a great deal to spread erroneous views among the general public, I have included a criticism of it in my *Natural History of Creation*, as well as met Virchow's attacks on anthropogeny.

Neither Virchow, nor Ranke, nor any other "exact" anthropologist, has attempted to give any other natural explanation of the origin of man. They have either set completely aside this "question of questions" as a transcendental problem, or they have appealed to religion for its solution. We have to show that this rejection of the rational explanation is totally without justification. The fund of knowledge which has accumulated in the progress of biology in the nineteenth century is quite adequate to furnish a rational explanation, and to establish the theory of the evolution of man on the solid facts of his embryology.
CHAPTER VI.

THE OVUM AND THE AMŒBA


In order to understand clearly the course of human embryology, we must select the more important of its wonderful and manifold processes for fuller explanation, and then proceed from these to the innumerable features of less importance. The most important feature in this sense, and the best starting-point for ontogenetic study, is the fact that man is developed from an ovum, and that this ovum is a simple cell. The human ovum does not materially differ in form and composition from that of the other mammals, whereas there is a distinct difference between the fertilised ovum of the mammal and that of any other animal.

This fact is so important that few should be unaware of its extreme significance; yet it was quite unknown in the first quarter of the nineteenth century. As we have seen, the human and mammal ovum was not discovered until 1827, when Carl Ernst von Baer detected it. Up to that time the larger vesicles, in which the real and much smaller ovum is

Contained, had been wrongly regarded as ova. The important circumstance that this mammal ovum is a simple cell, like the ovum of other animals, could not, of course, be recognised until the cell theory was established. This was not done, by Schleiden for the plant and Schwann for the animal, until 1838. As we have seen, this cell theory is of the greatest service in explaining the human frame and its embryonic development. Hence we must say a few words about the actual condition of the theory and the significance of the views it has suggested.

In order properly to appreciate the cellular theory, the most important element in our morphological and physiological science, it is necessary to understand in the first place that the cell is a unified organism, a self-contained living being. When we anatomically dissect the fully-formed animal or plant into its various organs, and then examine the finer structure of these organs with the microscope, we are surprised to find that all these different parts are ultimately made up of the same structural element or unit. This common unit of structure is the cell. It does not matter whether we thus dissect a leaf, flower, or fruit, or a bone, muscle, gland, or bit of skin, etc.; we find in every case the same ultimate constituent, which has been called the cell since Schleiden’s discovery. There are many opinions as to its real nature, but the essential point in our view of the cell is to look upon it as a self-contained or independent living unit. It is, in the words of Brücke, “an elementary organism,” or, as Virchow puts it, “a vital focus,” a “biomeron.” We may define it most precisely as the ultimate organic unit, or “an individual of the first class”; and as the cells are the sole active principles in every vital function, we may call them the “plastids,” or “formative elements” (cf. the Gen. Morph., Band I, S 269).
This unity is found in both the anatomic structure and the physiological function. In the case of the protists, the entire organism usually consists of a single autonomous cell throughout life. But in the histonal (tissue-forming) animals and plants, which are the great majority, the organism begins its career as a simple cell, and then grows into a cell-community, or, more correctly, an organised cell-state. Our own body is not really the simple unity that it is generally supposed to be. On the contrary, it is a very elaborate social system of countless microscopic organisms, a colony or commonwealth, made up of innumerable independent units, or very different tissue-cells.

In reality, the term "cell," which existed long before the cell theory was formulated, is not happily chosen. Schleiden, who first brought it into scientific use in the sense of the cell theory, gave this name to the elementary organisms because, when you find them in the dissected plant, they generally have the appearance of chambers, like the cells in a bee-hive, with firm walls and a fluid or pulpy content. This idea of a cell as a closed vesicle or little sac, with a fluid content and firm envelope or wall, was adopted, and came into general use; but it is totally inapplicable to most of the cells in the body. The more we learned about the cells of the animal body, the more it became necessary to modify our conception of the cell; for some cells, especially young ones, are entirely without the enveloping membrane, or stiff wall. Hence we now generally describe the cell as a living, viscous particle of protoplasm, enclosing a firmer nucleus in its albuminoid body. There may be an enclosing membrane, as there actually is in the case of most of the plants; but it may be wholly lacking, as is the case with most of the animals. There is no membrane at all in the first stage. The young cells are usually round, but they vary much in shape later on. Illustrations of this will be found in the cells of various parts of the body shown in Figs. 3-7.

Hence the essential point in the modern idea of the cell is that it is made up of two different active constituents—an inner and an outer part. The smaller and inner part is the
nucleus (or caryon, or cytoblastus, Fig. 1c and Fig. 2k). The outer and larger part, which encloses the other, is the body of the cell (celleus, cylos, or cytosoma). The soft living substance of which the two are composed has a peculiar chemical composition, and belongs to the group of the albuminoid plasma-substances ("formative matter"), or protoplasm. The essential and indispensable element of the nucleus is the nuclein (or caryoplasm); that of the cell body is called the plastin (or cytoplasm). In the most rudimentary cases both substances seem to be quite simple and homogeneous, without any visible structure. But, as a rule, when we examine them under a high power of the microscope, we find a certain structure in the protoplasm. The chief and most common form of this is the fibrous or net-like "thread-structure" (Frommann) and the frothy "honeycomb structure" (Bütschli).

The shape or outer form of the cell is infinitely varied, in accordance with its endless power of adapting itself to the most diverse activities or environments. In its simplest form the cell is globular (Fig. 2). This normal globular form is especially found in cells of the simplest construction, and those that are developed in a free fluid without any external pressure. In such cases the nucleus also is not infrequently round, and located in the centre of the cell-body (Fig. 2k). In other cases, the cells have no definite shape; they are constantly changing their form owing to their automatic movements. This is the case with the amœbæ (Figs. 15 and 16) and the amœboid travelling cells (Fig. 11), and also with very young ova (Fig. 12). However, as a rule, the cell assumes a definite form in the course of its career. In the tissues of the multicellular organism, in which a number of similar cells are bound together in virtue of certain laws of
heredity, the shape is determined partly by the form of their connection and partly by their special functions. Thus, for instance, we find in the mucous lining of our tongue very thin and delicate flat cells, or epithelial cells, of roundish shape (Fig. 3). In the outer skin we find similar, but harder, covering cells, joined together by saw-like edges (Fig. 4). In the liver and other glands there are thicker and softer cells, linked together in rows (Fig. 5).

The last-named tissues (Figs. 3-5) belong to the simplest and most primitive type, the group of the "covering-tissues," or epithelia. In these "primary tissues" (to which the germinal layers belong) simple cells of the same kind are arranged in layers. The arrangement and shape are more complicated in the "secondary tissues," which are gradually developed out of the primary, as in the tissues of the muscles, nerves, bones, etc. In the bones, for instance, which belong to the group of supporting or connecting organs, the cells (Fig. 6) are star-shaped, and are joined together by numbers of net-like interlacing processes; so, also, in the tissues of the teeth (Fig. 7), and in other forms of supporting-tissue, in which a soft or hard substance (intercellular matter, or base) is inserted between the cells.

The cells also differ very much in size. The great majority of them are invisible to the naked eye, and can be seen only through the microscope (being on an average between

---

**Fig. 3.** Three epithelial cells from the mucous lining of the tongue.

**Fig. 4.** Five spiny or grooved cells, with edges joined, from the outer skin (epidermis); one of them (b) is isolated.

**Fig. 5.** Ten liver-cells: one of them (b) has two nuclei.
0.01 and 0.1 millimetres in diameter). There are, however, many of the smaller plastids—such as the famous bacteria—which only come into view with a very high magnifying power. On the other hand, many cells attain a considerable size, and run to several millimetres or centimetres in diameter, as do several kinds of rhizopods among the unicellular protists (such as the radiolaria and thalamophora). Among the tissue-cells of the animal body many of the muscular fibres and nerve fibres are more than a decimetre (4 inches), and sometimes more than a metre (40 inches) in length. Among the

Fig. 6.—**Nine star-shaped bone-cells**, with interlaced branches.

largest cells are the yolk-filled ova; as, for instance, the yellow "yolk-nucleus" in the hen's egg, which we shall describe later (Fig. 15).

Cells also vary considerably in structure. In this connection we must first distinguish between the active and passive components of the cell. It is only the former, or *active* parts of the cell, that really live, and effect that marvelous world of phenomena to which we give the name of "organic life." The first of these is the inner nucleus (*caryoplasma*), and the second the body of the cell (*cytoplasma*). The *passive* portions come third; these are
THE OVUM AND THE AMOEBA

subsequently formed from the others, and I have in my
Generelle Morphologie (chap. ix.) given them the name of "plasma-products." They are partly external (cell-membranes
and intercellular matter) and partly internal (cell-sap and cell-
contents). (See the table at the end of the next Chapter.)

The nucleus (or car-
yon), which is usually
of a simple roundish
form, is quite structure-
less at first (especially
in very young cells), and
composed of homogene-
ous nuclear matter or
caryoplasm (Fig. 2k).
But, as a rule, it forms a
sort of vesicle later on, in
which we can distinguish
a more solid nuclear base (caryobasis) and a softer or fluid
nuclear sap (caryolymph). The nuclear base forms the enve-
loping membrane of globular nuclein and, as a rule, a skeleton
or network of branching threads, which go out from the
membrane, and pass through the cavity of the vesicle and its
liquid contents. This nuclear skeleton (caryomitoma) con-
sists of two different substances, one of which (the chromatin)
is strongly tinged with carmine and other colouring matter,
and the other (achromin or linin) is not. In a mesh of the
nuclear network (or it may be on the inner side of the nuclear
envelope) there is, as a rule, a dark, very opaque, solid body,
called the nucleolus. Many of the nuclei contain several of
these nucleoli (as, for instance, the germinal vesicle of the
ova of fishes and amphibia).

Recently a very small, but particularly important, part of
the nucleus has been distinguished as the central body
(centrosoma)—a tiny particle that is originally found in the
nucleus itself (as in the case of many spermacytes, carcinom-
cells, etc.), but is usually outside it, in the cytoplasm; as a
rule, fine threads stream out from it in the cytoplasm. From
the position of the centrosoma with regard to the other

Fig. 7.—Eleven star-shaped cells
from the enamel of a tooth, joined together
by their branchlets.

---

My Generelle Morphologie (chap. ix.) reference is likely a typo or an abbreviation for a specific section or chapter of a larger work. The context indicates a focus on cellular components, particularly the nucleus and its components, and how they are formed and classified. The natural text is a detailed description of these components, their structures, and their roles in cellular processes.
parts it seems probable that it has a high physiological importance as a centre of movement; but it is lacking in many cells.

The cell-body (*celleus* or *cytosoma*) also consists originally, and in its simplest form, of a homogeneous viscid plasmic matter (*cytoplasma*). But, as a rule, only the smaller part of it is formed of the living active cell-substance (protoplasm); the greater part consists of dead, passive plasmic products (metaplasma). It is useful to distinguish between the inner and outer of these. External plasma-products (which are thrust out from the protoplasm as solid "structural matter") are the cell-membranes and the intercellular matter. The *internal* plasma-products are either the fluid cell-sap (*cytolymph*) or hard structures (*paraplasma*). As a rule, in mature and differentiated cells these various parts are so arranged that the protoplasm (like the caryoplasm in the vesicular nucleus) forms a sort of skeleton or frame-work (*cytomitoma*, filar matter or spongioplasm). The spaces of this network are filled partly with the fluid cell-sap (*cytolymph*) and partly by hard structural products (*paraplasma*, or interfilar matter); among these there are small plasma-granules (*granula* or *microsomata*), or fat-grains (*liposomata*), of great importance. Besides these, we can distinguish many other products in the cytoplasm, such as concrementa, crystals, gland-granules, etc.

The simple globular ovum, which we take as the starting-point of our study (Figs. 1 and 2), has in many cases the vague, indifferent features of the typical primitive cell. As a contrast to it, and as an instance of a very highly differentiated plastid, we may consider for a moment a large nerve-cell, or ganglionic cell, from the brain. The ovum stands potentially for the entire organism—in other words, it has the

---

**Fig. 8.—Unfertilised ovum of an echinoderm** (from Hertwig). The vesicular nucleus (or "germinal vesicle") is globular, half the size of the round ovum, and encloses a nuclear framework, in the central knot of which there is a dark nucleolus (the "germinal spot").
faculty of building up out of itself the whole multicellular body. It is the common parent of all the countless generations of cells which form the different tissues of the body; it unites all their powers in itself, though only potentially or in germ. In complete contrast to this, the neural cell in the brain (Fig. 9) develops along one rigid line. It cannot, like the ovum, beget endless generations of cells, of which some will become skin-cells, others muscle-cells, and others again bone-cells. But, on the other hand, the nerve-cell has become fitted to discharge the highest functions of life; it has the powers of sensation, will, and thought. It is a real soul-cell, or an elementary organ of the psychic activity. It has, therefore, a most elaborate and delicate structure. Numbers of extremely fine threads, like the electric wires at a large telegraphic centre, cross and recross in the delicate protoplasm of the nerve-cell, and pass out in the branching processes which proceed from it and put it in communication with other nerve-cells or nerve-fibres (a, b). We can only partly follow their intricate paths in the fine nucleolar matter of the cytoplasmic body.

Here we have a most elaborate apparatus, the delicate structure of which we are just beginning to appreciate through our most powerful microscopes, but whose significance is rather a matter of conjecture than knowledge. Its intricate structure corresponds to the very complicated functions of the mind. Nevertheless, this elementary organ of psychic activity—of which there are thousands in our brain—is nothing but a single cell. Our whole mental life is only the joint result of the combined activity of all these nerve-cells, or soul-cells. In the centre of each cell there is a large transparent nucleus, containing a small and dark nuclear body. Here, as elsewhere, it is the nucleus that determines the individuality of the cell; it proves that the whole structure, in spite of its intricate composition, amounts to only a single cell.

In contrast with this very elaborate and very strictly differentiated psychic cell (Fig. 9), we have our ovum (Figs. 1 and 2), which has hardly any structure at all. But even in the case of the ovum we must infer from its
Fig. 9.—A large branching nerve-cell, or "soul-cell," from the brain of an electric fish (torpedo), magnified 600 times. In the middle of the cell is the large transparent round nucleus, one nucleolus, and, within the latter again, a nucleolinus. The protoplasm of the cell is split into innumerable fine threads (or fibrils), which are embedded in nucleolar intercellular matter, and are prolonged into the branching processes of the cell (b). One branch (a) passes into a nerve-fibre. (From Max Schultze.)
properties that its protoplasmic body has a very complicated chemical composition and a fine molecular structure which escapes our observation. This hypothetical molecular structure of the plasm is now generally admitted; but it has never been seen, and, indeed, lies far beyond the range of microscopic vision. It must not be confused—as is often done—with the structure of the plasma (the fibrous net-work, groups of granules, honey-comb, etc.) which does come within the range of the microscope.

But when we speak of the cells as the elementary organisms, or structural units, or "ultimate individualities," we must bear in mind a certain restriction of the phrases. I mean, that the cells are not, as is often supposed, the very lowest stage of organic individuality. There are yet more elementary organisms to which I must refer occasionally, and will return later on. These are what we call the "cytodes" (*cytos* = cell), certain living, independent beings, consisting only of a particle of *plasson*—an albuminoid substance, which is not yet differentiated into caryoplasm and cytoplasm, but combines the properties of both. Those remarkable beings called the *monera*—especially the chromacea and bacteria—are specimens of these simple cytodes. (Compare the nineteenth Chapter.) To be quite accurate, then, we must say: the elementary organism, or the ultimate individual, is found in two different stages. The first and lower stage is the cytode, which consists merely of a particle of plasson, or quite simple plasm. The second and higher stage is the cell, which is already divided or differentiated into nuclear matter and cellular matter. We comprise both kinds—the cytodes and the cells—under the name of *plastids* ("formative particles"), because they are the real builders of the organism. However, these cytodes are not found, as a rule, in the higher animals and plants; here we have only real cells with a nucleus. Hence, in these tissue-forming organisms (both plants and animal) the organic unit always consists of two chemically and anatomically different parts—the outer cell-body (*cytosoma*) and the inner nucleus (*caryon*).

In order to convince oneself that this cell is really an
THE OVUM AND THE AMOEBA

107

independent organism, we have only to observe the development and vital phenomena of one of them. You see then that it performs all the essential functions of life—both vegetal and animal—which we find in the entire organism. Each of these tiny beings grows and nourishes itself independently. It takes its food from the surrounding fluid; sometimes, even, the naked cells take in solid particles at certain points of their surface—in other words, “eat” them—without needing any special mouth and stomach for the purpose (cf. Fig. 16).

Further, each cell is able to reproduce itself. This multiplication, in most cases, takes the form of a simple cleavage, sometimes direct, sometimes indirect; the simple direct (or “amitotic”) division is less common, and is found, for instance, in the blood cells (Fig. 10). In these the nucleus first divides into two equal parts by constriction. The indirect (or “mitotic”) cleavage is much more frequent; in this the caryoplasm of the nucleus and the cytoplasm of the cell-body act upon each other in a peculiar way, with a partial dissolution (caryolysis), the formation of knots and loops (mitosis), and a movement of the halved plasma-particles towards two mutually repulsive poles of attraction (caryokinesis, Fig. 11).

The intricate physiological processes which accompany this “mitosis” have been very closely studied of late years. The inquiry has led to the detection of certain laws of evolution which are of extreme importance in connection with heredity. As a rule, two very different parts of the nucleus play an important part in these changes. They are: the chromatin, or coloured nuclear substance, which has a peculiar property of tinging itself deeply with certain

---

Fig. 10. — Blood-cells, multiplying by direct division, from the blood of the embryo of a goat. Originally, each blood-cell has a nucleus and is globular (a). When it is going to multiply, the nucleus divides into two (b, c, d). Then the protoplasmic body is constricted between the two nuclei, and these move away from each other (e). Finally, the constriction is complete, and the cell splits into two daughter-cells (f). (From Frey.)
colouring matters (carmine, hæmatoxylin, etc.), and the *achromin* (or *linin*, or *achromatin*), a colourless nuclear substance that lacks this property. The latter generally forms in the dividing cell a sort of spindle, at the poles of which there is a very small particle, also colourless, called the "central body" (*centrosoma*). This acts as the centre or

![Diagram of the ovum and the amœba](image)

**A. Mother-cell**  
(Knot, spirema)

- **Nuclear threads** (chromosomata)  
  (coloured nuclear matter, chromatin)
- **Protoplasm of the cell-body**
- **Nuclear membrane**
- **Nuclear sap**

**B. Mother-star,**  
the loops beginning to split lengthways (nuclear membrane gone).

- **Star-like appearance in cytoplasm**
- **Centrosoma (sphere of attraction)**
- **Nuclear spindle (achromin, colourless matter)**
- **Nuclear loops (chromatin, coloured matter)**

**C. The two daughter-stars,**  
produced by the breaking of the loops of the mother-star (moving away).

- **Connecting threads of the two crowns (achromin)**
- **Upper daughter-crown**
- **Lower daughter-crown**
- **Double-star (amphiaster)**

**D. The two daughter-cells,**  
produced by the complete division of the two nuclear halves (cytosomata still connected at the equator)  
(Double-knot, Dispirema)

- **Upper daughter-nucleus**
- **Aequatorial constriction of the cell-body**
- **Lower daughter-nucleus**

**Fig. 11.—Indirect or mitotic cell-division** (with caryolysis and caryokinesis) from the skin of the larva of a salamander. (From Rabl.)

focus in a "sphere of attraction" for the granules of protoplasm in the surrounding cell-body, and assumes a star-like appearance (the cell-star, or *monaster*). The two centrosomata, standing opposed to each other at the poles of the nuclear spindle, form "the double-star" (or *amphiaster*, Fig. 11,
B, C). The chromatin often forms a long, irregularly-wound thread—"the coil" (spirema, Fig. A). At the commencement of the cleavage it gathers at the equator of the cell, between the stellar poles, and forms a crown of U-shaped loops (generally four or eight, or some other definite number). The loops split lengthwise into two halves (B), and these back away from each other towards the poles of the spindle (C). Here each group forms a crown once more, and this, with the corresponding half of the divided spindle, forms a fresh nucleus (D). Then the protoplasm of the cell-body begins to contract in the middle, and gather about the new daughter-nuclei, and at last the two daughter-cells become independent beings.

Between this common mitosis, or indirect cell-division—which is the normal cleavage-process in most cells of the higher animals and plants—and the simple direct division (Fig. 10) we find every grade of segmentation; in some circumstances even one kind of division may be converted into another (as, for instance, in the segmentation of the yolk-cells in discoblastic ova).

The plastid is also endowed with the functions of movement and sensation. The single cell can move and creep about, when it has space for free movement and is not prevented by a hard envelope; it then thrusts out at its surface processes like fingers, and quickly withdraws again, and thus changes its shape (Fig. 12). Finally, the young cell is sensitive, or more or less responsive to stimuli; it makes certain movements on the application of chemical and mechanical irritation. Hence we can ascribe to the individual cell all the chief functions which we comprehend under the general heading of "life"—sensation, movement, nutrition, and reproduction. All these properties of the multicellular and highly developed animal are also found in the single animal-cell, at least in its younger stages. There is no longer any doubt about this, and so we may regard it as a solid and important base of our physiological conception of the elementary organism.

Without going any further here into these very interesting
THE OVUM AND THE AMOEBA

phenomena of the life of the cell, we will pass on to consider
the application of the cell theory to the ovum. Here com-
parative research yields the important result that every ovum
is at first a simple cell. I say this is very important, because
our whole science of ontogeny now resolves itself into the
problem: "How does the multicellular organism arise from
the unicellular?" Every organic individual is at first a
simple cell, and as such an elementary organism, or a unit of
individuality. This cell produces a cluster of cells by
segmentation, and from these
developes the multicellular
organism, or individual of
higher rank.

When we examine a little
closer the original features of
the ovum, we notice the ex-
tremely significant fact that in
its first stage the ovum is just
the same simple and indefinite
structure in the case of man
and all the animals (Fig. 13).
We are unable to detect any
material difference between
them, either in outer shape or
internal constitution. Later,
though the ova remain unicel-
lular, they differ in size and
shape, enclose various kinds of
yolk-particles, have different
envelopes, and so on. But
when we examine them at their birth, in the ovary of
the female animal, we find them to be always of the
same form in the first stages of their life. In the beginning
each ovum is a very simple, roundish, naked, mobile
cell, without a membrane; it consists merely of a particle
of cytoplasm enclosing a nucleus (Fig. 13). Special names
have been given to these parts of the ovum; the cell-
body is called the yolk (vitellus), and the cell-nucleus the

---

**Fig. 12.** Mobile cells from the inflamed eye of a frog (from the watery fluid of the eye, the humor aqueus). The naked cells creep freely about, by (like the amoebe or rhizopods) protruding fine processes from the uncovered protoplasmic body. These bodies vary continually in number, shape, and size. The nucleus of these ameboid lymph-cells ("travelling cells," or planocytes) is invisible, because concealed by the numbers of fine granules which are scattered in the protoplasm. (From Frey.)
germinal vesicle (vesicula germinativa). As a rule, the nucleus of the ovum is soft, and like a small pimple or vesicle. Inside it, as in many other cells, there is a nuclear skeleton or frame and a third, hard nuclear body (the nucleolus). In the ovum this is called the germinal spot (macula germinativa). Finally, we find in many ova (but

![Diagram of ova of various animals, executing amoeboid movements.](image)

**Fig. 13.—Ova of various animals, executing amoeboid movements, highly magnified.** All the ova are naked cells of varying shape. In the dark fine-grained protoplasm (yolk) is a large vesicular nucleus (the germinal vesicle), and in this is seen a nuclear body (the germinal spot), in which again we often see a germinal point. Figs. A1-A4 represent the ovum of a sponge (leuculmis echinus) in four successive movements. B1-B8 are the ovum of a parasitic crab (chondracanthus cornutus), in eight successive movements. (From Edward von Beneden.) C1-C5 show the ovum of the cat in various stages of movement (from Pflüger); Fig. D the ovum of a trout; E the ovum of a chicken; F a human ovum.
not in all) a still further point within the germinal spot, a "nucleolus," which goes by the name of the germinal point (punctum germinativum). The latter parts (germinal spot and germinal point) have, apparently, a minor importance, in comparison with the other two (the yolk and germinal vesicle). In the yolk we must distinguish the active formative yolk (or protoplasm = first plasm) from the passive nutritive yolk (or deutoplasm = second plasm).

Fig 14.—The human ovum, taken from the female ovary, magnified 500 times. The whole ovum is a simple globular cell. The chief part of the globular mass is formed by the nuclear yolk (deutoplasm), which is easily distributed in the active protoplasm, and consists of numbers of fine yolk-granules. In the upper part of the yolk is the transparent globular germinal vesicle, which corresponds to the nucleus. This encloses a darker granule, the germinal spot, which shows a nucleolus. The globular yolk is surrounded by the thick transparent germinal membranes (ovolemma, or zona pellucida). This is traversed by numbers of lines as fine as hairs, which are directed radially towards the centre of the ovum. These are called the pore-canals; it is through these that the moving spermatozoa penetrate into the yolk at impregnation.

In many of the lower animals (such as sponges, polyps, and medusae) the naked ova retain their original simple appearance until impregnation. But in most animals they at once begin to change; the change consists partly in the formation of connections with the yolk, which serve to
nourish the ovum, and partly of external membranes for their protection (the ovolemma, or prochorion). A membrane of this sort is formed in all the mammals in the course of the embryonic process. The little globule is surrounded by a thick capsule of glass-like transparency, the *zona pellucida*, or *ovolemma pellucidum* (Fig. 14). When we examine it closely under the microscope, we see very fine radial streaks in it, piercing the zona, which are really very narrow canals. The human ovum, whether fertilised or not, cannot be distinguished from that of most of the other mammals. It is nearly the same everywhere in form, size, and composition. When it is fully formed, it has a diameter of (on an average) about \( \frac{1}{10} \) of an inch. When the mammal ovum has been carefully isolated, and held against the light on a glass-plate, it may be seen as a fine point even with the naked eye. The ova of most of the higher mammals are about the same size. The diameter of the ovum is almost always between \( \frac{1}{20} \) and \( \frac{1}{15} \) of a line (0.1—0.2 millimetres). It has always the same globular shape; the same characteristic membrane; the same transparent germinal vesicle with its dark germinal spot. Even when we use the most powerful microscope with its highest power, we can detect no material difference between the ova of man, the ape, the dog, and so on. I do not mean to say that there are no differences between the ova of these different mammals. On the contrary, we are bound to assume that there are such, at least as regards chemical composition. Even the ova of different men must differ from each other; otherwise we should not have a different individual from each ovum. In accordance with the law of the unlikeness of individuals, we must assume that "all organic individuals differ from the very beginning of their development, though they resemble each other so much" (*Gen. Morph.*, Band II., S 202). It is true that our crude and imperfect apparatus cannot detect these subtle individual differences, which are probably in the molecular structure. However, such a striking morphological resemblance of their ova, so great as to seem to be a complete similarity, is a strong proof of the common parentage of man and the other mammals.
From the common germ-form we infer a common stem-form. On the other hand, there are striking peculiarities by which we can easily distinguish the fertilised ovum of the mammal from the fertilised ovum of the birds, amphibia, fishes, and other vertebrates (see the close of the twenty-ninth chapter).

The fertilised bird-ovum (Fig. 15) is notably different. It is true that in its earliest stage (Fig. 13 E) this ovum also is very like that of the mammal (Fig. 13 F). But afterwards, while still within the oviduct, it takes up a quantity of nourishment and works this into the familiar large yellow yolk. When we examine a very young ovum in the hen's oviduct, we find it to be a simple, small, naked, amœboid cell, just like the young ova of other animals (Fig. 13). But it then grows to the size we are familiar with in the globular yolk of the egg. The nucleus of the ovum, or the germinal vesicle, is thus pressed right to the surface of the globular ovum, and is embedded there in a small quantity of transparent matter, the so-called white yolk. This forms a round white spot, which is known as the egg-scar (cicatricula) (Fig. 15 b). From the scar a thin column of the white yolk penetrates through the yellow yolk to the centre of the globular cell, where it swells into a small, central globule (wrongly called the yolk-cavity, or latebra, Fig. 15 d'). The yellow yolk-matter which surrounds this white yolk has the appearance in the egg (when boiled hard) of concentric layers (c). The yellow yolk is also enclosed in a delicate structureless membrane (the membrana vitellina, a).

As the large yellow ovum of the bird attains a diameter of several inches in the bigger birds and encloses vesicular yolk-particles, there was formerly a reluctance to consider it as a simple cell. This, however, was an error from which His
and other embryologists have even recently drawn wrong conclusions, though it was corrected by Gegenbaur forty years ago. The unfertilised and undivided ovum of the bird remains a real cell with its simple nucleus, however large it may grow by the production of yellow yolk. Every animal that has only one cell-nucleus, every amœba, every gregarina, every infusorium, is unicellular, and remains unicellular whatever variety of matter it feeds on. So the ovum remains a simple cell, however much yellow yolk it afterwards accumulates within its protoplasm. Gegenbaur and Van Beneden have clearly shown this in their admirable works on the ova of mammals.

It is, of course, different with the bird's egg when it has been fertilised. Then its nucleus multiplies by repeated cleavage, and the protoplasm of the cicatrix which surrounds it is similarly divided. The ovum then consists of as many cells as there are nuclei in the cicatrix. Hence, in the fertilised egg which we eat daily, the yellow yolk is already a multicellular body. Its scar is composed of several cells, and is now commonly called the germinal disc (discus blastodermicus). We shall return to this discogastrula in the ninth chapter.

When the mature bird-ovum has left the ovary and been fertilised in the oviduct, it covers itself with various membranes which are secreted from the wall of the oviduct. First, the large clear albuminous layer is deposited around the yellow yolk; afterwards, the hard external shell, with a fine inner skin. All these gradually forming envelopes and processes are of no importance in the formation of the embryo; they serve merely for the protection of the original simple ovum. We sometimes find extraordinarily large eggs with strong envelopes in the case of other animals, such as fishes of the shark type. But here, also, the ovum is originally of the same character as it is in the mammal; it is a perfectly simple and naked cell. But, as in the case of the bird, a considerable quantity of nutritive yolk is accumulated inside the original yolk as food for the developing embryo; and various coverings are formed round the egg. The ovum
of many other animals has the same internal and external features. They have, however, only a physiological, not a morphological, importance; they have no direct influence on the formation of the foetus. They are partly consumed as food by the embryo, and partly serve as protective envelopes. Hence we may leave them out of consideration altogether here, and restrict ourselves to material points—to the substantial identity of the original ovum in man and the rest of the animals (Fig. 13).

Now, let us for the first time make use of our biogenetic law, and directly apply this fundamental law of evolution to the human ovum. We reach a very simple, but very important, conclusion. *From the fact that the human ovum and that of all other animals consists of a single cell, it follows immediately, according to the biogenetic law, that all the animals, including man, descend from a unicellular organism.* If our biogenetic law is true, if the embryonic development is a summary or condensed recapitulation of the stem-history—and there can be no doubt about it—we are bound to conclude, from the fact that all the ova are at first simple cells, that all the multicellular organisms originally sprang from a unicellular being. And as the original ovum in man and all the other animals has the same simple and indefinite appearance, we may assume with some probability that this unicellular stem-form was the common ancestor of the whole animal world, including man. However, this last hypothesis does not seem to me as inevitable and as absolutely certain as our first conclusion.

This inference from the unicellular embryonic form to the unicellular ancestor is so simple, but so important, that we cannot sufficiently emphasise it. We must, therefore, turn next to the question whether there are to-day any unicellular organisms, from the features of which we may draw some approximate conclusion as to the unicellular ancestors of the multicellular organisms. The answer is: Most certainly there are. There are assuredly still unicellular organisms which are, in their whole nature, really nothing more than permanent ova. There are independent unicellular organisms
of the simplest character which develop no further, but reproduce themselves as such, without any further growth. We know to-day of a great number of these little beings, such as the gregarina, flagellata, acineta, infusoria, etc. However, there is one of them that has an especial interest for us, because it at once suggests itself when we raise our question, and it must be regarded as the unicellular being that approaches nearest to the real ancestral form. This organism is the amœba.

For a long time now we have comprised under the general name of amœbæ a number of microscopic unicellular organisms, which are very widely distributed, especially in fresh water, but also in the ocean; in fact, they have lately been discovered in damp soil. There are also parasitic amœbæ which live inside other animals. When we place one of these amœbæ in a drop of water under the microscope and examine it with a high power, it generally appears as a roundish particle of a very irregular and varying shape (Figs. 16 and 17). In its soft, slimy, semi-fluid substance, which consists of protoplasm, we see only the solid globular particle it contains, the nucleus. This unicellular body moves about continually, creeping in every direction on the glass on which we are examining it. The movement is effected by the shapeless body thrusting out finger-like processes at various parts of its surface; and these are slowly but continually changing, and drawing the rest of the body after them. After a time, perhaps, the action changes. The amœba suddenly stands still, withdraws its projections, and assumes a globular shape. In a little while, however, the globular body begins to expand again, thrusts out arms in another direction, and moves on once more. These changeable processes are
called "false feet," or pseudopodia, because they behave physiologically as feet, yet are not special organs in the anatomic sense. They disappear as quickly as they come, and are nothing more than temporary projections of the semi-fluid, homogeneous, and structureless body.

If you touch one of these creeping amœbæ with a needle, or put a drop of acid in the water, the whole body at once contracts in consequence of this mechanical or physical stimulus. As a rule, the body then resumes its globular shape. In certain circumstances—for instance, if the impurity of the water lasts some time—the amœba begins to develop a covering. It exudes a homogeneous membrane or capsule, which immediately hardens, and assumes the appearance of a globular cell with a protective membrane. The amœba either takes its food directly by imbibition of matter floating in the water, or by pressing into its protoplasmic body solid particles with which it comes in contact. The latter process may be observed at any moment by forcing it to eat. If finely ground colouring matter, such as carmine or indigo, is put into the water, you can see the soft body of the amœba pressing these coloured particles into itself, the substance of the cell closing round them. The amœba can take in food in this way at any point on its surface, without having any special organs for intussusception and digestion, or a real mouth or gut.

The amœba grows by thus taking in food and dissolving the particles eaten in its protoplasm. When it reaches a certain size by this continual feeding, it begins to reproduce. This is done by the simple process of cleavage (Fig. 17). First, the nucleus divides into two parts. Then the protoplasm is separated between the two new nuclei, and the whole cell splits into two daughter-cells, the protoplasm gathering about each of the nuclei. The thin bridge of protoplasm which at first connects the daughter-cells soon breaks. Here we have the simple form of direct cleavage of the nuclei. Without mitosis, or formation of threads, the homogeneous nucleus divides into two halves. These move away from each other, and become centres of attraction for the enveloping
matter, the protoplasm. The same direct cleavage of the nuclei is also witnessed in the reproduction of many other protists, while other unicellular organisms show the indirect division of the cell.

Hence, although the amoeba is nothing but a simple cell, it is evidently able to accomplish all the functions of the multicellular organism. It moves, feels, nourishes itself, and reproduces. Some kinds of these amoebae can be seen with the naked eye, but most of them are microscopically small.

Fig. 17.—Division of a unicellular amoeba (amoeba polypodia) in six stages. (From F. E. Schultze.) The dark spot is the nucleus, the lighter spot a contractile vacuole in the protoplasm. The latter re-forms in one of the daughter-cells.

It is for the following reasons that we regard the amoebae as the unicellular organisms which have special phylogenetic (or evolutionary) relations to the ovum. In many of the lower animals the ovum retains its original naked form until fertilisation, develops no membranes, and is then often indistinguishable from the ordinary amoeba. Like the amoebae, these naked ova may thrust out processes, and move about as travelling cells. In the sponges these mobile ova
move about freely in the maternal body like independent amœbæ (Fig. 17). They had been observed by earlier scientists, but described as foreign bodies—namely, parasitic amœbæ, living parasitically on the body of the sponge. Later, however, it was discovered that they were not parasites, but the ova of the sponge. We also find this remarkable phenomenon among other animals, such as the graceful, bell-shaped zoophyta, which we call polyps and medusæ. Their ova remain naked cells, which thrust out amœboïd projections, nourish themselves, and move about. When they have been fertilised, the multicellular organism is formed from them by repeated segmentation.

It is, therefore, no audacious hypothesis, but a perfectly sound conclusion, to regard the amœba as the particular unicellular organism which offers us an approximate illustration of the ancient common unicellular ancestor of all the metazoa, or multicellular animals. The simple naked amœba has a less definite and more original character than any other cell. Moreover, there is the fact that recent research has discovered such amœba-like cells everywhere in the mature body of the multicellular animals. They are found, for instance, in the human blood, side by side with the red corpuscles, as colourless blood-cells; and it is the same with all the vertebrates. They are also found in many of the invertebrates—for instance, in the blood of the snail. I showed, in 1859, that these colourless blood-cells can, like the independent amœbæ, take up solid particles, or "eat" (whence they are called phagocytes = "eating-cells," Fig. 19). Lately, it has been discovered that many different cells may, if they have room enough, execute the same movements, creeping about and eating. They behave just like amœbæ (Fig. 12). It has also been shown that these "travelling-cells," or planocytes, play an important part in man's physiology and pathology.
(as means of transport for food, infectious matter, bacteria, etc.).

The power of the naked cell to execute these characteristic amoeba-like movements comes from the contractility (or automatic mobility) of its protoplasm. This seems to be a universal property of young cells. When they are not enclosed by a firm membrane, or confined in a "cellular prison," they can always accomplish these amoeboid movements. This is true of the naked ova as well as of any other naked cells, of the "travelling-cells" of various kinds in connective tissue, of the mesenchymic cells, lymph-cells, mucus-cells, etc.

We have now, by our study of the ovum and the comparison of it with the amoeba, provided a perfectly sound and most valuable foundation for both the embryology and the evolution of man. We have learned that the human ovum is a simple cell, that this ovum is not materially different from that of other mammals, and that we may conclude from it to the existence of a primitive unicellular ancestral form, with a substantial resemblance to the amoeba.

The statement that the earliest progenitors of the human race were simple cells of this kind, and led an independent unicellular life like the amoeba, has not only been ridiculed as the dream of a natural philosopher, but also been violently censured in theological journals as "shameful and immoral." But, as I observed in my essay On the Origin and Ancestral
Tree of the Human Race in 1870, this offended piety must equally protest against the "shameful and immoral" fact that each human individual is developed from a simple ovum, and that this human ovum is indistinguishable from those of the other mammals, and in its earliest stage is like a naked amœba. We can show this to be a fact any day with the microscope, and it is little use to close one's eyes to "immoral" facts of this kind. It is as indisputable as the momentous conclusions we draw from it and as the vertebrate character of man (see Chapter XI).

We now see very clearly how extremely important the cell theory has been for our whole conception of organic nature. "Man's place in nature" is settled beyond question by it. Apart from the cell theory, man is an insoluble enigma to us. Hence philosophers, and especially physiologists, should be thoroughly conversant with it. The soul of man can only be really understood in the light of the cell-soul, and we have the simplest form of this in the amœba. Only those who are acquainted with the simple psychic functions of the unicellular organisms and their gradual evolution in the series of lower animals can understand how the elaborate mind of the higher vertebrates, and especially of man, was gradually evolved from them. The academic psychologists who lack this zoological equipment are unable to do so.

This naturalistic and realistic conception is a stumbling-block to our modern idealistic metaphysicians and their theological colleagues. Fenced about with their transcendental and dualistic prejudices, they attack not only the monistic system we establish on our scientific knowledge, but even the plainest facts which go to form its foundation. An instructive instance of this was seen three years ago, in the academic discourse delivered by a distinguished theologian, Willibald Bloyschlag, at Halle, January 12th, 1900, on the occasion of the centenary festival. The theologian protested violently against the "materialistic dustmen of the scientific world who offer our people the diploma of a descent from the ape, and would prove to them that the genius of a Shakespeare or a Goethe is merely a distillation from a drop of primitive
mucus." Another well-known theologian protested against "the horrible idea that the greatest of men, Luther and Christ, were descended from a mere globule of protoplasm." Nevertheless, not a single informed and impartial scientist doubts the fact that these greatest men were, like all other men—and all other vertebrates—developed from an impregnated ovum, and that this simple nucleated globule of protoplasm has the same chemical constitution in all the mammals.

The actual amœbæ and other unicellular organisms (areella, radiolaria, etc.) are of great importance for our conclusion, because they exhibit these single cells to us in permanent independence, as autonomous cells. The human organism and that of the other higher animals are only one-celled in the earliest stage of existence. As soon as the ovum is fertilised, it increases by segmentation, and forms a group or colony of social cells, a cell-community or a cænobium. These take on different forms, and, by a division of labour among the cells and their development along different lines, the multifarious tissues that make up the animal body are produced. Thus the mature multicellular organism of man and the other higher animals and plants is a histon (or "tissue-body"), a social community of the various kinds of tissue-cells. The innumerable organic units in this "histon" may vary considerably when their development is complete, but they were originally simple cells of the same type, the equal citizens of the cell-state.
CHAPTER VII.

CONCEPTION

The meaning of sexual reproduction. Nature of conception; fusion of the female ovum and male spermatozoon. Various forms of the sperm-cells (usually cone-shaped ciliary cells). Theory of the spermatozoa. Inheritance from both parent-cells. The new stem-cell or cytula. Its hermaphroditic character. Process of fertilisation of ovum: release of the germinal vesicle and protrusions of the directing body. Penetration of a spermatozoon in the body of the ovum; movement and blending of the two pronuclei. Formation of the stem-nucleus (archicaryon), the vehicle of inheritance. Importance and equal share the two sexual cells. Male microspores and female macrospores. Importance of this fact in physiology, the theory of the cell-soul and personal immortality. Importance of all that is personal and individual.

The recognition of the fact that every man begins his individual existence as a simple cell is the solid foundation of all research into the genesis of man. From this fact we are forced, in virtue of our biogenetic law, to draw the weighty phylogenetic conclusion that the earliest ancestors of the human race were also unicellular organisms; and among these protozoa we may single out the vague form of the amœba as particularly important (cf. Chapter VI.). That these unicellular ancestral forms did once exist follows directly from the phenomena which we perceive every day in the fertilised ovum. The development of the multicellular organism from the ovum, and the formation of the germinal layers and the tissues, follow the same laws in man and all the higher animals. It will, therefore, be our next task to consider more closely the impregnated ovum and the process of conception which produces it.

The process of impregnation or sexual conception is one of those phenomena that people love to conceal behind the mystic veil of supernatural power. We shall soon see, however, that it is a purely mechanical process, and can be reduced to familiar physiological functions. Moreover, this *amphigony* (or conception) is of the same type, and is effected.
by the same organs, in man as in all the other mammals. The pairing of the male and female has in both cases for its main purpose the introduction of the ripe matter of the male seed or sperm into the female body, in the sexual canals of which it encounters the ovum. Conception then ensues by the blending of the two.

We must observe, first, that this important process is by no means so widely distributed in the animal and plant world as is commonly supposed. There is a very large number of lower organisms which propagate unsexually, or by monogony, and especially the sexless monera (chromacea, bacteria, etc.), but also many other protists, such as the amœbæ, foraminifera, radiolaria, myxomyceæ, etc. In these there is no fertilisation whatever; the multiplication of individuals and propagation of the species take place by unsexual reproduction, which takes the form of cleavage, budding, or spore-formation. The copulation of two coal,seeing cells, which in these cases often precedes the reproduction, cannot be regarded as a sexual act when the two copulating plastids differ in size or structure (microspores and macrospheres). On the other hand, sexual reproduction is the general rule with all the higher organisms, both animal and plant; very rarely do we find asexual reproduction among them. There are, in particular, no cases of parthenogenesis (virginal conception) among the vertebrates.

Sexual reproduction offers an infinite variety of interesting forms in the different classes of animals and plants, especially as regards the mode of conception, and the conveyance of the spermatozoon to the ovum. These features are of great importance not only as regards conception itself, but for the development of the organic form and especially for the differentiation of the sexes. There is a particularly curious correlation of plants and animals in this respect. The splendid studies of Charles Darwin and Hermann Müller on the fertilisation of flowers by insects have given us very interesting particulars of this. This reciprocal service has given rise to

1 See Darwin's work, On the Various Contrivances by which Orchids are Fertilised (1862).
a most intricate sexual apparatus. Equally elaborate structures have been developed in man and the higher animals, serving partly for the isolation of the sexual products on each side, partly for bringing them together in conception. But, however interesting these phenomena are in themselves, we cannot go into them here, as they have only a minor importance—if any at all—in the real process of conception. We must, however, try to get a very clear idea of this process and the meaning of sexual reproduction.

In every act of conception we have, as I said, to consider two different kinds of cells—a female and a male cell. The female cell of the animal organism is always called the ovum (or ovulum, egg, or egg-cell); the male cells are known as the sperm or seed-cells, or the spermatozoa (also spermium and zoospermium). The female ovum, the form and composition of which we have already considered, is of the same simple nature in the early stages in all the animals. It is at first merely a globular naked cell, consisting of protoplasm and a nucleus (Fig. 13). When it has freedom to move, it often makes slow ameboid movements, as we have seen in the case of the ovum of the sponge (Fig. 18). But, as a rule, it is enclosed subsequently by a number of very different, and often very complicated, shells or membranes. The ripe ovum is, on the whole, one of the largest cells we know. It attains colossal dimensions when it absorbs great quantities of nutritive yelk, as is the case with birds and reptiles and many of the fishes. In the great majority of the animals the ripe ovum is rich in yelk and much larger than the other cells.

On the other hand, the next cell which we have to consider in the process of conception, the male sperm-cell or spermatazoon, is one of the smallest cells in the animal body. Conception usually consists in the bringing into contact with the ovum of a slimy fluid secreted by the male, and this may take place either inside or out of the female body. This fluid is called sperm, or the male seed. Sperm, like saliva or blood, is not a simple fluid, but a thick agglomeration of innumerable cells, swimming about in a comparatively small
quantity of fluid. It is not the fluid, but the independent male cells that swim in it, that cause conception.

The spermatozoa of the great majority of animals have two characteristic features. Firstly, they are extraordinarily small, being usually the smallest cells in the body; and, secondly, they have, as a rule, a peculiarly lively motion, which is known as spermatozoic motion. The shape of the cell has a good deal to do with this motion. In most of the animals, and also in many of the lower plants (but not the higher), each of these spermatozoa has a very small, naked cell-body, enclosing an elongated nucleus, and a long thread hanging from it (Fig. 20). It was long before we could recognise that this structure is a simple cell. They were formerly held to be special organisms, and were called "seed-animals" (spermato-zaa, or spermato-zoidia); they are now scientifically known as *spermia* or *spermidia*, or as *spermatozomata* (seed-bodies) or *spermatofila* (seed threads). It took a good deal of comparative research to convince us that each of these spermatozoa is really a simple cell. They have the same shape as in many other vertebrates and most of the invertebrates. However, in many of the lower animals they

**Fig. 20.—Spermia or spermatozoa from the male sperm of various mammals.** The pear-shaped flattened nucleus of the seed-cell (the so-called "head of the spermatozoon ") is seen from the front in I., and sideways in II. k is the nucleus, m its middle part (protoplasm), s the mobile, serpent-like tail (or whip); M four human spermatozoa, A four spermatozoa from the ape; K from the hare ; H from the house-mouse; C from the dog; S from the pig.
have quite a different shape. Thus, for instance, in the river crab they are large round cells, without any movement, equipped with stiff outgrowths like bristles (Fig. 21 f). They have also a peculiar form in some of the worms, such as the thread-worms (*filaria*); in this case, they are sometimes amoeboid and like very small ova (Fig. 21 c-e). But in most of the lower animals (such as the sponges and polyps) they have the same pine-cone shape as in man and the other mammals (Fig. 21 a, h).

When the Dutch naturalist Leeuwenhoek discovered these thread-like lively particles in 1677 in the male sperm, it was generally believed that they were special, independent, tiny animal-cules, like the infusoria, and so were called “seed-animals” or spermatozoa. I have already mentioned that they played an important part in the pre-formation theory, as it was believed that the whole mature organism existed already, with all its parts, but very small and packed together, in each spermatozoon (see p. 27). The spermatozoa had only to penetrate into the fertile soil of the female ovum, and then the pre-formed body would expand and grow in all its parts.

This erroneous view is now wholly abandoned; we know by the most accurate investigation that the mobile spermatozoa are nothing but simple and real cells, of the kind that we call “ciliated” (equipped with lashes, or *cilia*). In the previous illustrations we have distinguished in the spermatozoon a head, trunk, and tail. The “head” (Fig. 20 k) is merely the oval nucleus of the cell; the body or middle-part (*m*) is an accumulation of cell-matter; and the tail (*s*) is a thread-like prolongation of the same.

Moreover, we now know that these spermatozoa are not at

---

**Fig. 21.** *Spermatozoa or spermidia of various animals.* (From Lang.) a of a fish, b of a turbellaria (with two side-lashes), c-e of a nematode (amoeboid spermatozoon), f from a river crab (star-shaped), g from the salamander (with undulating membrane), h of a ring-worm (*a* and *h* are the usual shape).
CONCEPTION

all a peculiar form of cell; precisely similar cells are found in various other parts of the body. If they have many short threads projecting, they are called ciliated; if only one long, whip-shaped process (or, more rarely, two or four), caudate (tailed) cells. Caudate cells, like those of the spermatozoa, are found in the gastric cells of the sponges and the cnidaria.

Very careful recent examination of the spermia, under a very high microscopic power (Fig. 22 a, b), has detected some further details in the finer structure of the ciliated cell, and these are common to man and the anthropoid ape. The head (k) encloses the elliptic nucleus in a thin envelope of cytoplasm; it is a little flattened on one side, and thus looks rather pear-shaped from the front (b). In the central piece (m) we can distinguish a short neck and a longer connective piece (with centrosoma). The tail consists of a long main section (h) and a short, very fine tail (e).

The process of fertilisation by sexual conception consists, therefore, essentially in the coalescence and blending together of two different cells. The most curious opinions prevailed about this act formerly. People always saw something mystic about it, and framed the most marvellous hypotheses on it. It is only in the last ten years that we have learned that the process of conception is really very simple and has no element of the mysterious. The essence of it is that a male spermatozoon combines with a female ovum. The lively spermatozoon travels towards the ovum by its serpentine movements, and bores its way into the female cell (Fig. 23). The nuclei of both sexual cells, attracted by a certain "affinity," approach each other and melt into one.

This would be an admirable place for poetic description in the most glowing colours of the wonderful mystery of conception and the struggle of the living spermatozoa, which hover
anxiously about the ovum, seeking to penetrate into the fine porous canals of the ovolemma and plunge "consciously" into the protoplasmic yolk, where they die away to find their higher selves. The supporters of teleology, too, might pause here to admire the wisdom of the Creator in providing these porous canals in the membrane of the ovum for the spermatozoa to enter through. However, the scientist coldly describes this process—this "crowning of love"—as a blending of two cells and the combination of their nuclei. The new cell that arises from the process is the simple product of the copulation of the two blending sexual cells.

Hence the fertilised cell is quite another thing from the unfertilised cell. For if we must regard the spermia as real cells no less than the ova, and the process of conception as a coalescence of the two, we must consider the resultant cell as a quite new and independent organism. It bears in the cell and nuclear matter of the penetrating spermatozoon a part of the father's body, and in the protoplasm and caryoplasm of the ovum a part of the mother's body. This is clear from the fact that the child inherits many features from both parents. It inherits from the father by means of the spermatozoon and from the mother by means of the ovum. The actual blending of the two cells produces a third cell, which is the germ of the child, or the new organism conceived. One may also say of this sexual coalescence that the stem-cell is a simple hermaphrodite; it unites both sexual substances in itself.

I think it necessary to emphasise the fundamental importance of this simple, but often unappreciated, feature in order to have a correct and clear idea of conception. With that end, I have given a special name to the new cell from which

![Fig. 23.—The fertilisation of the ovum by the spermatozoon (of a mammal). One of the many thread-like, lively spermidia pierces through a fine pore-canal into the nuclear yolk. The nucleus of the ovum is invisible.](image-url)
the child develops, and which is generally loosely called "the fertilised ovum" or "the first segmentation sphere." I call it "the stem-cell" (cytula or archicytos), its cell-matter "the stem-plasm" (archiplasma or cytuloplasma), and its nucleus "the stem-nucleus" (archicaryon or cytulocaryon). The name "stem-cell" seems to me the simplest and most suitable because all the other cells of the body are derived from it, and because it is, in the strictest sense, the stem-father and stem-mother of all the countless generations of cells of which the multicellular organism is to be composed. That complicated molecular movement of the protoplasm which we call "life" is, naturally, something quite different in this stem-cell from what we find in the two parent-cells, from the coalescence of which it has issued. The life of the stem-cell or cytula is the product or resultant of the paternal life-movement that is conveyed in the spermatozoon and the maternal life-movement that is contributed by the ovum. On the principle of the parallelogram of forces, it may be said that the potential energy of the stem-cell is the diagonal of the parallelogram, while its two sides represent the potential energy of the paternal spermatozoa and that of the maternal ovum. The combined potential energy of the two, or the hereditary potentiality, is converted into living force as soon as the individual development of the stem-cell begins after the coalescence.

The admirable work done by recent observers has shown that the individual development, in man and the other animals, commences with the formation of a simple "stem-cell" of this character, and that this then passes, by repeated segmentation (or fission), into a cluster of cells, known as "the segmentation sphere" or "segmentation cells" (segmentella or blastomera). Until 1875 there was a spirited controversy as to the origin of the stem-cell, and as to the real behaviour of the spermatozoon and the ovum in its formation or at conception. It had been generally assumed that the original nucleus of the ovum, called the germinal vesicle, remained unchanged at conception, and passed over directly to the stem-nucleus (or nucleus
of "the first segmentation sphere"). However, most modern observers are convinced that the germinal vesicle sooner or later disappears, and that the stem-nucleus is a new formation. But there were different opinions as to the mode of formation of this new nucleus of the stem-cell. Some thought that the germinal vesicle disappeared before impregnation and some after. Some said that it was thrust out of the ovum, and others that it melted away in the yolk. Some believed that it was wholly, and others that it was only partially, lost. All these contradictory opinions and difficulties about these important processes have now been happily settled. The solution began in 1875, when a number of very careful microscopic studies of them were published about the same time, especially those of Oscar Hertwig and Edward Strasburger (both then at Jena), Edward Van Beneden, O. Bütschli, etc. By the work of these many succeeding observers we have gradually come to a happy agreement as to the essential features of conception, and are convinced that it has the same physiological features in the whole animal and plant worlds. This is most clearly observed in the ova of the echinoderma (star-fishes, sea urchins, sea-gherkins, etc.). The investigations of Oscar and Richard Hertwig were chiefly directed to these. The main results may be summed up as follows:

Conception is preceded by certain preliminary changes, which are very necessary—in fact, usually indispensable—for its occurrence. They are comprised under the general heading of "Changes prior to impregnation." In these the original nucleus of the ovum, the germinal vesicle, is lost. Part of it is extruded, and part dissolved in the cell contents; only a very small part of it is left to form the basis of a fresh nucleus, the pronucleus femininus. It is the latter alone that combines in conception with the invading nucleus of the fertilising spermatozoon (the pronucleus masculinus).

The impregnation of the ovum commences with a decay of the germinal vesicle, or the original nucleus of the ovum (Fig. 24). We have seen that this is in most unripe ova a large, transparent, globular vesicle. This germinal vesicle
contains a viscous fluid (the *caryolymph*). The inner nuclear frame (*caryobasis*) is formed of the enveloping membrane and a mesh-work of nuclear threads running across the interior, which is filled with the nuclear sap. In a knot of the network is contained the dark, stiff, opaque nuclear corpuscle or nucleolus. When the impregnation of the ovum sets in, the greater part of the germinal vesicle is dissolved in the cell; the nuclear membrane and mesh-work disappear; the nuclear sap is distributed in the protoplasm; a small portion of the nuclear base is extruded; another small portion is left, and is converted into the secondary nucleus, or the female pro-nucleus (Fig. 25 *ck*).

![Fig. 24](image1.png)

*Fig. 24. — An unfertilised ovum of an echinoderm*, with nuclear network and dark nucleolus in the large globular germinal vesicle. (From Hertwig.)

*Fig. 25. — An impregnated echinoderm ovum*, with small homogeneous nucleus (*ck*). (From Hertwig.)

The small portion of the nuclear base which is extruded from the impregnated ovum is known as the "directive bodies" or "polar cells"; there are many disputes as to their origin and significance, but we are as yet imperfectly acquainted with them. As a rule, they are two small round granules, of the same size and appearance as the remaining pro-nucleus. The polar cells arise successively by the constriction or cleavage of that part of the nuclear base (probably, as a rule, the germinal spot) which also forms the female pro-nucleus. We may, therefore, regard this cleavage-process, in which the surrounding protoplasm shares, as a twice-repeated cell division, or, rather, as a gemmation (budding) of cells; because the two parts into which the
impregnated ovum divides each time are not of the same size and appearance. The two small polar cells are detached cell-buds; their separation from the large mother-cell takes place in the same way as in ordinary "indirect cell-division," with the formation of nuclear spindle, plasma stars, polar radiation, halving of the nuclear spindle, mitosis, etc. Hence, the polar cells are probably to be conceived as "abortive ova," or "rudimentary ova," which proceed from a simple original ovum by cleavage in the same way that several sperm-cells arise from one spermatoblast, or one "sperm-mother-cell," in spermatogenesis. The male sperm-cells in the testicles must undergo similar changes in view of the coming impregnation as the ova in the female ovary. In this maturing of the sperm each of the original seed-cells (spermatoblasts or spermatogonia) divides by double segmentation into four daughter-cells, each furnished with a fourth of the original nuclear matter (the hereditary chromatin); and each of these four descendant cells becomes a spermium or spermatozoon, ready for impregnation. Thus is prevented the doubling of the chromosomata and the hereditative chromatin in the coalescence of the two nuclei at conception. As the two polar cells are extruded and lost, and have no further part in the fertilisation of the ovum, we need not discuss them any further. But we must give more attention to the female pro-nucleus which alone remains after the extrusion of the polar cells and the dissolving of the germinal vesicle (Fig. 23 e k). This tiny round corpuscle of chromatin now acts as a centre of attraction for the invading spermatozoon in the large ripe ovum, and coalesces with its "head," the male pro-nucleus. The product of this blending, which is the most important part of the act of impregnation, is the stem-nucleus, or the first segmentation nucleus (archicaryon)—that is to say, the nucleus of the new-born embryonic stem-cell or "first segmentation cell" (archieytos or cytula). This stem-cell is the starting-point of the subsequent embryonic processes.

Hertwig has shown that the tiny transparent ova of the echinoderms are the most convenient for following the details of this important process of impregnation. We can, in this
case, easily and successfully accomplish artificial impregnation, and follow the formation of the stem-cell step by step within the space of ten minutes. If we put ripe ova of the star-fish or sea-urchin in a watch-glass with sea-water and add a drop of ripe sperm-fluid, we find each ovum impregnated within five minutes. Thousands of the fine, mobile ciliated cells, which we have described as "sperm-threads" (Fig. 20), make their way to the ova, owing to a sort of chemical sensitive action which may be called "smell." But only one of these innumerable spermatozoa is chosen—namely, the one that first reaches the ovum by the serpentine motions of its tail, and touches the ovum with its head. At the spot

Fig. 26. Impregnation of the ovum of a star-fish. (From Hertwig.) Only a small part of the surface of the ovum is shown. One of the numerous spermatozoa approaches the "impregnation rise" (A), touches it (B), and then penetrates into the protoplasm of the ovum (C).

where the point of its head touches the surface of the ovum the protoplasm of the latter is raised in the form of a small wart, the "impregnation rise" (Fig. 26 A). The spermatozoon then bores its way into this with its head, the tail outside wriggling about all the time (Fig. 26 B, C). Presently the tail also disappears within the ovum. At the same time the ovum secretes a thin external yolk-membrane (Fig. 26 C), starting from the point of impregnation; and this prevents any more spermatozoa from entering.

Inside the impregnated ovum we now see a rapid series of most important changes. The pear-shaped head of the sperm-cell, or the "head of the spermatozoon," grows larger and rounder, and is converted into the male pro-nucleus
(Fig. 27 s k). This has an attractive influence on the fine granules or microsomata which are distributed in the protoplasm of the ovum; they arrange themselves in lines in the figure of a star (cytulaster). But the attraction or the "affinity" between the two nuclei is even stronger. They move towards each other inside the yolk with increasing speed, the male (Fig. 28 s k) going more quickly than the female nucleus (e k). The tiny male nucleus takes with it the radiating mantle which spreads like a star about it. At last the two sexual nuclei touch (usually in the centre of the globular ovum), lie close together, are flattened at the points of contact, and coalesce into a common mass. The small central particle of nuclein which is formed from this combination of the nuclei is the stem-nucleus, or the first segmentation nucleus (archicaryon or cytulocaryon); the new-formed cell, the product of the impregnation, is our stem-cell, or "first segmentation sphere" (cytula or archicylos, Fig. 29).

Hence the one essential point in the process of sexual reproduction or impregnation is the formation of a new cell, the stem-cell. This cytula is always the resultant of the combination of two originally different cells, the female ovum and the male spermatoozoon. This process is of the highest importance and merits our closest attention; all that happens in the later development of this first cell and in the life of the organism that comes of it is determined from the first by the chemical
and morphological composition of the stem-cell, its nucleus and its body. We must, therefore, make a very careful study of the rise and structure of the stem-cell.

The first question that arises is as to the behaviour of the two different active elements, the nucleus and the protoplasm, in the actual coalescence. It is obvious that the nucleus plays the more important part in this. Hence Hertwig puts his theory of conception in the principle: "Conception consists in the copulation of two cell-nuclei, which come from a male and a female cell." And as the phenomenon of heredity is inseparably connected with the reproductive process, we may further conclude that these two copulating nuclei "convey the characteristics which are transmitted from parents to offspring." In this sense I had in 1866 (in the ninth chapter of the Generelle Morphologie) ascribed to the reproductive nucleus the function of generation and heredity, and to the nutritive protoplasm the duties of nutrition and adaptation.

As, moreover, there is a complete coalescence of the mutually attracted nuclear substances in conception, and the new nucleus formed (the stem-nucleus) is the real starting-point for the development of the fresh organism, the further conclusion may be drawn that the male nucleus conveys to the child the qualities of the father, and the female nucleus the features of the mother. We must not forget, however, that the protoplasmic bodies of the copulating cells also fuse together in the act of impregnation; the cell-body of the invading spermatozoon (the trunk and tail of the male ciliated cell) is dissolved in the yolk of the female ovum. This coalescence is not so important as that of the nuclei, but it must not be overlooked; and, though this process is not so well known to us, we see clearly at least the formation of the star-like

---

**Fig. 20.** Stem-cell or eytula of a sea-urchin (first-segmentation-cell, or impregnated ovum). (From Hertwig.) In the centre of the globular cell is the small globular stem-nucleus or segmentation-nucleus (fk).
figure (the radial arrangement of the microsomata in the plasma) in it (Figs. 27-29).

Mention must also be made of the reciprocal action of the cell-constituents on both sides. The formation of the protoplasmic star around the invading male nucleus, and afterwards round the copulated stem-nucleus, suggests the idea that this alone has an active influence on the arrangement of the granules and threads in the protoplasm. However, the reproductive nucleus itself changes its size, shape, and consistency, and is on its side influenced, from the conditions under which it is nourished, by the nutritive protoplasm. How close the interaction of the two elements is can be seen at once from the above-mentioned preliminary processes of the maturing of the ovum before impregnation, and from the segmentation processes that follow it. In both cases we observe the complete phenomena of caryokinesis and mitosis, which are found always in indirect cleavage, and which reveal to us the significant interaction of cell-nucleus and cell-body. These phenomena have also been called *caryolysis*, or the "dissolving of the nucleus in the protoplasm." This may be granted up to a certain point, and used in support of our monera theory—for the belief that the oldest and simplest organisms were innucleated plastids, and that the real unicellular forms of life were subsequently developed from these by the cleavage of nucleus and cell-body. (Cf. the nineteenth Chapter.)

The older theories of impregnation generally went astray in regarding the large ovum as the sole base of the new organism, and only ascribed to the spermatozoon the role of stimulating and originating its development. The stimulus which it gave to the ovum was sometimes thought to be purely chemical (a catalytic process), at other times rather physical (on the principle of transferred movement), or again quite dualistic (that is, a mystic and transcendental process). This error was partly due to the imperfect knowledge at that time of the facts of impregnation, and partly to the striking difference in the sizes of the two sexual cells. Most of the earlier observers thought that the spermatozoon
CONCEPTION

139

did not penetrate into the ovum. And even when this had been demonstrated, the spermatozoon was believed to disappear in the ovum without leaving a trace. However, the splendid research made in the last three decades with the finer technical methods of our time has completely exposed the error of this. It has been shown that the tiny sperm-cell is not subordinated to, but co-ordinated with, the large ovum. The nuclei of the two cells, as the vehicles of the hereditary features of the parents, are of equal physiological importance.

In some cases we have succeeded in proving that the mass of the active nuclear substance which combines in the copulation of the two sexual nuclei is originally the same for both. Edward Van Beneden has shown that in the ovum of the horse maw-worm (ascaria megaloecephala) the union of the two sexual nuclei is delayed until the stem-cell created begins to divide. The characteristic nuclear spindle which is then formed, and which falls into the nuclei of the two first segmentation daughter-cells, is formed half of the nucleus of the ovum and half of the sperm-nucleus; of the four "daughter-loops" of the segmentation spindle two are of male and two of female origin.

These morphological facts are in perfect harmony with the familiar physiological truth that the child inherits from both parents, and that on the average they are equally distributed. I say "on the average," because it is well known that a child may have a greater likeness to the father or to the mother; that goes without saying, as far as the primary sexual characters (the sexual glands) are concerned. But it is also possible that the determination of the latter—the weighty determination whether the child is to be a boy or a girl—depends on a slight qualitative or quantitative difference in the nuclein or the chromatic nuclear matter which comes from both parents in the act of conception.

The striking differences of the respective sexual cells in size and shape, which occasioned the erroneous views of earlier scientists, are easily explained on the principle of division of labour, or ergonomy. The inert, motionless ovum grows in size according to the quantity of provision it
stores up in the form of nutritive yolk for the development of the germ. The active swimming sperm-cell is reduced in size in proportion to its need to seek the ovum and bore its way into its yolk. These differences are very conspicuous in the higher animals, but they are much less in the lower animals. In those protists (unicellular plants and animals) which have the first rudiments of sexual reproduction the two copulating cells are at first quite equal. In these cases the act of impregnation is nothing more than a sudden growth, in which the originally simple cell doubles its volume, and is thus prepared for reproduction (cell-division). Afterwards slight differences are seen in the size of the copulating cells; though the smaller microspores (or microgonidia) still have the same shape as the larger macrospores (or macrogonidia). It is only when the difference in size is very pronounced that a notable difference in shape is found: the sprightly sperm-cell changes more in shape and the ovum in size.

Quite in harmony with this new conception of the equivalence of the two gonidia, or the equal physiological importance of the male and female sex-cells and their equal share in the process of heredity, is the important fact established by Hertwig (1875), that in normal impregnation only one single spermatozoon copulates with one ovum; the membrane which is raised on the surface of the yolk immediately after one sperm-cell has penetrated (Fig. 26 C) prevents any others from entering. All the rivals of the fortunate penetrator are excluded, and die without. But if the ovum passes into a morbid state, if it is made stiff by a lowering of its temperature or stupefied with narcotics (chloroform, morphia, nicotine, etc.), two or more spermatozoa may penetrate into its yolk-body. We then witness polyspermy. The more Hertwig chloroformed the ovum, the more spermatozoa were able to bore their way into its unconscious body.

These remarkable facts of impregnation are also of the greatest interest in psychology, especially as regards the theory of the cell-soul, which I consider to be its chief foundation. All the phenomena we have described can only
be understood and explained by ascribing a certain lower degree of psychic activity to the sexual principles. They feel each other's proximity, and are drawn together by a sensitive impulse (probably related to smell); they move towards each other, and do not rest until they fuse together. Physiologists may say that it is only a question of a peculiar physico-chemical phenomenon, and not a psychic action; but the two cannot be separated. Even the psychic functions, in the strict sense of the word, are only complex physical processes, or "psycho-physical" phenomena, which are determined in all cases exclusively by the chemical composition of their material substratum.

The monistic view of the matter becomes clear enough when we remember the radical importance of impregnation as regards heredity. It is well known that not only the most delicate bodily structures, but also the subtlest traits of mind, are transmitted from the parents to the children. In this the chromatic matter of the male nucleus is just as important a vehicle as the large caryoplasmic substance of the female nucleus; the one transmits the mental features of the father, and the other those of the mother. The blending of the two parental nuclei determines the individual psychic character of the child.

But there is another important psychological question—the most important of all—that has been definitely answered by the recent discoveries in connection with conception. This is the question of personal immortality. This dogma, which we meet in the most varied forms among uncivilised peoples, occupies an important place also in the higher conceptions of civilised nations. But the fact that it is untenable has been growing clearer and clearer during the last fifty years, chiefly through the vast progress we have made in comparative morphology, experimental physiology, empirical psychology, psychiatry, monistic anthropology, and ethnography. However, no fact throws more light on it and refutes it more convincingly than the elementary process of conception that we have described. For this copulation of the two sexual nuclei (Figs. 27–29) indicates the precise
moment at which the individual begins to exist. All the bodily and mental features of the new-born child are the sum-total of the hereditary qualities which it has received in reproduction from parents and ancestors. All that man acquires afterwards in life by the exercise of his organs, the influence of his environment, and education—in a word, by adaptation—cannot obliterate that general outline of his being which he inherited from his parents. But this hereditary disposition, the essence of every human soul, is not "eternal," but "temporal"; it comes into being only at the moment when the sperm-nucleus of the father and the nucleus of the maternal ovum meet and fuse together.

It is clearly irrational to assume an "eternal life without end" for an individual phenomenon, the commencement of which we can indicate to a moment by direct visual observation. But the unbroken chain of plasma-movements which we comprise under the title of a man's "soul" is just such an individual phenomenon. This chain of molecular movements begins at the moment when the paternal nucleus fuses with the maternal. From the stem-nucleus thus produced it is transmitted, in the repeated segmentation, to all the similar cells of the germinal layer. When these blastodermic cells grow into the two primary germinal layers of the gastrula, the first division of labour in the cells takes place; and this continues when the various tissues arise from them. Later, in man and the higher animals, it is only the central nerve-cells which are the primary organs of psychic life. At their death the mental life is extinguished, just as the faculty of vision perishes with the eye.

We often hear it said that the belief in immortality is an indispensable foundation of religion and morality, like the belief in a personal God. This opinion is totally opposed to the facts of history. In any case it is clear that all that is "personal" must be transitory, a mere passing phenomenal form in the course of the evolutionary process. Hence it is a curious error to speak, as Weismann does, of the immortality of the unicellular beings. The unicellular protists are transitory individuals just as truly as the multicellular
organisms, to which man belongs. It is true that our human soul is often regarded as something unique, and credited with peculiar powers that are not found in the other vertebrates. But an impartial study of comparative psychology completely dispenses of this illusion. We shall see that the special organs of man's mental life are evolved in just the same way as those of other vertebrates.

The great importance of the process of impregnation in answering these and other cardinal questions is quite clear. It is true that conception has never been studied microscopically in all its details in the human case—notwithstanding its occurrence at every moment—for reasons that are obvious enough. However, the two cells which need consideration, the female ovum and the male spermatozoon, proceed in the case of man in just the same way as in all the other mammals; the human foetus or embryo which results from copulation has the same form as with the other animals. Hence, no scientist who is acquainted with the facts doubts that the processes of impregnation are just the same in man as in the other animals.

The stem-cell which is produced, and with which every man begins his career, cannot be distinguished in appearance from those of other mammals, such as the hare (Fig. 30). In the case of man, also, this stem-cell differs materially from the original ovum, both in regard to form (morphologically), in regard to material composition (chemically), and in regard to vital properties (physiologically). It comes partly from the father and partly from the mother. Hence it is not
surprising that the child who is developed from it inherits from both parents.¹

The vital movements of each of these cells form a sum of mechanical processes which in the last analysis are due to movements of the smallest vital parts, or the molecules of the living substance. If we agree to call this active substance *plasson* and its molecules *plastidules*, we may say that the individual physiological character of each of these cells is due to its molecular plastidule-movement. Hence, *the plastidule-movement of the cytula is the resultant of the combined plastidule-movements of the female ovum and the male sperm-cell.* If we take the latter two to be the side-lines in a parallelogram of forces, the plastidule-movement of the stem-cell is its diagonal. I have shown, in my essay on "The Perigenesis of the Plastidule, or the Wave-movement of the Vital Particles" (1876), the importance of this view for a mechanical explanation of the elementary processes of evolution.

¹ The plasson of the stem-cell or cytula may, from the anatomical point of view, be regarded as homogenous and structureless, like that of the monera. This is not inconsistent with our hypothetical ascription to the plastidules (or molecules of the plasson) of a complex molecular structure. The complexity of this is the greater in proportion to the complexity of the organism that is developed from it and the length of the chain of its ancestry, or to the multitude of antecedent processes of heredity and adaptation.
### FIRST TABLE

**SUMMARY OF THE COMPOSITION OF THE ORGANIC CELL**

*(The Elementary Organism)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Constituents of the First Order.</th>
<th>Constituents of the Second Order.</th>
<th>Constituents of the Third Order.</th>
<th>Constituents of the Fourth Order.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I. Cell-nucleus, or Caryon.</strong></td>
<td><strong>1. Caryobasis.</strong></td>
<td><strong>1. Caryomitoma.</strong></td>
<td>*(a) Nucleolinus, nuclear point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Originally composed of homogeneous nuclear matter (<em>caryoplasm</em>).</td>
<td><strong>Chief Nuclear Mass</strong> (stiff definite nuclear matter).</td>
<td><strong>Nuclear Skeleton,</strong> made up of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>2. Caryolymph.</strong></td>
<td><strong>A. Chromatin</strong> (coloured nuclear matter);</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Nuclear Sap</strong> (soft formless matter).</td>
<td><strong>B. Achromatin</strong> (colourless nuclear matter);</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>C. Centrosoma</strong> (colourless central corpuscles).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*(b) Nucleoceleus, nuclear corpuscles.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*(c) Caryomita, nuclear threads.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*(d) Caryotheka, nuclear membrane.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>II. Cell-body</strong></td>
<td><strong>1. Protoplasma.</strong></td>
<td><strong>1. Cytomitoma.</strong></td>
<td>*(a) Paraplasma, definite inter-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>(cellulae or cytoplasm).</em></td>
<td><strong>Active (living) cell-matter.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Cell-skeleton,</strong> made up of cytomita or protoplasmic threads.</td>
<td>filar matter,*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>2. Metaplasma.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>*(b) Microsomata, or granula, granules of plasma.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Passive (dead) cell-matter</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>*(c) Lipsomata, granules of fat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>(plasma-products)</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>*(d) Caryolymph, cell-sap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*(a) Cytophila, membrane of cell.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In very young cells of primary composition there is no metaplasma; the whole cell-body consists solely of homogeneous protoplasm.</td>
<td><strong>2. B. External plasma products</strong> <em>(extruded from the protoplasm).</em></td>
<td><em>(b) Intercellular matter.)</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER VIII.

THE GASTRÆA THEORY


There is a substantial agreement throughout the animal world in the first changes which follow the impregnation of the ovum and the formation of the stem-cell; they begin in all cases with the segmentation of the ovum and the formation of the germinal layers. The only exception is found in the protozoa, the very lowest and simplest forms of animal life; these remain unicellular throughout life. To this group belong the amœbæ, gregarinae, rhizopods, infusoria, etc. As their whole organism consists of a single cell, they can never form germinal layers, or definite strata of cells. But all the other animals—all the tissue-forming animals, or

metazoa, as we call them, in contradistinction to the protozoa—construct real germinal layers by the repeated cleavage of the impregnated ovum. This we find in the lower cnidaria and worms, as well as in the more highly-developed mollusces, echinoderms, articulate, and vertebrates.

In all these metazoa, or multicellular animals, the chief embryonic processes are substantially alike, although they often seem to a superficial observer to differ considerably. The stem-cell that proceeds from the impregnated ovum always passes by repeated fission into a number of simple cells. These cells are all direct descendants of the stem-cell, and are, for reasons we shall see presently, called segmentation-cells, or segmentation-spheres (blastomera or segmentella). The repeated cleavage of the stem-cell, which gives rise to these segmentation-spheres, has long been known as "segmentation." Sooner or later the segmentation-cells join together to form a round (at first, globular) embryonal sphere (blastula); they then form into two very different groups, and arrange themselves in two separate strata—the two primary germinal layers. These enclose a digestive cavity, the primitive gut, with an opening, the primitive mouth. We give the name of the gastrula to the important embryonic form that has these primitive organs, and the name of gastrulation to the formation of it. This ontogenetic process has a very great significance, and is the real starting-point of the construction of the multicellular animal body.

The fundamental embryonic processes of the cleavage of the ovum and the formation of the germinal layers have been very thoroughly studied in the last thirty years, and their real significance has been appreciated. They present a striking variety in the different groups, and it was no light task to prove their essential identity in the whole animal world. But since I formulated the gastræa theory in 1872, and afterwards (1875) reduced all the various forms of segmentation and gastrulation to one fundamental type, their identity may be said to have been established. We have thus mastered the law of unity which governs the first embryonic processes in all the animals.
Man is like all the other higher animals, especially the apes, in regard to these earliest and most important processes. As the human embryo does not essentially differ, even at a much later stage of development—when we already perceive the cerebral lobes, the eyes, ears, gill-arches, etc.—from the similar forms of the other higher mammals (cf. Plate XIII., first row), we may confidently assume that they agree in the earliest embryonic processes, segmentation and formation of germinal layers. This has not yet, it is true, been established by observation. We have never yet had occasion to dissect a woman immediately after impregnation and examine the stem-cell or the segmentation-cells in her oviduct. However, as the earliest human embryos (in the form of embryonal spheres) we have examined, and the later and more developed forms, agree with those of the hare, dog, and other higher mammals, no reasonable man will doubt but that the segmentation and formation of layers are the same in both cases, as Figs. 12-17 on Plate II. represent.

But the special form of segmentation and layer-formation which we find in the mammal is by no means the original, simple, palingenetic form. It has been much modified and cenogenetically altered by a very complex adaptation to embryonic conditions. We cannot, therefore, understand it altogether in itself. In order to do this, we have to make a comparative study of segmentation and layer-formation in the animal world; and we have especially to seek the original, palingenetic form from which the modified cenogenetic form has gradually been developed.

This original palingenetic form of segmentation and layer-formation is found to-day in only one case in the vertebrate-stem to which man belongs—the lowest and oldest member of the stem, the wonderful lancelet or amphioxus (cf. Chapters XVI. and XVII., and Plates XVIII. and XIX.). But we find a precisely similar palingenetic form of embryonic development in the case of many of the invertebrate animals, as, for instance, the remarkable ascidia, the pond-snail (*limneus*), the arrow-worm (*sagitta*), and many of the echinoderms and cnidaria, such as the ordinary star-fish and
sea-urchin, many of the medusæ and corals, and the simpler sponges \textit{ostruthus}. We may take as an illustration the palingenetic segmentation and germinal layer-formation in an eight-fold insular coral, which I discovered in the Red Sea, and described in my \textit{Arabische Korallen} as \textit{monoxenia Darwinii}.

The impregnated ovum of this coral (Fig. 31 A, B) first splits into two equal cells (C). First, the nucleus of the stem-cell and the dependent centrosoma divide into two halves. These recede from and repel each other, and act as centres of attraction on the surrounding protoplasm; in consequence of this, the protoplasm is constricted by a circular furrow, and, in turn, divides into two halves. Each of the two segmentation-cells thus produced splits in the same way into two equal cells, and, in fact, the plane of cleavage of the latter two lies vertically on that of the first (Fig. D). The four familiar segmentation-cells (grand-daughters of the stem-cell) lie in one plane. Now, however, each of them sub-divides into two equal halves, the cleavage of the nucleus again preceding that of the surrounding protoplasm. The eight cells which thus arise break into sixteen, these into thirty-two, and then (each being constantly halved) into sixty-four, 128, and so on. The final result of this repeated cleavage is the formation of a globular cluster of similar segmentation-cells, which we call the mulberry-formation or morula. The cells are thickly pressed together like the parts of a mulberry or blackberry, and this gives a lumpy appearance to the surface of the sphere (Fig. E). [Cf. also Fig. 3 on Plate II.]

When the cleavage is thus ended, the mulberry-like mass changes into a hollow globular sphere. Watery fluid or jelly gathers inside the globule; the segmentation cells are

\footnote{The number of blastomeres or segmentation-cells increases geometrically in the original gastrulation, or the purest palingenetic form of cleavage. However, in different archiblastic animals the number reaches a different height, so that the morula, and also the blastula, may consist sometimes of thirty-two, sometimes of sixty-four, and sometimes of 128, or more, cells.}

\footnote{The segmentation-cells which make up the morula after the close of the palingenetic cleavage seem usually to be quite similar, and to present no morphological differences as to size, form, and composition. That, however, does not prevent them from differentiating into animal and vegetative cells even during the cleavage, as Figs. 2 and 3 on Plate II. indicate.}
Fig. 31.—**Gastrulation of a coral** (*monoxenia Darwinii*). A, B, stem-cell (cytula) or impregnated ovum. In Fig. A (immediately after impregnation) the nucleus is invisible. In Fig. B (a little later) it is quite clear. C two segmentation-cells. D four segmentation-cells. E mulberry-formation (morula). F embryonal sphere (blastula). G embryonal sphere (transverse section). H tufted embryo (depula, or hollowed embryonal sphere)—transverse section. I gastrula—longitudinal section. K gastrula, or cup-sphere, external appearance.
loosened, and all rise to the surface. There they are flattened by mutual pressure, and assume the shape of truncated pyramids, and arrange themselves side by side in one regular layer (Figs. F, G). This layer of cells is called the germinal membrane (blastoderm); the homogeneous cells which compose its simple structure are called blastodermic cells (*cellulae blastodermicae*); and the whole hollow sphere, the walls of which are made of the preceding, is called the blastula, or blastosphere (or vesicula blastodermica).³

In the case of our coral, and of many other lower forms of animal life, the young embryo begins at once to move independently and swim about in the water. A fine, long, thread-like process, a sort of whip or lash, grows out of each blastodermic cell, and this independently executes vibratory movements, slow at first, but quicker after a time (Fig. F). In this way each blastodermic cell becomes a ciliated cell. The combined force of all these vibrating lashes causes the whole blastula to move about in a rotatory fashion. In many other animals, especially those in which the embryo develops within enclosed membranes, the vibratory ciliated cells are only formed at a later stage, or even not formed at all. The blastosphere may grow and expand by the blastodermic cells (at the surface of the sphere) dividing and increasing, and more fluid is secreted in the internal cavity. There are still to-day some organisms that remain throughout life at the structural stage of the blastula—hollow vesicles that swim about by a ciliary movement in the water, the wall of which is composed of a single layer of cells, such as the volvox, the magospheira, synura, etc. We shall speak further of the great phylogenetic significance of the fact in the nineteenth Chapter.

A very important and remarkable process now follows—namely, the curving of the blastula (*invaginatio blastulae*, Fig. II). The vesicle with a single layer of cells for wall is

³ The blastula of the lower animals must not be confused with the very different blastula of the mammal, which is properly called the gastrocytis or blastocystis. This *cytogenetic* gastrocytis and the *palingenetic* blastula are sometimes very wrongly comprised under the common name of blastula or vesicula blastodermica.
converted into a cup with a wall of two layers of cells (cf. Figs. G, H, I). A certain spot at the surface of the sphere is flattened, and then bent inward. This depression sinks deeper and deeper, growing at the cost of the internal cavity. The latter decreases as the hollows deepen. At last the internal cavity disappears altogether, the inner side of the blastoderm (that which lines the depression) coming to lie close on the outer side. At the same time, the cells of the two sections assume different sizes and shapes; the inner cells are more round and the outer more oval (Fig. I). In this way the embryo takes the form of a cup or jar-shaped body, with a wall made up of two layers of cells, the inner cavity of which opens to the outside at one end (the spot where the depression was originally formed). We call this very important and interesting embryonic form the "cup-embryo" or "cup-larva" (gastrula, Fig. 31, I longitudinal section, K external view).¹

I have in my Natural History of Creation given the name of "tufted embryo" or depula to the remarkable intermediate form which appears at the passage of the blastula into the gastrula: "In this intermediate stage there are two cavities in the embryo—the original cavity (blastocæl) which is disappearing, and the primitive gut-cavity (progaster) which is forming. The one grows at the expense of the other; though in many of the other metazoa a relic of the inner cavity remains, and may form a 'false body-cavity' (pseudocæl). This is sometimes rather large, and is often called the 'primary body-cavity' of the metazoa, in opposition to the 'secondary body-cavity,' or enterocæl, which develops afterwards out of the primitive gut in the vertebrates" (cf. Chapter X.).

I regard the gastrula as the most important and significant embryonic form in the animal world. In all real animals (that is, excluding the unicellular protists) the segmentation

¹ I expounded the idea of the gastrula in my monograph on the sponges in 1872. I already laid stress on "the extreme importance of the gastrula in the general phylogeny of the animal kingdom": "the fact that this larva-form is found in the most different animal stems has, in my opinion, a significance that it is impossible to exaggerate, and gives a clear proof of the common origin of all from the gastræa."
of the ovum produces either a pure, primitive, palingenetic gastrula (Fig. 31 I, K) or an equally instructive cenogenetic form, which has been developed in time from the first, and can immediately be reduced to it. It is certainly a fact of the

![Figures 32 to 36](image)

Fig. 32 (A).—Gastrula of a very simple primitive-gut animal, or gastrade (gastrophysema). (Haekel.)

Fig. 33 (B).—Gastrula of a worm (*sagitta*, arrow-worm). (From Kowalewsky.)

Fig. 34 (C).—Gastrula of an echinoderm (star-fish, *uraster*), not completely folded in (depula). (From Alexander Agassiz.)

Fig. 35 (D).—Gastrula of an arthropod (primitive crab, *nauplius*) (as 34).

Fig. 36 (E).—Gastrula of a mollusc (pond-snail, *limneus*). (From Kari Kuhl.)

Fig. 37 (F).—Gastrula of a vertebrate (lancelet, *amphioxus*). (From Kowalewsky.) (Front view.)

In each figure d is the primitive-gut cavity, o primitive mouth, s segmentation-cavity, i entoderm (gut-layer), e ectoderm (skin-layer).

greatest interest and instructiveness that animals of the most different stems—vertebrates and tunicates, molluses and articulates, echinoderms and annelids, cnidaria and sponges—
proceed from one and the same embryonic form. In illustration I give a few pure gastrula forms from various groups of animals (Figs. 32–37, explanation given above).

In view of this extraordinary significance of the gastrula, we must make a very careful study of its original structure. As a rule, the typical gastrula is very small, being invisible to the naked eye, or at the most only visible as a fine point under very favourable conditions, and measuring generally \( \frac{1}{20} \) to \( \frac{1}{10} \) of a millimetre (less frequently \( \frac{1}{10} \) to \( \frac{1}{5} \), or even more) in diameter. In shape it is usually like a roundish drinking-cup. Sometimes it is rather oval, at other times more ellipsoid or spindle-shaped; in some cases it is half globular, or even almost globular, and in others lengthened out, or almost cylindrical. The geometrical type-form—a single axis with two different poles—is very characteristic. This axis is the long axis or chief axis of the subsequent uni-axial body; one pole is the mouth-pole (oral pole), and the other the contra-mouthpole (aboral pole). In the bilateral animals, or higher animals with right and left similar halves to the structure, the cenogenetically modified gastrula usually assumes a bilateral (and tri-axial) form at an early stage (Fig. 41). The gastrula is distinguished very sharply by this uni-axial, or monaxial, form from the globular blastula and morula, in which all the axes of the body are alike. The transverse section of the primary gastrula is round.

I give the name of primitive gut \((\text{progaster})\) and primitive mouth \((\text{prostoma})\) to the internal cavity of the gastrula-body and its opening; because this cavity is the first rudiment of the digestive cavity of the organism, and the opening originally served to take food into it. Naturally, the primitive gut and mouth change very considerably afterwards in the various classes of animals. In most of the cnidaria and many of the annelids (worm-like animals) they remain unchanged throughout life. But in most of the higher animals, and so in the vertebrates, only the larger central part of the later alimentary canal develops from the primitive gut; the later mouth is a fresh development, the primitive mouth disappearing or changing into the anus.
THE GASTRJEA THEORY

We must therefore distinguish carefully between the primitive gut and mouth of the gastrula and the later alimentary canal and mouth of the fully developed vertebrate.\(^1\)

The two layers of cells which line the gut-cavity and compose its wall are of extreme importance. These two layers, which are the sole builders of the whole organism, are no other than the two primary germinal layers, or the primitive germ-layers (*blastophylla*). I have spoken in the introductory section (Chapter III.) of their radical importance. The outer stratum is the skin-layer, or *ectoderm* (Figs. 32-37); the inner stratum is the gut-layer, or *entoderm* (\(i\)). The former is often also called the ectoblast, or epiblast, and the latter the endoblast, or hypoblast. *From these two primary germinal layers alone is developed the entire organism of all the metazoa or multicellular animals.* The skin-layer forms the external skin, the gut-layer forms the internal skin or lining of the body. Between these two germinal layers are afterwards developed the middle germinal layer (*mesoderma*) and the body-cavity (*coelosoma*) filled with blood or lymph.

The two primary germinal layers were first distinguished by Pander in 1817 in the incubated chick, the outer being called the *serous*, and the inner the *mucous*, layer (p. 39). But their full significance was first realised by Baer, who called the first the *animal*, and the second the *vegetative*, layer in his classical work on embryology (1828). These names are suitable enough in the sense that the animal organs of sensation—the skin, nerves, and sense-organs—are formed chiefly (if not exclusively) from the outer layer; and the vegetal organs of nutrition and reproduction, especially the alimentary canal and the blood-vessels, are formed chiefly from the inner layer. Twenty years later (1849) Huxley

\(^1\) My distinction (1872) between the primitive gut and mouth and the later permanent stomach (*metagaster*) and mouth (*metasoma*) has been much criticised; but it is as much justified as the distinction between the primitive kidneys and the permanent kidneys. Professor E. Ray-Lankester suggested three years afterwards (1875) the name *archenteron* for the primitive gut, and *blastopus* for the primitive mouth. An interesting theory of the mouth has lately been put forward by Daniele Rosa (of Modena) in his essay, "Il canale neurenterico ed il blastoporo anale" (*Bulletino Zool. di Torino*, No. 446, 1903).
THE GASTRÆA THEORY

pointed out that in many of the lower zoophyta, especially the medusæ, the whole body consists throughout life of these two primary germinal layers. Soon afterwards (1853) Allman introduced the names which have come into general use; he called the outer layer the *ectoderm* ("outer-skin"), and the inner the *entoderm* ("inner-skin"). But in 1867 it was shown, particularly by Kowalevsky, from comparative observation, that even in invertebrates, also, of the most different classes—annelids, molluscs, echinoderms, and articulates—the body is developed out of the same two

![Gastrula of a lower sponge (olynthus).](image)

**Fig. 38.—Gastrula of a lower sponge (olynthus).** *A* external view, *B* longitudinal section through the axis, *g* primitive gut-cavity, *o* primitive mouth-aperture, *i* inner cell-layer (entoderm, endoblast, gut-layer), *e* external cell-layer (outer germinal layer, ectoderm, ectoblast, or skin-layer).

primary layers. Finally, I discovered them (1872) in the lowest tissue-forming animals, the sponges, and proved in my gastræa theory that these marginal layers must be regarded as identical or homologous throughout the animal world, from the sponges and corals to the insects and vertebrates, including man. This fundamental "homology of the primary germinal layers and the primitive gut" has been confirmed during the last thirty years by the careful research of many able observers, and is now pretty generally admitted for the whole of the metazoa.

As a rule, the cells which compose the two primary
germinal layers show appreciable differences even in the gastrula stage. Generally (if not always) the cells of the skin-layer or ectoderm (Figs. 38c, 39c) are the smaller, more numerous, and clearer; while the cells of the gut-layer, or entoderm (i), are larger, less numerous, and darker. The protoplasm of the ectoderm cells is clearer and firmer than the thicker and softer cell-matter of the entoderm-cells; the latter are, as a rule, much richer in yolk-granules (albumen and fatty particles) than the former. Also the cells of the gut-layer have, as a rule, a stronger affinity for colouring matter, and take on a tinge in a solution of carmine, aniline, etc., more quickly and appreciably than the cells of the skin-layer. The nuclei of the entoderm-cells are usually roundish, while those of the ectoderm-cells are oval.

These physical, chemical, and morphological differences in the two germinal layers, corresponding to their physiological contrast, are of interest as showing us the first and oldest process of differentiation in the animal body. The skin-layer (blastoderm), which forms the wall of the globular blastula (Fig. 31 F, G), consists of a single stratum of homogeneous cells. These blastodermic cells are at first very regular and of similar construction, and exactly alike in size, shape, and texture. They are usually flattened by mutual pressure, and very often strictly hexagonal. They make the first tissue of the metazoon-organism, a simple cell-pavement or epithelium. The homogeneity of these cells disappears sooner or later during the curving of the blastosphere. The cells which form its inner concave part (the subsequent entoderm) assume, as a rule, during the very process of folding (Fig. 31 H), different features from those which constitute the outer convex part (the subsequent ectoderm). When the folding-process is complete, very striking histological differences between the cells of the two layers are found (Fig. 39). The tiny, light ectoderm-cells (e) are sharply distinguished from the larger and darker entoderm-cells (i). Frequently this differentiation of the cell-forms sets in at a very early stage, during the segmentation-process, and is already very appreciable in the blastula.
We have, up to the present, only considered that form of segmentation and gastrulation which, for many and weighty reasons, we may regard as the original, primordial, or palinogenetic form. We might call it "equal" or homogeneous segmentation, because the divided cells retain a resemblance to each other at first (and often until the formation of the blastoderm). We give the name of the "bell-gastrula," or archigastrula, to the gastrula that succeeds it. In just the same form as in the coral we considered (monoxenia, Fig. 31), we find it in the lowest zoophyta, the gastrophysema (Fig. 32), and the simplest sponges (olynthus, Fig. 38); also in many of the medusæ and hydralyophs, lower types of worms of various classes (brachioipod, arrow-worm, Fig. 33), tunicates (ascidia, Plate XVIII., Figs. 1–4), many of the echinoderms (Fig. 34), lower articulates (Fig. 35), and molluscs (Fig. 36), and, finally, in a slightly modified form, in the lowest vertebrate (the amphioxus, Fig. 37; Plate XVIII., Figs. 5–10).

The gastrulation of the amphioxus is especially interesting because this lowest and oldest of all the vertebrates is of the highest significance for the phylogeny of the vertebrate stem, and therefore for our anthropogeny (compare Chapters XVI. and XVII.). Just as the comparative anatomy of the vertebrates deduces the most elaborate features in the structures of the various classes by divergent development from this simple primitive vertebrate, so comparative ontogeny traces the various secondary forms of vertebrate gastrulation to the simple, primary formation of the germinal layers in the amphioxus. Although this formation, as distinguished from the cenogenetic modifications of the vertebrate, may on the whole be regarded as palinogenetic, it is nevertheless different in some features from the quite primitive gastrulation such as
we have, for instance, in the monoxenia (Fig. 31) and the sagitta. From Hatschek's classical work (1881) it is clear that both kinds of cells in the germinal layers of the amphioxus, and many other animals, show a diversity of features very early in the process of segmentation. Only the first four segmentation-cells, which are divided by two vertical planes of cleavage cutting at a right angle, are homogeneous (Plate XI., Fig. 8). The third, horizontal plane of cleavage lies, not on the equator of the ovum, but a little above it, so as to divide the four blastomeres into unequal halves—four smaller ones above and four larger below; the

![Gastrulation of the amphioxus](image)

former constitute the animal, and the latter the vegetal, hemisphere. Hatschek rightly observes that the segmentation of the ovum in the amphioxus is not strictly equal, but almost equal, and approaches the unequal. The difference in size between the two groups of cells continues to be very noticeable in the further course of the segmentation; the smaller animal cells of the upper hemisphere divide more quickly than the larger vegetal cells of the lower (Fig. 40 A, B). Hence the blastoderm, which forms the single-layer wall of the globular blastula at the end of the cleavage-process, does not consist of homogeneous cells of equal size,
as in the sagitta and the monoxenia; the cells of the upper half of the blastoderm (the mother-cells of the ectoderm) are more numerous and smaller, and the cells of the lower half (the mother-cells of the entoderm) less numerous and larger. Moreover, the segmentation-cavity of the blastula (Fig. 40 C, h) is not quite globular, but forms a flattened spheroid with unequal poles of its verticle axis. While the blastula is being folded into a cup at the vegetal pole of its axis, the difference in the size of the blastodermic cells increases (Fig. 40 D, E); it is most conspicuous when the invagination is complete and the segmentation-cavity has disappeared (Fig. 40 F). The larger vegetal cells of the entoderm are richer in granules, and so darker than the smaller and lighter animal cells of the ectoderm.

But the unequal gastrulation of the amphioxus diverges from the typical equal cleavage of the sagitta, the monoxenia (Fig. 31), and the olynthus (Fig. 38), not only by this early (or cenogenetically premature) differentiation of the blastodermic cells, but also in another important particular. The pure archigastrula of the latter forms is uni-axial, and it is round in its whole length in transverse section. The vegetal pole of the vertical axis is just in the centre of the primitive mouth. This is not the case in the gastrula of the amphioxus. During the folding of the blastula the ideal axis is already bent on one side, the growth of the blastoderm (or the increase of its cells) being brisker on one side than on the other; the side that grows more quickly, and so is more curved (Fig. 41 v), will be the anterior or belly-side, the opposite, flatter side will form the back (d). The primitive mouth, which at first, in the typical archigastrula, lay at the vegetal pole of the main axis, is forced away to the dorsal side; and whereas its two lips lay at first in a plane at right
angles to the chief axis, they are now so far thrust aside that their plane cuts the axis at a sharp angle. The dorsal lip is therefore the upper and more forward, the ventral lip the lower and hinder. In the latter, at the ventral passage of the entoderm into the ectoderm, there lie side by side a pair of very large cells, one to the right and one to the left (Fig. 41 p): these are the important polar cells of the primitive mouth, or "the primitive cells of the mesoderm."

In consequence of these considerable variations arising in the course of the gastrulation, the primitive uni-axial form of the archigastrula in the amphioxus has already become tri-axial, and thus the two-sidedness, or bilateral symmetry, of the vertebrate body has already been determined. The vertical middle plane (or arrow-plane) passes between the two polar cells of the prostoma, and goes the whole length of the body, dividing it into two equal halves or "antimera," right and left. The primitive mouth lies at the further and hinder end, a little above the anti-oral pole of the long axis. The arrow-axis, or dorso-ventral axis, lies vertically to this chief axis on the middle plane, joining the central lines of the flat dorsal side and the convex ventral side. The horizontal transverse axis, or lateral axis, vertical to the two (unequally polar) axes, is equi-polar, and crosses diagonally from right to left. Thus, the gastrula of the amphioxus already exhibits the characteristic two-sidedness of the vertebrate body, and this has been transmitted from the amphioxus to all the other modified gastrula-forms of the vertebrate stem.

Apart from this bilateral structure, the gastrula of the amphioxus resembles the typical archigastrula of the lower animals (Figs. 32–38) in developing the two primary germinal layers from a single layer of cells. This is clearly the oldest and original form of the metazoic embryo. Although the animals I have mentioned belong to the most diverse classes, they nevertheless agree with each other, and many more animal forms, in having retained to the present day, by a conservative heredity, this palingenetic form of gastrulation which they have from their earliest common ancestors. But this is not the case with the great majority of the animals.
With these the original embryonic process has been gradually more or less altered in the course of millions of years by adaptation to new conditions of development. Both the segmentation of the ovum and the subsequent gastrulation have in this way been considerably changed. In fact, these variations have become so great in the course of time that the segmentation was not rightly understood in most animals, and the gastrula was unrecognised. It was not until I had made an extensive comparative study, lasting a considerable time (in the years 1866–75), in animals of the most diverse classes, that I succeeded in showing the same common typical process in these apparently very different forms of gastrulation, and tracing them all to one original form. I regard all those that diverge from the primary palingenetic gastrulation as secondary, modified, and cenogenetic. The more or less divergent form of gastrula that is produced may be called a secondary, modified gastrula, or a *metagastrula*.

Among the many and varied cenogenetic forms of segmentation and gastrulation I distinguish three chief types: 1, unequal segmentation (Plate II., Figs. 7–17); 2, discoid segmentation (Plate III., Figs. 18–24); and 3, superficial segmentation (Plate III., Figs. 25–30). From the unequal cleavage we have the tufted foetus (*amphigastrula*, Plate II., Figs. 11 and 17); the discoid cleavage produces the disk-shaped gastrula (*discogastrula*, Plate III., Fig. 24); and the superficial produces the globular gastrula (*perigastrula*, Plate III., Fig. 29). In the vertebrates, with which we are chiefly concerned, the last-named form is not found at all; on the other hand, it is the commonest form among the articulates (crabs, spiders, insects, etc.). Mammals and amphibia have the unequal segmentation and the tufted foetus; so also the ganoid (scaley) and the round-mouthed fishes (the lamprey and myxine). On the other hand, most fishes, and all reptiles and birds, have the discoid segmentation and gastrula. (Cf. Table II., p. 171.)

By far the most important process that determines the various cenogenetic forms of gastrulation is the change in the nutrition of the ovum and the accumulation in it of nutritive
yelk. By this we understand various chemical substances (chiefly granules of albumin and fat-particles) which serve exclusively as reserve-matter or food for the embryo. As the metazoic embryo in its earlier stages of development is not yet able to obtain its food and so build up the frame, the necessary material has to be stored up in the ovum. Hence we distinguish in the ova two chief elements—the active formative yelk (protoplasm or *vitellus formativus*) and the passive food-yelk (deutoplasm, or *vitellus nutritivus*, wrongly spoken of as "the yelk," *lecithus*). In the little palingenetic ova, the segmentation of which we have already considered, the yelk-granules are so small and so regularly distributed in the protoplasm of the ovum that the even and repeated cleavage is not affected by them. But in the great majority of the animal ova the food-yelk is more or less considerable, and is stored in a certain part of the ovum, so that even in the unfertilised ovum the "granary" can clearly be distinguished from the formative plasm. As a rule, there is then a polar differentiation of the ovum, in the sense that a chief axis can be discerned in it, and the formative yelk (with the germinal vesicle) gathers at one pole and food-yelk at the other. The first is the *animal*, and the second the *vegetal*, pole of the vertical axis of the ovum.

In these "telolecithal" ova (for instance, in the cyclostoma and amphibia, Plate II., Figs. 7–11) the gastrulation then usually takes place in such a way that in the cleavage of the impregnated ovum the animal (usually the upper) half splits up more quickly than the vegetal (lower). The contractions of the active protoplasm, which effect this continual cleavage of the cells, meet a greater resistance in the lower vegetal half from the passive deutoplasm than in the upper animal half. Hence we find in the latter more but smaller, and in the former fewer but larger, cells. The animal cells produce the external, and the vegetal cells the internal, germinal layer.

Although this unequal segmentation of the cyclostoma, ganoids, and amphibia seems at first sight to differ from the original equal segmentation (for instance, in the monoxenia,
Fig. 31), they both have this in common, that the cleavage process throughout affects the whole cell; hence Remak called it total segmentation, and the ova in question holoblastic. It is otherwise with the second chief group of ova, which he distinguished from these as meroblastic: to this class belong the familiar large eggs of birds and reptiles, and of most fishes. The inert mass of the passive food-yolk is so large in these cases that the protoplasmic contractions of the active yolk cannot effect any further cleavage. In consequence, there is only a partial segmentation. While the protoplasm in the animal section of the ovum continues briskly to divide, multiplying the nuclei, the deutoplasm in the vegetal section remains more or less undivided; it is merely consumed as food by the forming cells. The larger the accumulation of food, the more restricted is the process of segmentation. It may, however, continue for some time (even after the gastrulation is more or less complete) in the sense that the vegetal cell-nuclei distributed in the deutoplasm slowly increase by cleavage; as each of them is surrounded by a small quantity of protoplasm, it may afterwards appropriate a portion of the food-yolk, and thus form a real "yolk-cell" (merocyte). When this vegetal cell-formation continues for a long time, after the two primary germinal layers have been formed, it takes the name of the "after-segmentation" (Waldeyer).

The meroblastic ova (Plate III.) are only found in the larger and more highly developed animals, and only in those whose embryo needs a longer time and richer nourishment within the foetal membranes. According as the yolk-food accumulates at the centre or the side of the ovum, we distinguish two groups of dividing ova, periblastic and discoblastic. In the periblastic the food-yolk is in the centre, enclosed inside the ovum (hence they are also called "centrolecithal" ova): the formative yolk surrounds the food-yolk, and so suffers itself a superficial cleavage. This is found among the articulates (crabs, spiders, insects, etc., Plate III., Figs. 25-30). In the discoblastic ova the food-yolk gathers at one side, at the vegetal or lower pole of the vertical axis, while the nucleus of the ovum and the great bulk of the
formative yolk lie at the upper or animal pole (hence these ova are also called "teclolethical"). In these cases the cleavage of the ovum begins at the upper pole, and leads to the formation of a dorsal discoid embryo. This is the case with all meroblastic vertebrates, most fishes, the reptiles and birds, and the oviparous mammals (monotrema).

The gastrulation of the discoblastic ova, which chiefly concerns us, offers serious difficulties to microscopic investigation and philosophic consideration. These, however, have been mastered by the comparative embryological research which has been conducted by a number of distinguished observers during the last few decades—especially the brothers Hertwig, Rabl, Kupffer, Selenka, Rückert, Goette, Rauber, etc. These thorough and careful studies, aided by the most perfect modern improvements in technical method (in tinting and dissection), have given a very welcome support to the views which I put forward in my work, On the Gastrula and the Segmentation of the Animal Ovum [not translated], in 1875. As it is very important to understand these views and their phylogenetic foundation clearly, not only as regards evolution in general, but particularly in connection with the genesis of man, I will give here a brief statement of them as far as they concern the vertebrate-stem:

1. All the vertebrates, including man, are phylogenetically (or genealogically) related—that is, are members of one single natural stem.

2. Consequently, the embryonic features in their individual development must also hang together phylogenetically.

3. As the gastrulation of the amphioxus shows the original palingenetetic form in its simplest features, that of the other vertebrates must have been derived from it.

4. The cenogenetic modifications of the latter are more appreciable the more food-yolk is stored up in the ovum.

5. Although the mass of the food-yolk may be very large in the ova of the discoblastic vertebrates, nevertheless in every case a blastula is developed from the morula, as in the holoblastic ova.
6. Also, in every case, the gastrula develops from the blastula by folding, or invagination.

7. The cavity which is produced in the foetus by this folding is, in each case, the primitive gut (progaster), and its opening the primitive mouth (prostoma).

8. The food-yolk, whether large or small, is always stored in the ventral wall of the primitive gut; the cells (called "merocytes") which may be formed in it subsequently (by "after-segmentation") also belong to the inner germinal layer or endoblast, like the cells which immediately enclose the primitive gut-cavity.

9. The primitive mouth, which at first lies below at the basic pole of the vertical axis, is forced, by the growth of the yolk, backwards and then upwards, towards the dorsal side of the embryo; the vertical axis of the primitive gut is thus gradually converted into horizontal.

10. The primitive mouth is closed sooner or later in all the vertebrates, and does not pass into the permanent mouth-aperture; it rather corresponds to the "properistoma," or region of the anus. From this important point the formation of the middle germinal layer proceeds, between the two primary layers.

The wide comparative studies of the scientists I have named have further shown that in the case of the discoblastic higher vertebrates (the three classes of amniotes) the primitive mouth of the embryonic disc, which was long looked for in vain, is found always, and is nothing else than the familiar "primitive groove." This is a groove that lies in the hinder dorsal surface of the discoid gastrula, and was formerly confused with the hinder part of the medullary tube. It is true that it is directly connected with this for some time (by the canal is neurentericus, which we shall discuss later), but originally it is a totally different thing, both in structure and purport. The two parallel longitudinal swellings which enclose this slender "primitive groove" (lying on the middle line) are the right and left primitive lips. The primitive mouth, which is at first (in the holoblastic vertebrates) a small round opening, is thus altered (in consequence of the increasing
accumulation of food-yolk and the resulting extension of the ventral wall of the primitive gut) not only in position and direction, but also in shape and size. It changes first into a sickle-shaped transverse fold (the “sickle-groove”), in which we distinguish a ventral (lower) and a dorsal (upper) primitive lip. However, the broad transverse fold soon narrows, and changes into a longitudinal fold (something like a hare-slit), the right and left halves of the sickle-groove (called the “sickle-horns”) being shortened, the middle part and the two halves of the dorsal upper lip being drawn forward. The latter meet subsequently in the middle line, and form the important “primitive streak.”

Thus gastrulation may be reduced to one and the same process in all the vertebrates. Moreover, the various forms it takes in the invertebrate metazoa can always be reduced to one of the four types of segmentation described above. In relation to the distinction between total and partial segmentation, the grouping of the various forms is as follows:—

I. Palingenetic (primitive) segmentation.

1. Equal segmentation (bell-gastrula).

II. Cenogenetic segmentation (modified by adaptation).

2. Unequal segmentation (tufted gastrula).

3. Discoid segmentation (discoid gastrula).

4. Superficial segmentation (spherical gastrula).

A. Total segmentation (without independent food-yolk).

B. Partial segmentation (with independent food-yolk).

The lowest metazoa we know—namely, the lower zoophyta (sponges, simple polyps, etc.)—remain throughout life at a stage of development which differs little from the gastrula; their whole body consists of two layers of cells. This is a fact of extreme importance. We see that man, and even other vertebrates, pass quickly through a stage of development in which they consist of two layers, just as these lower zoophyta do throughout life. If we apply our biogenetic law to the matter, we at once reach this important conclusion: “Man and all the other animals which pass through the two-layer stage, or gastrula-form, in the course of their embryonic
development, must descend from a primitive simple stem-form, the whole body of which consisted throughout life (as is the case with the lower zoophyta to-day) merely of two cell-strata or germinal layers." We will call this primitive stem-form, with which we shall deal more fully later on, the gastrea—that is to say, "primitive-gut animal."

According to this gastrea theory, one organ was originally of the same morphological and physiological significance in all multicellular animals—the primitive gut; and the two primary germinal layers which form its wall must also be regarded as similar or homologous in all. This important homology of the primary germinal layers is proved, on the one hand, from the fact that the gastrula was originally formed in the same way in all cases—namely, by the folding of the blastula; and, on the other hand, by the fact that in every case the same fundamental organs arise from the germinal layers. The outer or animal layer, or ectoderm, always forms the chief organs of animal life—the skin, nervous system, sense-organs, etc.; the inner or vegetal layer, or entoderm, gives rise to the chief organs of vegetative life—the organs of nourishment, digestion, blood-formation, etc.

In the lower zoophyta, whose body remains at the two-layer stage throughout life, the gastreaæa, the simplest sponges (olynthus), and polyps (hydra), these two groups of functions, animal and vegetative, are strictly divided between the two simple primary layers. Throughout life the outer or animal blastodermic layer acts simply as a covering for the body, and accomplishes its movement and sensation. The inner or vegetative layer of cells acts throughout life as a gut-epithelium, or nutritive layer of enteric cells, and often also releases the reproductive cells.

The best known of these "gastræaæa," or "gastrula-like animals," is the common fresh-water polyp (hydra). This simplest of all the cnidaria has, it is true, a crown of tentacles round its mouth. Also its outer germinal layer is slightly differentiated histologically. But these are secondary additions, and the inner germinal layer is a simple stratum of
cells. On the whole, the hydra has preserved to our day by heredity the simple structure of our primitive ancestor, the gastræa (cf. Chapter XIX.).

In all other animals, particularly the vertebrates, the gastrula is merely a brief transitional stage. Here the two-layer stage of the embryonic development is quickly succeeded by a three-layer, and then a four-layer, stage. With the appearance of the four superimposed germinal layers we reach again a firm and steady standing-ground, from which we may follow the further, and much more difficult and complicated, course of embryonic development.
EXPLANATION OF PLATES II. AND III.

SEGMENTATION AND GASTRULATION.

Plates II. and III. illustrate the chief differences in the evum-segmentation and gastrulation of animals by diagrammatic sections. Plate II. shows holoblastic ova (with total segmentation); Plate III., meroblastic ova (or with partial segmentation). The animal half of the ova (ectoderm) is tinted grey, and the vegetal half (entoderm with food-yelk) red. The food-yelk is vertically grained. All sections are vertical and median (through the axis of the primitive gut). The letters have the same meaning throughout: c Stem-cell (cytula). f Segmentation-cells (segmentella or blastomeres). m Mulberry-stage (morula). b Blastula. g Cup-structure (gastrula). s Segmentation-cavity (blastocelum). d Primitive gut-cavity (progaster). o Primitive mouth (prostoma). n food-yelk (lecithus). i gut-layer (entoderm). e skin-layer (ectoderm).

Figs. 1-6. Equal segmentation of a lower metazoan (sagitta, ascidia). Fig. 1. Stem-cell (cytula). Fig. 2. Cleavage-stage with four segmentation-cells. Fig. 3. Mulberry-stage (morula). Fig. 4. Blastula. Fig. 5. The same in process of folding or invagination (depula). Fig. 6. Bell-gastrula (archigastrula). Cf. Figs. 31-40.

Figs. 7-11. Unequal segmentation of an amphibian (frog). Fig. 7. Stem-cell. Fig. 8. Cleavage stage with four segmentation-cells. Fig. 9. Morula. Fig. 10. Blastula. Fig. 11. Tuft-gastrula (amphigastrula). Cf. Figs. 42-53.

Figs. 12-17. Unequal segmentation of a mammal (hare). Fig. 12. Cytula. Fig. 13. Cleavage with two segmentation-cells (e mother-cell of the ectoderm, i mother-cell of the entoderm). Fig. 14. Cleavage-stage with four segmentation-cells. Fig. 15. Beginning of the folding of the blastula. Fig. 16. Progress of the invagination. Fig. 17. Tufted gastrula (amphigastrula). Cf. Figs. 60-75.

Figs. 18-24. Discoid segmentation of a bony fish (labrus? cottus?). Most of the food-yelk (n) is left out (cf. Figs. 60-65). Fig. 18. Cytula. Fig. 19. Cleavage-stage with two cells. Fig. 20. Cleavage-stage with thirty-two cells. Fig. 21. Mulberry-stage (morula). Fig. 22. Blastula. Fig. 23. The same in process of invagination (depula). Fig. 24. Discoid gastrula (disco-gastrula).

Figs. 25-30. Superficial segmentation of a crab (peneus). Fig. 25. Cytula. Fig. 26. Cleavage-stage with eight cells (only four visible). Fig. 27. Cleavage stage with thirty-two cells. Fig. 28. Morula and blastula. Fig. 29. Spherical gastrula (perigastrula). Fig. 30. Passage of the gastrula into the nauplius embryo: the gullet-cavity has been formed in front of the primitive gut by folding from without.

(Cf. the following Tables II.-III.)
Gastrulation

Fish

Crab
### SECOND TABLE

#### SUMMARY OF THE CHIEF DIFFERENCES IN THE OVUM-SEGMENTATION AND GASTRULATION OF ANIMALS

The animal stems are indicated by the letters a-g:  
- a Zoophyta.  
- b Annelida.  
- c Mollusca.  
- d Echinoderma.  
- e Articulata.  
- f Tunicata.  
- g Vertebrata.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I. Total Segmentation</th>
<th>II. Unequal Segmentation</th>
<th>III. Discoid Segmentation</th>
<th>IV. Superficial Segmentation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gastrula</strong></td>
<td><strong>Gastrula</strong></td>
<td><strong>Gastrula</strong></td>
<td><strong>Gastrula</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>without separate</td>
<td>without separate</td>
<td>without separate</td>
<td>with separate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>food-yolk.</td>
<td>food-yolk.</td>
<td>food-yolk.</td>
<td>food-yolk.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### I. Primitive segmentation
- Archiblastic ova.
- Bell-gastrula (archigastrula).
- Plate II., Figs. 1–6.

#### II. Unequal Segmentation
- Amphiblastic ova.
- Tufted-gastrula (amphigastrula).
- Plate II., Figs. 7–17.

#### III. Discoid Segmentation
- Discoblastic ova.
- Discoid gastrula.
- Plate III., Figs. 18–24.

#### IV. Superficial Segmentation
- Periblastic ova.
- Spherical-gastrula.
- Plate III., Figs. 25–30.

| a. Many lower zoophyta (sponges, hydræolyps, meduseæ, simpler corals).  
| b. Many lower annelids (sagitta, phoroniæ, many nemateæ, etc., terebratula, argiopæ, pisidium).  
| c. Some lower mollusca.  
| d. Many echinoderma.  
| e. A few lower articulata (some branchiopodeæ, copepodeæ: Tardigrades, pteromalina).  
| f. Many tunicata.  
| g. The acrania (amphioxus).  
| a. Many zoophyta (sponges, meduseæ, corals, siphonophora, ctenophora).  
| b. Most worms.  
| c. Most mollusca.  
| d. Many echinoderma (viviparous species and some others).  
| e. Some of the lower articulata (both crustaceanæ and tracheanæ).  
| f. Many tunicata.  
| g. Cyclostoma, the oldest fishes, amphibia, mammals (not including man).  
| a. Cephalopoda or cuttle-fish.  
| b. Many articulata, wood-llice, scorpions, etc.  
| c. Primitive fishes, bony fishes, reptiles, birds, monotremes.  
| e. The great majority of the articulata (crustaceanæ, myriapoda, arachnidae, insects).  

---

I. Many lower zoophyta (sponges, hydræolyps, meduseæ, simpler corals).

b. Many lower annelids (sagitta, phoroniæ, many nemateæ, etc., terebratula, argiopæ, pisidium).

c. Some lower mollusca.

d. Many echinoderma.

e. A few lower articulata (some branchiopodeæ, copepodeæ: Tardigrades, pteromalina).

f. Many tunicata.

g. The acrania (amphioxus).

II. Many lower zoophyta (sponges, meduseæ, corals, siphonophora, ctenophora).

b. Most worms.

c. Most mollusca.

d. Many echinoderma (viviparous species and some others).

e. Some of the lower articulata (both crustaceanæ and tracheanæ).

f. Many tunicata.

g. Cyclostoma, the oldest fishes, amphibia, mammals (not including man).

III. Many zoophyta (sponges, meduseæ, corals, siphonophora, ctenophora).

b. Most worms.

c. Most mollusca.

d. Many echinoderma (viviparous species and some others).

e. Some of the lower articulata (both crustaceanæ and tracheanæ).

f. Many tunicata.

g. Cyclostoma, the oldest fishes, amphibia, mammals (not including man).

IV. Cephalopoda or cuttle-fish.

b. Many articulata, wood-llice, scorpions, etc.

c. Primitive fishes, bony fishes, reptiles, birds, monotremes.

e. The great majority of the articulata (crustaceanæ, myriapoda, arachnidae, insects).
### THIRD TABLE

**SUMMARY OF THE FIRST FOUR EMBRYONAL STAGES IN ANIMALS IN RELATION TO THE FOUR CHIEF FORMS OF SEGMENTATION**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A. Total Segmentation.</th>
<th>B. Partial Segmentation.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Archicystula, Archiblastic stem-cell (Plate II., Fig. 1).</td>
<td>Amphicystula, Amphiblastic stem-cell (Plate II., Figs. 7,12).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A single cell, in which formative yolk and food-yolk are not separated.</td>
<td>A uni-axial cell, containing formative yolk at the animal pole and food-yolk at the vegetal pole, not clearly separated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Archimorula, (Plate II., Fig. 3).</td>
<td>Amphimorula, (Plate II., Fig. 9).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A solid, generally globular, cluster of homogeneous cells.</td>
<td>A roundish cluster of two kinds of cells, the smaller at the animal and the larger at the vegetal pole.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Archiblastula, (Plate II., Fig. 5).</td>
<td>Amphi-blastula, (Plate II., Fig. 10).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A hollow (generally globular) sphere, the wall consisting of a single layer of homogeneous cells.</td>
<td>Aroundish sphere, the wall consisting of small cells at the animal and large cells at the vegetal pole.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Archigastula, Bell-gastula, (Plate II., Fig. 6). Figs. 32–38.</td>
<td>Amphi-gastula, Tufted-gastula, (Plate II., Figs. 11, 17). Fig. 50.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FOURTH TABLE

SUMMARY OF THE CHIEF VARIATIONS IN THE RHYTHM OF THE OVUM-SEGMENTATION

(Only the first row [Sagitta] shows the original palingenetic rhythm of the segmentation in regular geometrical progression. All the other rows show secondary, cenogenetic modifications. \(c = \) Stem-cell, \(s = \) Segmentation-cells, \(e = \) Ectoderm-cells, \(i = \) Entoderm-cells.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I. Arrow-worm (Sagitta)</th>
<th>II. Amphibian (Frog)</th>
<th>III. Mammal (Hare)</th>
<th>IV. Snail (Trochus)</th>
<th>V. Worm (Fabricia)</th>
<th>VI. Worm (Cyclogena)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1c</td>
<td>1c</td>
<td>1c</td>
<td>1c</td>
<td>1c</td>
<td>1c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2s</td>
<td>2s</td>
<td>2s</td>
<td>2s</td>
<td>2s</td>
<td>2s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>((1c + 1i))</td>
<td>((1c + 1i))</td>
<td>((1c + 1i))</td>
<td>((1c + 1i))</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4s</td>
<td>4s</td>
<td>4s</td>
<td>4s</td>
<td>3s</td>
<td>3s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>((2c + 2i))</td>
<td>((2c + 2i))</td>
<td></td>
<td>((2c + 1i))</td>
<td>((2c + 1i))</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8s</td>
<td>8s</td>
<td>8s</td>
<td>8s</td>
<td>5s</td>
<td>4s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>((4c + 4i))</td>
<td>((4c + 4i))</td>
<td>((4c + 4i))</td>
<td>((4c + 1i))</td>
<td>((3c + 1i))</td>
<td>((4c + 1i))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12s</td>
<td>12s</td>
<td>12s</td>
<td>12s</td>
<td>6s</td>
<td>5s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>((8c + 4i))</td>
<td>((8c + 4i))</td>
<td>((8c + 4i))</td>
<td>((4c + 2i))</td>
<td>((4c + 2i))</td>
<td>((4c + 1i))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16s</td>
<td>16s</td>
<td>16s</td>
<td>20s</td>
<td>10s</td>
<td>6s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>((8c + 8i))</td>
<td>((8c + 8i))</td>
<td>((16c + 4i))</td>
<td>((8c + 2i))</td>
<td>((5c + 1i))</td>
<td>((5c + 1i))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24s</td>
<td>24s</td>
<td>24s</td>
<td>24s</td>
<td>11s</td>
<td>7s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>((16c + 8i))</td>
<td>((16c + 8i))</td>
<td>((16c + 8i))</td>
<td>((8c + 3i))</td>
<td>((6c + 1i))</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32s</td>
<td>32s</td>
<td>32s</td>
<td>40s</td>
<td>19s</td>
<td>8s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>((16c + 16i))</td>
<td>((16c + 16i))</td>
<td>((32c + 8i))</td>
<td>((16c + 3i))</td>
<td>((7c + 1i))</td>
<td>((7c + 1i))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48s</td>
<td>48s</td>
<td>48s</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>21s</td>
<td>9s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>((32c + 16i))</td>
<td>((32c + 16i))</td>
<td>((32c + 12i))</td>
<td>((16c + 5i))</td>
<td>((8c + 1i))</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64s</td>
<td>64s</td>
<td>64s</td>
<td>76s</td>
<td>37s</td>
<td>10s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>((32c + 32i))</td>
<td>((32c + 32i))</td>
<td>((32c + 12i))</td>
<td>((32c + 5i))</td>
<td>((9c + 1i))</td>
<td>((9c + 1i))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96s</td>
<td>96s</td>
<td>96s</td>
<td>84s</td>
<td>38s</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>((64c + 32i))</td>
<td>((64c + 32i))</td>
<td>((64c + 20i))</td>
<td>((32c + 6i))</td>
<td>((32c + 6i))</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128s</td>
<td>160s</td>
<td>148s</td>
<td>70s</td>
<td>((128c + 32i))</td>
<td>((128c + 20i))</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER IX.

THE GASTRULATION OF THE VERTEBRATE

Phylogenetic unity of the vertebrate-stem. Ontogenetic unity of its gastrulation. Historical relations of holoblastic and meroblastic vertebrates. Unequal segmentation of the ovum and amphigastrula of the amphibia (tailless frogs and tailed salamanders). Their segmentation-cavity (blastocoel) and primitive-gut cavity (Rusconic gastric cavity). Derivation of partial from total segmentation. Discoblastic vertebrates, with germinal disc (discoid gastrula). Deep-sea bony fishes with small and shark with large food-yelk. Epigastrula (or narrow-mouthed discoid gastrula) of the amniota. The hen's egg and its large food-yelk. Discoid gastrulation of the sauropsida (reptiles and birds) and monotrema. The primitive groove of the amniote-embryo is the primitive mouth of their discoid gastrula. Phylogenetic disappearance of the food-yelk in the mammal. Oviparous and viviparous mammals. Gastrulation of the opossum and the hare. Superficial segmentation of the articulata.

The remarkable processes of gastrulation, ovum-segmentation, and formation of germinal layers present a most conspicuous variety. There is to-day only the lowest of the vertebrates, the amphioxus, that exhibits the original form of those processes, or the palingenetic gastrulation which we have considered in the preceding Chapter, and which culminates in the formation of the archigastrula (Fig. 40). In all other extant vertebrates these fundamental processes have been more or less modified by adaptation to the conditions of embryonic development (especially by changes in the food-yelk); they exhibit various cenogenetic forms of the formation of germinal layers, and thus develop by means of a metagastrula. However, the different classes vary considerably from each other. In order to grasp the unity that underlies the manifold differences in these phenomena and their historical connection, it is necessary to bear in mind always the unity of the vertebrate-stem. This "phylogenetic unity," which I systematically developed in my Generelle Morphologie.
in 1866, is now generally admitted. All impartial zoologists agree to-day that all the vertebrates, from the amphioxus and the fishes to the ape and man, descend from a common ancestor, "the primitive vertebrate." Hence the ontogenetic processes, by which each individual vertebrate is developed, must also be capable of being reduced to one common type of embryonic development; and this primitive type is most certainly exhibited to-day by the amphioxus.

It must, therefore, be our next task to make a comparative study of the various forms of vertebrate gastrulation, and trace them phylogenetically to that of the lancelet. Broadly speaking, they fall first into two groups: the older cyclostoma, the earliest fishes, most of the amphibia, and the viviparous mammals, have holoblastic ova with total, unequal segmentation; while the younger cyclostoma, most of the fishes, cœcilia, reptiles, birds, and monotrema, have meroblastic ova, with partial discoid segmentation. A closer study of them shows, however, that these two groups do not present a natural unity, and that the historical relations between their several divisions are very complicated. In order to understand them properly, we must first consider the various modifications of gastrulation in these classes. We may begin with that of the amphibia.

The most suitable and most available object of study in this class are the eggs of our indigenous amphibia, the tailless frogs and toads, and the tailed salamander. In spring they are to be found in clusters in every pond, and careful examination of the ova with a lens is sufficient to show at least the external features of the segmentation. In order to understand the whole process rightly and follow the formation of the germinal layers and the gastrula, the ova of the frog and salamander must be carefully hardened; then the thinnest possible sections must be made of the hardened ova with the microtome, and the tinted sections must be very closely compared under a powerful microscope.

The ova of the frog or toad are globular in shape, about two millimetres in diameter, and are clustered in jelly-like masses, which are lumped together in the case of
the frog, but form long strings in the case of the toad. When we examine the opaque, grey, brown, or blackish ova closely, we find that the upper half is darker than the lower. The middle of the upper half is in many species black, while the middle of the lower half is white.¹ In this way we get a definite axis of the ovum with two poles. To give a clear

![Diagram](https://via.placeholder.com/150)

**Fig. 42.**—The cleavage of the frog's ovum (magnified ten times). A stem-cell. B the first two segmentation-cells. C four cells. D eight cells (4 animal and 4 vegetative). E twelve cells (8 animal and 4 vegetative). F sixteen cells (8 animal and 8 vegetative). G twenty-four cells (16 animal and 8 vegetative). H thirty-two cells. I forty-eight cells. K sixty-four cells. L ninety-six cells. M 160 cells (128 animal and 32 vegetative).

idea of the segmentation of this ovum, it is best to compare it with a globe on the surface of which are marked the various parallels of longitude and latitude. The superficial dividing

¹ The colouring of the eggs of amphibia is caused by the accumulation of dark-colouring matter at the animal pole of the ovum. In consequence of this, the animal cells of the ectoderm are darker than the vegetable cells of the entoderm. We find the reverse of this in the case of most animals, the protoplasm of the entoderm cells being usually darker and coarser-grained.
lines between the different cells, which come from the repeated segmentation of the ovum, look like deep furrows on the surface, and hence the whole process has been given the name of furcation. In reality, however, this "segmentation," which was formerly regarded as a very mysterious process, is nothing but the familiar, repeated cell-segmentation. Hence also the segmentation-cells which result from it (the segmentella or blastomeres) are real cells.

The unequal segmentation which we observe in the ovum of the amphibia has the special feature of beginning at the upper and darker pole (the north pole of the terrestrial globe in our illustration), and slowly advances towards the lower and brighter pole (the south pole). Also the upper and darker hemisphere remains in this position throughout the course of the segmentation, and its cells multiply much more briskly. Hence the cells of the lower hemisphere are found to be larger and less numerous. The cleavage of the stem-cell (Fig. 42 A) begins with the formation of a complete meridian furrow, which starts from the north pole and reaches to the south (B). An hour later a second meridian furrow arises in the same way, and this cuts the first at a right angle (Fig. 42 C). The ovum is thus divided into four equal parts. Each of these four "segmentation-cells" has an upper and darker and a lower brighter half. A few hours later a third furrow appears, vertically to the first two (Fig. 42 D). This circular furrow is usually, but improperly, called the "equatorial furrow"; it lies to the north of the equator, and is more like the tropic of cancer. The globular germ now consists of eight cells, four smaller ones above (northern) and four larger ones below (southern). Next, each of the four upper ones divides into two halves by a meridian cleavage beginning from the north pole, so that we now have eight above and four below (Fig. 42 E). Later, the four new meridian divisions extend gradually to the lower cells, and the number rises from twelve to sixteen (F). Then a second circular furrow appears, parallel to the first, and nearer to the north pole, so that we may compare it to the north polar circle. In this way we get twenty-four segmentation-cells—
sixteen upper, smaller, and darker ones, and eight smaller and brighter ones below \((G)\). Soon, however, the latter also sub-divide into sixteen, a third or "meridian of latitude" appearing, this time in the southern hemisphere: this makes thirty-two cells altogether \((H)\). Then eight new meridian lines are formed at the north pole, and these proceed to divide, first the darker cells above and afterwards the lighter southern cells, and finally reach the south pole. In this way we get in succession forty, forty-eight, fifty-six, and at last sixty-four cells \((I, K)\). In the meantime, the two hemispheres differ more and more from each other. Whereas the sluggish lower hemisphere long remains at thirty-two cells, the lively northern hemisphere briskly sub-divides twice, producing first sixty-four and then 128 cells \((L, M)\). Thus we reach a stage in which we count on the surface of the ovum 128 small cells in the upper half and thirty-two large ones in the lower half, or 160 altogether. The dissimilarity of the two halves increases: while the northern breaks up into a great number of small cells, the southern consists of a much smaller number of larger cells. Finally, the dark cells of the upper half grow almost over the surface of the ovum, leaving only a small circular spot at the south pole, where the large and clear cells of the lower half are visible. This white region at the south pole corresponds, as we shall see afterwards, to the primitive mouth of the gastrula. The whole mass of the inner and larger and clearer cells (including the white polar region) belongs to the entoderm or ventral layer. The outer envelope of dark smaller cells forms the ectoderm or skin layer.

The repeated segmentation which can thus easily be followed on the surface of the ovum is not confined to the surface, but extends to the whole interior. Thus, the cells divide in planes which correspond pretty closely to concentric planes of the spherical body: more quickly in the upper and more slowly in the lower half. In the meantime, a large cavity, full of fluid, has been formed within the globular body—the segmentation-cavity or embryonic-cavity \((\text{blastocel}, \ F)\, \text{Figs.} \ 43-46 \ F, \text{and also} \ s \text{in the transverse sections on}
THE GASTRULATION OF THE VERTEBRATE

Plate II., Figs. 8-11). The first trace of this cavity is found in the middle of the upper hemisphere, where the first three successive planes of cleavage cut each other (Plate II., Fig. 8 s). It extends considerably by progressive cleavage, and afterwards assumes an almost semi-circular form

(Fig. 43 F; Plate II., Figs. 9 s, 10 s). The vaulted roof of this hemispherical segmentation-cavity is formed by the smaller and dark-coloured cells of the ectoderm (Fig. 43 D); on the other hand, its level floor is composed of the larger and lighter cells of the entoderm (Fig. 43 z). The globular
frog-embryo now represents a modified germinal vesicle or blastula, with hollow animal half and solid vegetal half.

Now a second, narrower but longer, cavity arises by bending from the lower pole, and by the falling away from each other of the white entoderm-cells (Figs. 43-46.N). This is the primitive gut-cavity or the gastric cavity of the gastrula, progaster or archenteron. It was first observed in the ovum of the amphibia by Rusconi, and so called the Rusconian alimentary cavity. In vertical section (Fig. 44) it seems to be bent in the form of a sickle, and reaches almost from the south pole to the north, forcing upwards a part of the gut-cells (between the segmentation-cavity $F$ and the dorsal covering $D$). The reason of the peculiar narrowness of the primitive gut-cavity here is that it is, for the most part, full of yelk-cells of the entoderm. These also stop up the whole of the wide opening of the primitive mouth, and form what is known as the “yelk-stopper,” which is seen freely at the white round spot at the south pole ($P$). Around it the ectoderm is much thicker, and forms the border of the primitive mouth (the properistoma), the most important part of the embryo (Fig. 46 $k$, $k'$). Soon the primitive gut-cavity stretches further and further at the expense of the segmentation-cavity ($F$), until at last the latter disappears altogether. The two cavities are only separated by a thin partition (Fig. 45 $s$). The part of the embryo under which the primitive gut-cavity develops is the later dorsal-surface ($D$). The segmentation-cavity lies to the front and the yelk-stopper at the hinder part of the body; the thick hemispherical mass of the yelk-cells forms the ventral wall of the primitive gut.

With the formation of the primitive gut our frog-embryo has reached the gastrula stage (Plate II., Fig. 11). But it is clear that this cenogenetic amphibian gastrula is very different from the real palingenetic gastrula we have considered (Figs. 32-38). In the latter, the bell-gastrula (archigastrula), the body has only one axis. The primitive gut-cavity is empty and its mouth wide open. Both the ectoderm and the entoderm consist of a single layer of cells. They lie close together, the segmentation-cavity having wholly
disappeared in the process of folding. It is quite otherwise
with the tufted gastrula (amphigastrula) of our amphibia
(Figs. 43-46; Plate II., Fig. 11). In this case the segmenta-
tion-cavity (F) remains for a long time beside the primitive
gut-cavity (N). The latter is, for the most part, filled with
yelk-cells, and the primitive mouth almost stopped up with
them (yelk-stopper, P). Both entoderm and ectoderm consist
of several layers of cells. Finally the typical form of the
whole gastrula is no longer uni-axial, but tri-axial; owing to
the eccentric development of the primitive gut-cavity, the
three straight axes are determined which characterise the
bilateral body of the higher animals.

In the growth of this
tufted gastrula we cannot
sharply mark off the various
stages which we distinguish
successively in the bell-
gastrula as mulberry-form
and vesicular embryo. The
morula-stage (Plate II.,
Fig. 9) is no more clearly
distinct from that of the
blastula (Fig. 10) than this
is from the gastrula (Fig.
11). Nevertheless, it is
not difficult to reduce the
whole cenogenetic or disturbed development of this amphi-
gastrula to the true palingenetic formation of the archi-
gastrula of the amphioxus.

This reduction becomes easier if, after considering the
gastrulation of the tailless amphibia (frogs and toads), we
glance for a moment at that of the tailed amphibia, the
salamanders. In some of the latter that have only recently
been carefully studied, and that are phylogenetically older,
the process is much simpler and clearer than is the case
with the former and longer known. Our common water-
salamander (triton taeniatus) is a particularly good subject
for observation. Its nutritive yelk is much smaller and its

![Embryonic vesicle of the water-salamander (triton).](image-url)
formative yolk less troubled with black pigment-cells than in the case of the frog; and its gastrulation has better retained the original palingenetic character. It was first described by Scott and Osborn (1879), and Oscar Hertwig especially made a careful study of it (1881), and rightly pointed out its great importance in helping us to understand the vertebrate development.

The globular embryonic vesicle of triton (Fig. 47) consists of loosely-aggregated, yolk-filled entodermic cells or yolk-cells (dz) in the lower vegetal half; the upper, animal half encloses the hemispherical segmentation-cavity (fh), the curved roof of which is formed of two or three strata of small ectodermic cells. At the point where the latter pass into the former (at the equator of the globular vesicle) we have the border zone (rz). The folding which leads to the formation of the gastrula takes place at a spot in this border zone. This invagination-opening, the primitive mouth (Fig. 48 u), is a horizontal transverse fold with a dorsal upper lip and ventral under lip. While the primitive gut (Fig. 49 ud) is being bent in, a part of the segmentation-cavity (fh) remains at first. But it grows smaller (Fig. 49), and finally disappears. In the complete gastrula (Fig. 50) the external germinal layer (ak) consists of a single layer of high cylindrical cells. The internal germinal layer (ik) is, in the upper and dorsal half, also composed of a single stratum of cells; these form the covering of the primitive gut-cavity. But the floor of the latter, or the lower and ventral half, consists of several layers of large yolk-cells (dz). This part of the entoderm, which is also known as the yolk-embryo (lecithoblastus), is much smaller in the watersalamander than in the frog. Here, again, a projection of it reaches into the primitive mouth as "yolk-stopper" (Fig. 50 p). At the thick borders of the latter begins the formation of the middle germinal layer (mk).
The unequal segmentation takes place in some of the cyclostoma and in the oldest fishes in just the same way as in most of the amphibia. Among the cyclostoma ("round-mouthed") the familiar lampreys (*petromyzontes*) are particularly interesting. In respect of organisation and development they are half-way between the acraia and the lowest real fishes (*selachii*); hence I divided the group of the cyclostoma in 1866 from the real fishes with which they were formerly associated, and formed of them a special class of vertebrates. The ovum-segmentation in our common river-lampreys (*petromyzon fluviatilis*) was described by Max Schultze in 1856, and afterwards by Scott (1882) and Goette (1890).

Unequal total segmentation follows the same lines in the oldest fishes, the selachii and ganoids, which are directly connected phylogenetically with the cyclostoma. The primitive fishes (*selachii*), which we must regard as the ancestral group of the true fishes, were generally considered until a short time ago to be discoblastic. It was not until the beginning of the twentieth
century that Bashford Dean made the important discovery in Japan that one of the oldest living fishes of the shark type (*cestracion japonicus*) has the same total unequal

![Fig. 51.—Ovum-segmentation in the lamprey (*petromyzon fluviatilis*) in four successive stages. The small cells of the upper (animal) hemisphere divide much more quickly than the cells of the lower (vegetal) hemisphere.](image1)

segmentation as the amphiblastic plated fishes (*ganoides*).¹ This is particularly interesting in connection with our subject, because the few remaining survivors of this

![Fig. 52.—Gastrulation of the lamprey (*petromyzon fluviatilis*). A blastula, with wide embryonic cavity (blastocoel, *bl*), *g* incipient invagination. B depula, with advanced invagination, from the primitive mouth (*g*). C gastrula, with complete primitive gut: the embryonic cavity has almost disappeared in consequence of invagination.](image2)

division, which was so numerous in paleozoic times, exhibit three different types of gastrulation. The oldest and most conservative forms of the modern ganoids are the scaley sturgeons (*sturiones*), plated fishes of great phyletic importance, the eggs of which are eaten as caviare; their cleavage is not essentially different from that of the petromyzontes and amphibia. On the other hand, the most modern of the plated fishes, the beautifully scaled bony pike of the North American rivers (*lepidosteus*), approaches the osseous fishes, and is discoblastic like them. A third genus (*amia*) is midway between the sturgeons and the latter.

The group of the lung-fishes (*dipneusta* or *dipnoi*) is closely connected with the older ganoids. In respect of their whole organisation they are midway between the gill-breathing fishes and the lung-breathing amphibia; they share with the former the shape of the body and limbs, and with the latter the form of the heart and lungs. Of the older dipnoi (*paladipneusta*) we have now only one specimen, the remarkable *ceratodus* of East Australia; its amphiblastic gastrulation has been recently explained by Richard Semon (cf. Chapter XXI). That of the two modern dipneusta, of which *protopterus* is found in Africa and lepidosiren in America, is not materially different. (Cf. Fig. 53.)

All these amphiblastic vertebrates, *petromyzon* and *cestracion*, *accipenser* and *ceratodus*, and also the salamanders and batrachia, belong to the old, conservative groups of our stem. Their unequal ovum-segmentation and gastrulation have many peculiarities in detail, but can always be reduced with comparative ease to the original cleavage and gastrulation of the lowest vertebrate, the amphioxus; and this is little removed, as we have seen, from the very simple archigastrula of the *sagitta* and *monoxenia* (see p. 152, Figs. 31-38). All these and many other classes of animals generally agree in the circumstance that in segmentation their ovum divides into a large number of cells by repeated cleavage. All such ova have been called, after Remak, "whole-cleaving" (*holoblasta*), because their division into cells is complete or total (Plate II.).
In a great many other classes of animals this is not the case, as we find (in the vertebrate stem) among the birds, reptiles, and most of the fishes; among the insects and most of the spiders and crabs (of the articulates); and the cephalopods (of the molluscs). In all these animals the mature ovum, and the stem-cell that arises from it in fertilisation,

Fig. 53.—Gastrulation of ceratodus (from Semon). A and C stage with four cells, B and D with sixteen cells. A and B are seen from above, C and D sideways. E stage with thirty-two cells; F blastula; G gastrula in longitudinal section. fh segmentation cavity. gh primitive gut or gastric cavity.

consists of two different and separate parts, which we have called formative yolk and nutritive yolk. The formative yolk (*vitellus formativus* or *morpholecithus*) alone consists of living protoplasm, and is the active, evolutionary, and nucleated part of the ovum; this alone divides in segmentation,
and produces the numerous cells which make up the embryo. On the other hand, the nutritive yolk (vitellus nutritiens or tropholecithus) is merely a passive part of the contents of the ovum, a subordinate element which contains nutritive material or deutoplasm (albumin, fat, etc.), and so represents in a sense the provision-store of the developing embryo. The latter takes a quantity of food out of this store, and finally consumes it all. Hence the nutritive yolk is of great indirect importance in embryonic development, though it has no direct share in it. It either does not divide at all, or only later on, and does not generally consist of cells. It is sometimes large and sometimes small, but generally many times larger than the formative yolk; and hence it is that it was formerly thought the more important of the two. As the respective significance of these two parts of the ovum is often wrongly described, it must be borne in mind that the nutritive yolk is only a secondary addition to the primary cell; it is an inner enclosure, not an external appendage. All ova that have this independent nutritive yolk are called, after Remak, "partially-cleaving" (meroblasta). Their segmentation is incomplete or partial (Plate III.).

There are many difficulties in the way of understanding this partial segmentation and the gastrula that arises from it. We have only recently succeeded, by means of comparative research, in overcoming these difficulties, and reducing this cenogenetic form of gastrulation to the original palingenetic type. This is comparatively easy in the small meroblastic ova which contain little nutritive yolk—for instance, in the pelagic ova of a bony fish, the development of which I observed in 1873 at Ajaccio in Corsica (Plate III., Figs. 18–24). I found them joined together in lumps of jelly, floating on the surface of the sea; and as the little ovula were completely transparent, I could easily follow the development of the germ step by step. These ovula are glossy and colourless globules of little more than half a millimetre in diameter (0.64–0.66 mm). Inside a structureless, thin, but firm membrane (ovolemma, Fig. 54 c) we find a large, quite clear, and transparent globule of albumin (d). At both poles of its
axis this globule has a pit-like depression. In the pit at the upper, animal pole (which is turned downwards in the floating ovum) there is a bi-convex lens composed of protoplasm, and this encloses the nucleus \( (k) \); this is the formative yolk of the stem-cell, or the germinal disk \( (b) \). From the neighbourhood of this lense-shaped nutritive yolk a very thin protoplasmic skin spreads around, and this protects the nutritive yolk, the "border-layer." At the opposite or vegetal pole of the ovum, in the lower pit, there is a clear simple globule of fat \( (f) \). The small fat-globule and the large albumin-globule together form the nutritive yolk. Only the formative yolk undergoes cleavage, the nutritive yolk not dividing at all at first.

The segmentation of the lens-shaped formative yolk \( (b) \) proceeds quite independently of the nutritive yolk, and in perfect geometrical order (cf. Plate III., Figs. 18-24; only the formative yolk with the nearest part of the nutritive yolk \( (n) \) is given in section [through a meridian plane] in this illustration, the greater part of the latter and the ovolemma being left out). The stem-cell (Fig. 18) first divides into two equal segmentation-cells (Fig. 19). From these we get by repeated sub-division first four, then eight, then sixteen cells (Fig. 20). By continued cleavage we then get thirty-two cells, sixty-four, and so on. All these segmentation-cells are at first of the same size and character. Closely joined together, they form a lens-shaped mass (Plate III., Fig. 21), something like the globular mulberry-embryo of the primordial cleavage (morula, Plate II., Fig. 5). But afterwards the border cells of the lens separate from the rest, and travel into the yolk and the border-layer; they form the "embryonic border" (periblast, Fig. 55 C, \( p \)). From this lens-shaped mulberry-form there
then develops a vesicular embryo (blastula), the cells of the periblast making their way centripetally underneath the lens (Plate III., Fig. 22). The regular bi-convex lens is converted into a disk like a watch-glass with thick borders. This convex cell-disk lies on the upper and less curved polar surface of the nutritive yolk like the watch-glass on the watch. As fluid gathers in the space between the blastoderm and the periblast, a round low cavity is formed (Fig. 22 s). This is the segmentation-cavity, corresponding to the central segmentation-cavity of the palingenetic blastula (Plate II., Fig. 4). The slightly curved floor of the lower segmentation cavity is formed by the periblast and nutritive yolk (\( \cdot \)), and

![Diagram of ovum-segmentation of a bony fish](image-url)

**Fig. 55. Ovum-segmentation of a bony fish.** (Cf. Plate III., Figs. 18-24.) A first cleavage of the stem-cell (cytula). B division of same into four segmentation-cells (only two visible). C the germinal disk divides into the blastoderm (b) and the periblast (p). d nutritive yolk. f fat-globule. e ovolemma. z space between the ovolemma and the ovum, filled with a clear fluid.

the greatly curved roof of it by the blastula-cells. Our fish-embryo is now really a vesicle with eccentric cavity, like the blastula of the frog (Plate II., Fig. 10) and the salamander (Fig. 47). But, whereas in the case of these amphibia the larger vegetal half of the blastula is formed of the big yolk-cells, in our bony fish it is taken up with the periblast and the structureless, undivided nutritive yolk.

Then follows the important process of invagination, which leads to the formation of the gastrula. As a result of a further enlargement and displacement of the blastula-cells, the thick borders of the cell-disk, which lie on the nutritive yolk, grow centripetally inwards towards the middle of the segmentation-cavity (Fig. 23 s). The invagination, which may also
be conceived as a turning-up of the border of the blastoderm, begins at a spot that corresponds to the edge of the primitive mouth or the later anus. The inner, hollowed-out layer, consisting of one simple stratum of cells, is the entoderm; it is immediately attached from the under side to the upper, several-layered part of the embryonic membrane, the ectoderm. In this process the segmentation cavity disappears. The space underneath the entoderm corresponds to the primitive gut-cavity, and is filled with the decreasing food-yelk ($n$). Thus the formation of the gastrula of our fish is complete.

In contrast to the two chief forms of gastrula we considered previously, we give the name of discoid gastrula ($discogastrula$, Fig. 56) to this third principal type. As a fact, the mass of cells that compose it represent a circular, concave-convex thin disk. This disk is attached by its inner, hollow side to the curved surface of the nutritive yelk ($n$). Its outer surface is rounded convexly like a shield. If we make a horizontal section through the middle of the gastrula (in a meridian plane of the globular ovum), we find that it is composed of several strata (four in the present case) of cells (Plate III., Fig. 24). Directly over the food-yelk lies a single stratum of larger cells (Fig. 24 $i$), which have a soft, thick, coarse-grained protoplasm, and colour dark-red with carmine. These form the gut-layer or entoderm, and arise from the growth of the borders of the disk (folded germinal layer). The three outer strata that lie on it form the skin-layer or ectoderm (Fig. 24 $e$). They consist of smaller cells, that take very little colour in carmine; their protoplasm is firmer, clearer, and finer-grained. At the thickened edge of the gastrula,
the primitive-mouth edge (border-swelling or properistoma), the entoderm and ectoderm pass into each other without definite limit (Fig. 56 w).

Of late years this discoid gastrulation of the bony fishes has been very carefully described by Kupffer, Van Bambeke, Whitman, Wilson, Kopsch, H. E. Ziegler, and others. In most of the teleostei it is more complicated and changed cenogenetically, because the food-yolk is very large and forms an extensive globular body, an emulsion of albumin and fat-particles. During the growth of the lens-shaped germinal disk a part of the nucleus at the border of it travels into the yolk, and forms what is called a periblast, which surrounds the blastoderm like a ring. The incompletely divided yolk-cells of the periblast that are thus formed are also called "yolk-syneutium"; they are used up as food by the embryo with the rest of the yolk, and have no part in the building-up of the body. The same applies to the covering-layer, a simple thin stratum of flat epithelial cells, which, in many fishes, forms the uppermost layer of the blastoderm, and at its border connects with the contiguous part of the periblast, the germinal wall.¹

Very similar to the discoid gastrulation of the osseous fishes is that of the myxinoida, the remarkable cyclostoma that live parasitically in the body-cavity of fishes, and are distinguished by several notable peculiarities from their nearest relatives, the lampreys (petromyzon). While the amphiblastic ova of the latter are small and develop like those of the amphibia, the cucumber-shaped ova of the myxinoida are several centimetres long, and form a discoid gastrula. Up to the present it has only been observed in one species (bdellostoma Stouti), by Dean and Doflein (1898).

It is clear that the important features which distinguish the discoid gastrula from the other chief forms we have considered are determined by the large food-yolk. This takes no direct part in the building of the germinal layers, and

¹ Cf. Kingsley and Conn, Embryology of the Teleosts (1883); A. Agassiz and C. O. Whitman, The Development of Osseous Fishes (1885); M'Intosh, Development and Life-histories of Fishes (1890).
completely fills the primitive gut-cavity of the gastrula, even protruding at the mouth-opening. If we imagine the original bell-gastrula (Figs. 32–38) trying to swallow a ball of food which is much bigger than itself, it would spread out round it in discoid shape in the attempt, just as we find to be the case here (Fig. 56). Hence we may derive the discoid gastrula from the original bell-gastrula, through the intermediate stage of the tufted gastrula. It has arisen phylogenetically by the accumulation of a store of food-stuff at the vegetal pole, a “nutritive yelk” being thus formed in contrast to the “formative yelk.” Nevertheless, the gastrula is formed here, as in the previous cases, by the folding or invagination of the blastula. We can, therefore, reduce this cenogenetic form of the discoid segmentation (gastrulatio discoidalis) to the palingenetic form of the primitive cleavage.

This reduction is tolerably easy and confident in the case of the small ovum of our pelagic bony fish, but it becomes difficult and uncertain in the case of the large ova that we find in the majority of the other fishes and in all the reptiles and birds. In these cases the food-yelk is, in the first place, comparatively colossal, the formative yelk being almost invisible beside it; and, in the second place, the food-yelk contains a quantity of different elements, which are known as “yelk-granules, yelk-globules, yelk-plates, yelk-flakes, yelk-vesicles,” and so on. Frequently these definite elements in the yelk have been described as real cells, and it has been wrongly stated that a portion of the embryonic body is built up from these cells.¹ This is by no means the case. In every case, however large it is—and even when cell-nuclei travel into it during the cleavage of the blastoderm-border, and form a periblast—the nutritive yelk remains a dead accumulation of food, which is taken into the gut during embryonic development and consumed by the embryo. The latter develops solely from the living formative yelk of the

¹ The cell-like matter that we find in the undivided food-yelk of birds, reptiles, and fishes is anything but true cells, as His and others affirm. The true cells which we find in the food-yelk of these meroblastic ova after cleavage are migrated segmentation-cells (merocyta, Fig. 447.)
stem-cell. This is equally true of the ova of our small bony fishes and of the colossal ova of the primitive fishes, reptiles, and birds.

The gastrulation of the primitive fishes or selachii (sharks and rays) has been carefully studied of late years by Rückert, Rabl, and H. E. Ziegler in particular, and is very important in the sense that this group is the oldest among living fishes, and their gastrulation can be derived directly from that of the cyclostoma by the accumulation of a large quantity of food-yolk. The oldest sharks (cestraction) still have the unequal segmentation inherited from the cyclostoma. But while in this case, as in the case of the amphibia, the small ovum completely divides into cells in segmentation, this is no longer so in the great majority of the selachii (or elasmo-branchii). In these the contractility of the active protoplasm no longer suffices to break up the huge mass of the passive deutoplasm completely into cells; this is only possible in the upper or dorsal part, but not in the lower or ventral section. Hence we find in the primitive fishes a blastula with a small eccentric segmentation-cavity (Fig. 57 b), the wall of which varies greatly in composition. Only the roof (or upper wall) of it consists of real blastodermic cells, and forms the germinal disk (kz); the floor or lower wall is formed of undivided yolk-stuff, in which the presence of "elementary organisms" is only indicated by scattered yolk-granules (dk).

![Diagram of a longitudinal section through the blastula of a shark](image-url)

*Fig. 57. — Longitudinal section through the blastula of a shark (pristius). (From Rückert.) (Looked at from the left; to the right is the hinder end, H, to the left the fore end, I.) B segmentation-cavity, kz cells of the germinal membrane, dk yolk-nuclei.*
The circular border of the germinal disk or the thin "transition zone," which connects the roof and floor of the segmentation-cavity, corresponds to the border-zone at the equator of the amphibian ovum. In the middle of its hinder border we have the beginning of the invagination of the primitive gut (Fig. 58 ud); it extends gradually from this spot (which corresponds to the Rusconian anus of the amphibia) forward and around, so that the primitive mouth becomes first crescent-shaped and then circular, and, as it opens wider, surrounds the ball of the larger food-yelk (*disco-gastrula eurystoma*). Not only the obviously divided cylindrical cells of the roof (the blastocytes), but also the contiguous parts of the yolks that contain the yolks-nuclei (dk)

![Fig. 58.—Longitudinal section of the blastula of a shark (*pristius*) at the beginning of gastrulation. (From Rückert.) (Seen from the left.) V fore end, H hind end, B segmentation-cavity or blastocoel, ud first trace of the primitive gut, *dk* yolks-nuclei, *fd* fine-grained yolk, *gd* coarse-grained yolk.

or the nuclei of the still undivided merocytes, take part in the invagination. As these gradually divide and become independent round entodermic cells, they form the ventral wall of the primitive gut; its dorsal wall is made up of the cylindrical cells which are formed, in a continuous simple layer, at the inner side of the roof of the segmentation-cavity during the advancing invagination. The cavity is thus pressed in on this side also, and displaced by the cavity of the primitive gut (*ud*). But only the back wall of this wide-mouthed discoid gastrula continues for some time to consist of two distinct strata of cells (the primary germinal layers), its ventral wall being composed of the yolk-stuff. As this gradually disappears, the wide primitive mouth becomes
smaller. In this discoid gastrula the ventral lip of the
primitive mouth is in front, the dorsal lip behind.

Essentially different from this wide-mouthed discogastrula
of most of the selachii is the epigastrula (of Rabl), the
narrow-mouthed discoid gastrula of the amniotes, the reptiles,
birds, and monotremes; between the two—as a phylogenetic
intermediate stage—we have the holoblastic amphigastrula
of the amphibia. The latter has developed from the amphi-
 gastrula of the ganoids and dipneusts, whereas the discoid
amniote gastrula has, in turn, evolved from the amphibian
gastrula by the addition of food-yolk. This phylogenetic
change of gastrulation is still found in the remarkable ophidia
( *gymnophiona, cecilia, or peromela* ), serpent-like amphibia that
live in moist soil in the tropics, and in many respects repre-
sent the transition from the gill-breathing amphibia to the
lung-breathing reptiles. Their embryonic development has
been explained by the fine studies of the brothers Sarasin of
*ichthyophis glutinoso* at Ceylon (1887), and those of August
Brauer of the *hypogeophis rostrata* in the Seychelles (1897).
It is only by the historical and comparative study of these
that we can understand the difficult and obscure gastrulation
of the amniotes.

The bird's egg is particularly important for our purpose,
because most of the chief studies of the development of the
vertebrates are based on observations of the hen's egg during
hatching. The mammal ovum is much more difficult to
obtain and study, and for this practical and obvious reason
very rarely thoroughly investigated. But we can get hens'
eggs in any quantity at any time, and, by means of artificial
incubation, follow the development of the embryo step by
step. The bird's egg differs considerably from the tiny
mammal ovum in size, a large quantity of food-yolk accumu-
ating within the original yolk or the protoplasm of the ovum.
This is the yellow ball which we commonly call the yolk of
the egg. In order to understand the bird's egg aright—for
it is very often quite wrongly explained—we must examine it
in its original condition, and follow it from the very beginning
of its development in the bird's ovary. We then see that
the original ovum is a quite small, naked, and simple cell with a nucleus, not differing in either size or shape from the original ovum of the mammals and other animals (cf. Fig. 13E). As in the case of all the craniota, the original or primitive ovum (protovum) is covered with a continuous layer of small cells, like an epithelium. This epithelial membrane is the follicle, from which the ovum afterwards issues. Immediately underneath it the structureless yelk-membrane is secreted from the yelk.

The small primitive ovum of the bird begins very early to take up into itself a quantity of food-stuff through the yelk-membrane, and work it up into the "yellow yelk." In this way the ovum enters on its second stage (the metovum), which is many times larger than the first, but still only a single enlarged cell. Through the accumulation of the store of yellow yelk within the ball of protoplasm the nucleus it contains (the germinal vesicle) is forced to the surface of the ball. Here it is surrounded by a small quantity of protoplasm, and with this forms the lens-shaped formative yelk (Fig. 59 b). This is seen on the yellow yelk-ball, at a certain point of the surface, as a small round white spot—the "scar" (cicatricula). From this scar a thread-like column of white nutritive yelk (d), which contains no yellow yelk-granules, and is softer than the yellow food-yelk, proceeds radially to the middle of the yellow yelk-ball, and forms there a small central globule of white yelk (Fig. 59 d). The whole of this white yelk is not sharply separated from the yellow yelk, which shows a slight trace of concentric layers in the hard-boiled egg (Fig. 59 c). We also find in the hen's egg, when we break the shell and take out the yelk, a round small white disk at its
surface which corresponds to the scar. But this small white "germinal disk" is now further developed, and is really the gastrula of the chick. The body of the chick is formed from it alone. The whole white and yellow yolk-mass is without any significance for the formation of the embryo, it being merely used as food by the developing chick. The clear, glarous mass of albumin that surrounds the yellow yolk of the bird's egg, and also the hard calcareous shell, are only formed within the oviduct round the impregnated ovum.

When the fertilisation of the bird's ovum has taken place within the mother's body, we find in the lens-shaped stem-cell the progress of flat, discoid segmentation (\textit{gastrula discoidalis}, Fig. 60). First two equal segmentation-cells (\textit{A}) are formed

---

**Fig. 60.—Diagram of discoid segmentation in the bird's ovum** (magnified about ten times). Only the formative yolk (the scar) is shown in these six figures (\textit{A–F}), because cleavage only takes place in this. The much larger food-yolk, which does not share in the cleavage, is left out and merely indicated by the dark ring without. \textit{A} By the first division the cytula splits into two cells. \textit{B} These two first segmentation-cells divide by a second cleavage (vertical to the first) into four cells. \textit{C} From these four cells sixteen are formed, two other radial divisions taking place between the first two transverse divisions, and the inner ends of these eight-rayed segments being cut off by a central ring-cleavage. \textit{D} A stage with sixteen peripheral and some four concentric radial clefts. \textit{E} A stage with sixty-four peripheral and six circular clefts. \textit{F} By continuous repetition of radial and circular divisions the whole scar breaks into a heap of small cells, and now forms the lens-shaped mulberry-type (morula). The division of the nuclei always precedes the formation of clefts.
from the cytula. These divide into four \((B)\), then into eight, sixteen \((C)\), thirty-two, sixty-four, and so on. The cleavage of the cells is always preceded by a division of their nuclei. The cleavage surfaces between the segmentation-cells appear at the free surface of the scar as clefts. The first two divisions are vertical to each other, in the form of a cross \((B)\). Then there are two more divisions, which cut the former at an angle of forty-five degrees. The scar, which thus becomes the germinal disk, now has the appearance of an eight-rayed star. A circular cleavage next taking place round the middle, the eight triangular cells divide into sixteen, of which eight are in the middle and eight distributed around \((C)\). Afterwards circular clefts and radial clefts, directed towards the centre, alternate more or less irregularly \((D, E)\). In most of the amniotes the formation of concentric and radial clefts is irregular from the very first; and so also in the hen's egg. But the final outcome of the cleavage-process is once more the formation of a large number of small cells of a similar nature. As in the case of the fish-ovum, these segmentation-cells form a round, lens-shaped disk, which corresponds to the mulberry-embryo, and is embedded in a small depression of the white yolk. Between the lens-shaped disk of the morula-cells and the underlying white yolk a small cavity is now formed by the accumulation of fluid, as in the fishes. Thus we get the peculiar and not easily recognisable blastula of the bird (Fig. 61). The small segmentation-cavity \((fh)\) of this notably cenogenetic blastula is very flat and much compressed. The upper or dorsal wall \((dw)\) is formed of a single layer of clear, distinctly separated epithelial cells; this corresponds to the upper or animal hemisphere of the triton-blastula (Fig. 47). The lower or ventral wall of the flat dividing space \((vw)\) is made up of larger and darker segmentation-cells, which are in part not yet separated, and pass directly into the substance of the underlying white yolk \((wd)\); it corresponds to the lower or vegetal hemisphere of the blastula of the water-salamander (Fig. 47 \(dz)\). The nuclei of the yolk-cells, which are in this case especially numerous at the edge of the lens-shaped blastula, travel
(as merocytes) into the white yolk, increase by cleavage, and contribute even to the further growth of the germinal disk by furnishing it with food-stuff.

The invagination or the typical folding of the bird-blastula takes place in this case also at the hinder (aboral) pole of the subsequent chief axis, in the middle of the hind border of the round germinal disk (Fig. 62 s). At this spot we have the most brisk cleavage of the cells; hence the cells are more numerous and smaller here than in the fore-half of the germinal disk. The border-swelling or thick edge of the disk is less clear but whiter behind, and is more sharply separated from contiguous parts. In the middle of its hind border there is a white, crescent-shaped groove—Koller's
sickle-groove (Fig. 62 s); a small projecting process in the centre of it is called the sickle-knob (sk). This important cleft is the primitive mouth, which was described for a long time as the "primitive groove." If we make a vertical section through this part (in the middle or sagittal plane), we see that a flat and broad cleft stretches under the germinal disk forwards from the primitive mouth; this is the primitive gut (Fig. 63 ud). Its roof or dorsal wall is formed by the folded upper part of the blastula, the segmentation-cavity of which is now only visible as an insignificant channel, bordered above by the simple cell-layer of the outer germinal layer (ak), and below by the inner germinal layer with its several strata (ik). The floor or the ventral wall of the flat primitive gut is formed by the white yelk (wd), in which a

\[ vl \]
\[ ak \]
\[ ik \]
\[ vr \]

number of yelk-nuclei (dk) are distributed. There is a brisk multiplication of these merocytes at the edge of the germinal disk, especially in the neighbourhood of the sickle-shaped primitive mouth.

We learn from sections through later stages of this discoid bird-gastrula that the primitive gut-cavity, extending forward from the primitive mouth as a flat pouch, undermines the whole region of the round flat lens-shaped blastula (Fig. 64 ud). At the same time, the segmentation-cavity gradually disappears altogether, the folded inner germinal layer (ik) placing itself from underneath on the overlying outer germinal layer (ak). The typical process of invagination, though greatly disguised, can thus be clearly seen in this case, as Goette and Rauber, and more recently Duval (Fig. 64), have shown.
The older embryologists (Pander, Baer, Remak), and, in recent times especially, His, Köllicker, and others, said that the two primary germinal layers of the hen’s ovum—the oldest and most frequent subject of observation!—arose by horizontal cleavage of a simple germinal disk. In opposition to this accepted view, I affirmed in my *Gastrea Theory* (1873) that the discoid bird-gastrula, like that of all other vertebrates, is formed by folding (or invagination), and that this typical process is merely altered in a peculiar way and disguised by the immense formation of spherical food-yolk and the flat spreading of the discoid blastula at one part of its surface. I endeavoured to establish this view by the monophyletic derivation of the vertebrates, and especially by proving that the birds descend from the reptiles, and these from the amphibia. If this is correct, the discoid gastrula of the amniotes must have been formed by the folding-in of a hollow blastula, as has been shown by Remak and Rusconi of the discoid gastrula of the amphibia, their direct ancestors. The accurate and extremely careful observations of the authors I have mentioned (Goette, Rauber, and Duval) have decisively proved this recently for the birds; and the same has been done for the reptiles by the fine studies of Kupfer, Beneke, Wenkebach, and others. In the shield-shaped germinal disk of the lizard (Fig. 65), the crocodile, the tortoise, and other reptiles, we find in the middle of the hind border (at the same spot as the sickle groove in the bird) a transverse furrow (\( u \)), which leads into a flat, pouch-like, blind sac, the primitive gut. The fore (dorsal) and hind (ventral) lips of the transverse furrow correspond exactly to the lips of the primitive mouth (or sickle-groove) in the birds.

The gastrulation of the mammals must be derived from this special embryonic development of the sauropsida (reptiles and birds). This latest and most advanced class of the vertebrates has, as we shall see afterwards, evolved at a comparatively recent date from an older group of reptiles, the tocosauria; and all these amniotes must have come originally from a common older stem-form, the protamniota or pro-reptilia. Hence the distinctive embryonic process of the
mammal must have arisen by cenogenetic modifications from the older form of gastrulation of the sauropsida. Until we admit this thesis we cannot understand phylogenetically the formation of the germinal layers in the mammal, and therefore in man.

I first advanced this fundamental principle in my essay *On the Gastrulation of Mammals* (1877), and sought to show in this way that I assumed a phylogenetic degeneration of the food-yelk and the yolksac on the way from the pro-reptiles to the mammals. "The cenogenetic process of adaptation," I said, "which has occasioned the atrophy of the rudimentary yolksac of the mammal, is perfectly clear. It is the adaptation to the lengthy stay in the womb of the viviparous mammal, whose ancestors were certainly oviparous. As the great store of food-yelk, which the oviparous ancestors gave to the egg, became superfluous in their descendants owing to the long carrying in the womb, and the maternal blood in the wall of the uterus made itself the chief source of nourishment, the now useless yolksac was bound to atrophy by embryonic adaptation."

---

**Fig. 65.—Germinal disk of the lizard (lacerta agilis).** (From Kupffer.)

- u primitive mouth, s sickle, es embryonic shield, hf and df light and dark germinative area.
My opinion met with little approval at the time; it was vehemently attacked by Kölliker, Hensen, and His in particular. However, it has been gradually accepted, and has recently been firmly established by a large number of excellent studies of mammal gastrulation, especially by Edward Van Beneden's studies of the hare and bat, Selenka's on the marsupials and rodents, Heape's and Lieberkühn's on the mole, Kupffer and Keibel's on the rodents, Bonnet's on the ruminants, etc. From the general comparative point of view, Carl Rabl in his theory of the mesoderm, Oscar Hertwig in the latest edition of his Manual (1902), and Hubrecht in his Studies in Mammalian Embryology (1891), have supported the opinion, and sought to derive the peculiarly modified gastrulation of the mammal from that of the reptile.

In the meantime (1884) the studies of Wilhelm Haacke and Caldwell provided a proof of the long-suspected and very interesting fact, that the lowest mammals and the monotremes lay eggs, like the birds and reptiles, and are not viviparous like the other mammals. Although the gastrulation of the monotremes was not really known until studied by Richard Semon in 1894, there could be little doubt, in view of the great size of their food-yolk, that their ovum-segmentation was discoid, and led to the formation of a sickle-mouthed discogastrula, as in the case of the reptiles and birds. Hence I had, in 1875 (in my essay on The Gastrula and Ovum-segmentation of Animals), counted the monotremes among the discoblastic vertebrates. This hypothesis was established as a fact nineteen years afterwards by the careful observations of Semon; he gave in the second volume of his great work, Zoological Journeys in Australia (1894), the first description and correct explanation of the discoid gastrulation of the monotremes. The fertilised ova of the two living monotremes (echidna and ornithorhynchus) are balls of 4–5 mm. diameter, enclosed in a stiff shell; but they grow considerably during development, so that when laid the egg is three times as large (15–16 mm.). The structure of the plentiful yolk, and especially the relation of the yellow and the white yolk, are
just the same as in the sauropsida. As with these, partial cleavage takes place at a spot on the surface at which the small formative yolk and the nucleus it encloses are found. First is formed a lens-shaped circular germinal disc (blastodiscus). This is made up of several strata of cells, but it spreads over the yolk-ball, and thus becomes a one-layered blastula. If we then imagine the yolk it contains to be dissolved and replaced by a clear liquid, we have the characteristic blastula (vesicula blastodermica) of the higher mammals. In these the gastrulation proceeds in two phases, as Semon rightly observes: firstly, formation of the cenogenetic entoderm by delamination at the centre and further growth at the periphery; secondly, invagination. In the monotremes more primitive conditions have been retained better than in the reptiles and birds. In these sauropsida before the commencement of the gastrula-folding, we have, at least at the periphery, a two-layered embryo forming from the cleavage. But in the monotremes the formation of the cenogenetic entoderm does not precede the invagination; hence in this case the construction of the germinal layers is less modified than in the other amniota.

The marsupials come next, as a second sub-class, to the oviparous monotremes, the oldest of the mammals. But as in their case the food-yolk is already atrophied, and the little ovum develops within the mother's body, the partial cleavage has been reconverted into total. One section of the marsupials still show points of agreement with the monotremes, while another section of them, according to the splendid...
investigations of Selenka, form a connecting-link between these and the placentals.

The fertilised ovum of the opossum (*didelphys*) divides, according to Selenka, first into two, then four, then eight equal cells; hence the segmentation is at first equal or homogeneous. But in the course of the cleavage a larger cell, distinguished by its less clear plasm and its containing more yolk-granules (the mother-cell of the entoderm, Fig. 67 *en*), separates from the other blastomeres; the latter multiply more rapidly than the former. As, further, a quantity of fluid gathers in the morula, we get a spherical blastula, the wall of which is of varying thickness, like that of the amphioxus (Fig. 40 *E*) and the amphibia (Fig. 47). The upper or animal hemisphere is formed of a large number of small cells; the lower or vegetal hemisphere of a small number of large cells. One of the latter, distinguished by its size (Fig. 67 *en*), lies at the vegetal pole of the blastula-axis, at the point where the primitive mouth afterwards appears. This is the mother-cell of the entoderm; it now begins to multiply by cleavage, and the daughter-cells (Fig. 68 *i*) spread out from this spot over the inner surface of the blastula, though at first only over the vegetal hemisphere. The less clear entodermic cells (*) are distinguished at first by their rounder shape and darker nuclei from the higher, clearer, and longer ectodermic cells (*e*); afterwards both are greatly flattened, the inner blastodermic cells more than the outer.

The unnucleated yolk-balls and eurd (Fig. 68 *d*) that we find in the fluid of the blastula in these marsupials are very remarkable; they are the relics of the phylogenetically
atrophied food-yelk, which was developed in their ancestors, the monotremes, and in the reptiles.

In the further course of the gastrulation of the opossum the oval shape of the gastrula (Fig. 69) gradually changes into globular, a larger quantity of fluid accumulating in the vesicle. At the same time the entoderm spreads further and further over the inner surface of the ectoderm (e). A globular vesicle is formed, the wall of which consists of two thin simple strata of cells; the cells of the outer germinal layer are rounder and those of the inner layer flatter. In the region of the primitive mouth (p) the cells are less flattened, and multiply briskly. From this point—from the hind (ventral) lip of the primitive mouth, which extends in a central cleft, the primitive groove—the construction of the mesoderm proceeds.

Gastrulation is still more modified and curtailed cenogenetically in the placentals than in the marsupials. It was first accurately known to us by the distinguished investigations of Edward Van Beneden in 1875, the first object of

---

**Fig. 68.**—*Blastula of the opossum (didelphys)* at the beginning of gastrulation. (From Selenka.) e ectoderm, i entoderm, a animal pole, u primitive mouth at the vegetal pole, f segmentation-cavity, d unnucleated yelk-balls (relics of the reduced food-yelk), c nucleated curd (without yelk-granules).

**Fig. 69.**—*Oval gastrula of the opossum (didelphys)*, about eight hours old. (From Selenka) (external view).
study being the ovum of the hare. But as man also belongs to this sub-class, and as his as yet unstudied gastrulation cannot be materially different from that of the other placentals, it merits the closest attention. We have, in the first place, the peculiar feature that the two first segmentation-cells that proceed from the cleavage of the fertilised ovum (Fig. 71) are of different sizes and natures; the difference is sometimes greater, sometimes less (Fig. 72). One of these first daughter-cells of the cytula—or the first two blastomeres—is a little larger, clearer, and more transparent than the other. Further, the smaller cell takes a colour in carmine, osmium, etc., more strongly than the larger. By repeated cleavage of it a morula is formed, and from this a blastula, which changes in a very characteristic way into the greatly modified gastrula. When the number of the segmentation-cells in the mammal embryo has reached ninety-six (in the hare, about seventy hours after impregnation) the foetus assumes a form very like the archigastrula (Fig. 75; cf. Plate II., Fig. 17, in section). The spherical embryo consists of a central mass of thirty-two soft, round cells with dark nuclei, which are flattened into polygonal shape by mutual pressure, and colour dark-brown with osmic acid (Fig. 75 i). This dark central group of cells is surrounded by a lighter spherical membrane, consisting of sixty-four cube-shaped, small, and fine-grained cells which lie close together in a single stratum, and only colour slightly in osmic acid (Fig. 75 e). The authors who regard this embryonic form as the primary gastrula of the placental conceive the outer layer as the ectoderm and the inner as the entoderm.

Fig. 70.—Longitudinal section through the oval gastrula of the opossum (Fig. 69). (From Selenka.) p primitive mouth, e ectoderm, i entoderm, d yolk remains in the primitive gut-cavity (u).
The ectodermic membrane is only interrupted at one spot, one, two, or three of the entodermic cells being loose there. These form the yolk-stopper, and fill up the mouth of the gastrula (a). The central primitive gut-cavity (d) is full of entodermic

![Fig. 71.](image1)

**Fig. 71.** *Stem-cell or ovula of the mammal ovum* (from the hare). k stem-nucleus, n nuclear corpuscle, p protoplasm of the stem-cell, z modified zona pellucida, h outer albuminous membrane, s dead sperm-cells.

**Fig. 72.** *Incipient cleavage of the mammal ovum* (from the hare). The stem-cell has divided into two unequal cells, one lighter (e) and one darker (i). z zona pellucida, h outer albuminous membrane, s dead sperm-cells.

![Fig. 73.](image2)

**Fig. 73.** *The first four segmentation-cells of the mammal ovum* (from the hare). e The two larger (and lighter) cells, i the two smaller (and darker) cells, z zona pellucida, h outer albuminous membrane.

![Fig. 74.](image3)

**Fig. 74.** *Mammal ovum with eight segmentation-cells* (from the hare). e four larger and lighter blastomeres, i four smaller and darker cells, z zona pellucida, h outer albuminous membrane.
cells (Plate II., Fig. 17). The uni-axial type of the mammal gastrula is accentuated in this way. However, opinions still differ considerably as to the real nature of this “provisional gastrula” of the placental and its relation to the blastula into which it is converted.

As the gastrulation proceeds a large spherical blastula is formed from this peculiar solid amphigastrula of the placental, as we saw in the case of the marsupial. The accumulation of fluid in the solid gastrula (Fig. 76 A) leads to the formation of an eccentric cavity, the group of the darker entodermic cells (hy) remaining directly attached at one spot with the globular enveloping stratum of the lighter ectodermic cells (ep). This spot corresponds to the original primitive mouth (prostoma or blastoporus). From this important spot the inner germinal layer spreads all round on the inner surface of the outer layer, the cell-stratum of which forms the wall of the hollow sphere; the extension proceeds from the vegetal towards the animal pole.

The cenogenetic gastrulation of the placental has been greatly modified by secondary adaptation in the various groups of this most advanced and youngest sub-class of the mammals. Thus, for instance, we find in many of the rodents (guinea-pigs, mice, etc.) apparently a temporary inversion of the two germinal layers. This is due to a folding of the blastodermic wall by what is called the “girder,” a plug-shaped growth of Rauber’s “roof-layer.” It is a thin layer of flat epithelial cells, that is freed from the surface of the blastoderm in some of the rodents; it has no more significance in connection with the general course of
placental gastrulation than the conspicuous departure from the usual globular shape in the blastula of some of the ungulates. In some pigs and ruminants it grows into a thread-like, long and thin tube.

Thus the gastrulation of the placentals, which diverges most from that of the amphioxus, the primitive form, is reduced to the original type, the invagination of a modified blastula. Its chief peculiarity is that the folded part of the blastoderm does not form a completely closed (only open at the primitive mouth) blind sac, as is usual; but this blind sac has a wide opening at the ventral curve (opposite to the dorsal mouth); and through this opening the primitive gut communicates from the first with the embryonic cavity of the blastula. The folded crest-shaped entoderm grows with a free circular border on the inner surface of the entoderm towards the vegetal pole; when it has reached this, and the inner surface of the blastula is completely grown over, the primitive gut is closed. This remarkable direct transition of the primitive gut-cavity into the segmentation-cavity is explained simply by the assumption that in most of the mammals the yolk-mass, which is still possessed by the oldest forms of the class (the monotremes) and their ancestors (the reptiles), is atrophied. This proves the essential unity of gastrulation in all the vertebrates, in spite of the striking differences in the various classes.

**Fig. 76.**—Gastrula of the hare. *A* as a solid, spherical cluster of cells, *B* changing into the embryonic vesicle, *bp* primitive mouth, *ep* ectoderm, *hy* entoderm.
In order to complete our consideration of the important processes of segmentation and gastrulation, we will, in conclusion, cast a brief glance at the fourth chief type—superficial segmentation (Plate III., Figs. 25–30). In the vertebrates this form is not found at all. But it plays the chief part in the large stem of the articulatesthe insects, spiders, myriapods, and crabs. The distinctive form of gastrula that comes of it is the “vesicular gastrula” (peri-gastrula, Plate III., Fig. 29).

In the ova which undergo this superficial cleavage the formative yolk is sharply divided from the nutritive yolk, as in the preceding cases of the ova of birds, reptiles, fishes, etc.; the formative yolk alone undergoes cleavage. But while in the telolecithal ova with discoid gastrulation the formative yolk is not in the centre, but at one pole of the uni-axial ovum, and the food-yolk gathered at the other pole, in the ova with superficial cleavage we find the formative yolk spread over the whole surface of the ovum; it encloses spherically the food-yolk, which is accumulated in the middle of the centrolecithal ova. As the segmentation only affects the former and not the latter, it is bound to be entirely “superficial”; the store of food in the middle is quite untouched by it. As a rule, it proceeds in regular geometrical progression (Plate III., Figs. 25–30, illustrates some stages of it in vertical section through the ellipsoid ova of a crab, peneus). The stem-nucleus, or first segmentation-nucleus, which is situated originally in the centre of the stem-cell, divides into two, then four, eight, and finally sixteen nuclei. These travel centrifugally out of the central food-yolk, and distribute themselves at equal distances in the superficial formative yolk (Plate III., Fig. 26). Here they multiply continuously by cleavage (Fig. 27). Finally the whole of the formative yolk divides into a number of small and homogeneous cells, which lie close together in a single stratum on the entire surface of the ovum, and form a superficial blastoderm (Fig. 28 b). This blastoderm is a simple, completely closed vesicle, the internal cavity of which is entirely full of food-yolk. This real blastula (Fig. 28) only
differs from that of the archiblastic ova (Plate II., Fig. 4) in its chemical composition. In the latter the content is water or a watery jelly; in the former it is a thick mixture, rich in food-yelk, of albuminous and fatty substances. As this quantity of food-yelk fills the centre of the ovum before cleavage begins, there is no difference in this respect between the mulberry-embryo and the vesicular embryo. The two stages, morula and blastula, rather agree in this.

When the blastula (Plate III., Fig. 28) is fully formed, we have again in this case the important folding or invagination that determines gastrulation (Fig. 29). At one part of the surface a round, pit-shaped depression appears, and this grows into a cavity—the primitive gut-cavity of the gastrula (Fig. 29 a); the point of invagination forms the primitive mouth (o). The folded part of the blastoderm, the cells of which are enlarged and assume a slender cylindrical shape, forms the gut-layer and encloses the primitive gut-cavity. The superficial part of the blastoderm that is not folded forms the skin-layer; its cells become smaller by repeated cleavage, and are flattened. The space between the skin-layer and the gut-layer (the remainder of the segmentation-cavity) remains full of food-yelk, which is gradually used up. This is the only material difference between our vesicular gastrula (perigastrula, Fig. 29) and the original form of the bell-gastrula (archigastrula, Fig. 6). Clearly the one has been developed from the other in the course of time, owing to the accumulation of food-yelk in the centre of the ovum.\(^1\)

We must count it an important advance that we are thus in a position to reduce all the various embryonic phenomena in the different groups of animals to these four principal forms of segmentation and gastrulation. Of these four forms we must regard one only as the original palingenetic, and the other three as cenogenetic and derivative. Both the unequal, the discoid, and the superficial segmentation have clearly arisen by a secondary adaptation from the primary

\(^1\) On the reduction of all forms of gastrulation (including "delamination") to the original palingenetic form see especially the lucid treatment of the subject in Arnold Lang's *Manual of Comparative Anatomy* (1888), Part I.
segmentation; and the chief cause of their development has been the gradual formation of the food-yolk, and the increasing antithesis between animal and vegetal halves of the ovum, or between ectoderm (skin-layer) and entoderm (gut-layer).

The numbers of careful studies of animal gastrulation that have been made in the last few decades have completely established the views I have expounded, and which I first advanced in the years 1872-76. For a time they were greatly disputed by many embryologists. Some said that the original embryonic form of the metazoa was not the gastrula, but the planula—a double-walled vesicle with closed cavity and without mouth-aperture; the latter was supposed to pierce through gradually. It was afterwards shown that this planula (found in several groups of the cnidaria) was a later evolution from the gastrula. It was also shown that what is called delamination—the rise of the two primary germinal layers by the folding of the surface of the blastoderm (for instance, in the geryonidae and other medusae)—was a secondary formation, due to cenogenetic variations in time, from the original invagination of the blastula. The same may be said of what is called "immigration," in which certain cells or groups of cells are detached from the simple epithelial layer of the blastoderm, and travel into the interior of the blastula; they attach themselves to the inner wall of the blastula, and form a second internal epithelial layer—that is to say, the entoderm. In these and many other controversies of modern embryology the first requisite for clear and natural explanation is a careful and discriminative distinction between palingenetic (hereditary) and cenogenetic (adaptive) processes. If this is properly accomplished, we find evidence everywhere of the biogenetic law.
### FIFTH TABLE

**PHYLOGENY OF VERTEBRATE GASTRULATION**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Discogastrula mbl.</th>
<th>Epigastrula hbl.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Discogastrula mbl. of the sauropsida</td>
<td>of the viviparous mammals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crocodiles</td>
<td>Placentals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birds</td>
<td>Marsupials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lacertilia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discogastrula mbl. of the peromela (coecilia) meroblastic</td>
<td>Discogastrula mbl. of the oviparous mammals (monotremata) meroblastic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discogastrula mbl. of the parasitic cyclostoma (myxinoida)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amphigastrula hbl. of most of the amphibia holoblastic</td>
<td>Amphigastrula hbl. of the oldest fishes (early ganoids)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dipneusta</td>
<td>Early selachii (cèstraciones)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modern ganoids</td>
<td>Early cyclostoma (petromyzoa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discogastrula mbl. of the bony fishes (teleostii)</td>
<td>Archigastrula hbl. of the acrania (amphioxus)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**N.B.**

- **Hbl.** = holoblastic, with total cleavage.
- **Mbl.** = meroblastic, with partial cleavage.
## SYNOPSIS OF THE FOUR DIFFERENT FORMS OF GASTRULATION OF THE VERTEBRATES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Four Chief Stages of Gastrulation</th>
<th>Manner of Segmentation</th>
<th>Classes and Orders</th>
<th>Typical Genera or Groups</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I. First stage of gastrulation:</strong></td>
<td><strong>Segmentation total, equal or unequal.</strong></td>
<td><strong>1. Acrania.</strong></td>
<td><strong>1. Amphioxus.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Archigastrula (bell-gastrula).</td>
<td><strong>Archigastrula.</strong></td>
<td>a) Prospodylia.</td>
<td>Lancelet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary form of the gastrula.</td>
<td>Ova very small, without separate food-yolk.</td>
<td>b) Leptocardia.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primitive gut empty.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>II. Second stage of gastrulation:</strong></td>
<td><strong>Segmentation total, unequal.</strong></td>
<td><strong>2. The older cyclostoma, Cyclostoma hyperotreta.</strong></td>
<td><strong>2. Petromyzontes.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary form of the gastrula.</td>
<td>Ova small, with moderate food-yolk, telolecithal.</td>
<td>b) Ganoidei.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primitive gut full of segmented food-yolk.</td>
<td></td>
<td>c) Dipneusti.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>III. Third stage of gastrulation:</strong></td>
<td><strong>Segmentation partial, discoid.</strong></td>
<td><strong>5. The parasitic cyclostoma, Cyclostoma hyperotreta.</strong></td>
<td><strong>5. Myxinoides.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discogastrula.</td>
<td><strong>Discogastrula.</strong></td>
<td>a) Proselachii.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tertiary form of the gastrula.</td>
<td>Ova very large, with plenty of food-yolk, telolecithal.</td>
<td>b) Ganoidei.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The embryo forms a flat or lens-shaped disk which lies above at the animal pole of the axis of the ovum.</td>
<td>The greater part of the food-yolk is not segmented, and is gradually absorbed.</td>
<td>c) Dipneusti.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primitive gut with large yolk-sac, which projects outside the body.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IV. Fourth stage of gastrulation:</strong></td>
<td><strong>Segmentation total, unequal.</strong></td>
<td><strong>10. Mammalia.</strong></td>
<td><strong>10a. Marsupalia.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epigastrula (mammal-gastrula).</td>
<td><strong>Epigastrula.</strong></td>
<td>All living mammals, except the monotremes.</td>
<td><strong>10b. Placentalia.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quaternary form of the gastrula.</td>
<td>Ova small, with atrophied food-yolk.</td>
<td>(All vivipara.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primitive gut with small yolk-vesicle.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER X.

THE CŒLOM THEORY

Number of the germinal layers in animals. Two-layered and three-layered animals (cœlentería). Four-layered animals, with two limiting layers and two central layers (cœlomaria). Gut-cavity and body-cavity. Nature of the four secondary germinal layers, Theories of their origin (folding and cleavage). Older theories of Baer and Remak. Hertwig’s cœlom theory: formation of the body-cavity, primarily by folding, secondarily by cleavage. Approach of the two cœlom-pouches from the primitive mouth. Cœlomation of sagitta and amphioxus. Palingenetic and cenogenetic cœlomation. Parietal layer (skin-fibre layer) and visceral layer (gut-fibre layer). Cœlomula and chordula. Corresponding stem-forms: cœlomæa and chordæa. Separation of the chorda from the dorsal wall of the primitive gut (between the two cœlom-pouches). Empty and full pouches. The cœlom-pouches of the bilaterals were originally sexual glands. Their ventral coalescence. Dorsal mesentery. Cenogenetic cœlomation of the amphibia and amniotes. The primitive mouth of the amniote embryo becomes the primitive groove. The border of the primitive mouth (properistoma) as vegetation-point or source of embryonic development (blastocrene). The four-layered cœlomula of the reptiles, birds, and mammals.

The two blastophylls or “primary germinal layers” which the gastræa theory has shown to be the first foundation in the construction of the body are found in this simplest form throughout life only in cœlenteria of the lowest grade—in the gastrœæads, olynthus (the stem-form of the sponges), hydra, and cognate very simple cnidaria. In all the other animals new strata of cells are formed subsequently between these two primary body-layers, and these are generally comprehended under the title of the middle layer, or mesoderm. As a rule, the various products of this middle layer afterwards constitute the great bulk of the animal frame, while the

original entoderm, or internal germinal layer, is restricted to
the clothing of the alimentary canal and its glandular appendages; and, on the other hand, the ectoderm, or external
germinal layer, furnishes the outer clothing of the body, the
skin and nervous system.

In some large groups of the lower animals the middle
germinallayerremainsasingleconnectedmass;thesehave
been called the three-layered metazoa, in opposition to the
two-layered gastræads and hydroids. To this category
belong, for instance, most of the sponges and the corals or
anthozoa. The greater part of the body in these animals
consists of mesodermal supporting tissue and skeletal struc-
tures embedded therein; the entodermal epithelium confines
itself to clothing the alimentary gastro-canal system, the
ectodermal epithelium to the cell-covering of the outer skin.
In the platodes also (the spiral, suckorial, and tape worms)
the greater part of the body belongs genetically to a unified
“middle layer,” which has been developed between the two
primary germinal layers of the gastrula.

All these three-layered animals (triptoblastica), like the
two-layered coelenteria (diploblastica), have no body-cavity—
that is to say, no cavity distinct from the alimentary system;
hence, they are also called acelomia. On the other hand,
all the higher animals have this real body-cavity (cæloma),
and so are called cælomaria. In all these we can distinguish
four secondary germinal layers, which develop from the two
primary layers; hence, the cælomaria may also be contrasted
with the coelenteria as four-layered metazoa (tetrablastica).
To this category belong all true vermalia (excepting the
platodes), and also the higher typical animal stems that have
been evolved from them—molluses, echinoderms, articulates,
tunicates, and vertebrates.

The body-cavity (cæloma) is therefore a new acquisition
of the animal body, much younger phylogenetically than the
alimentary system, and of great importance both morphologi-
cally and physiologically. I first pointed out this funda-
mental significance of the cælom in my monograph on the
sponges (1872), in the section which draws a distinction
between the body-cavity and the gut-cavity, and which follows immediately on the germ-layer theory and the ancestral tree of the animal kingdom (the first sketch of the gastraea theory). Up to that time these two principal cavities of the animal body had been confused, or very imperfectly distinguished; chiefly because Leuckart, the founder of the ccelenterata group (1848), has attributed a body-cavity, but not a gut-cavity, to these lowest metazoa. In reality, the truth is just the other way about.

The ventral cavity, the original organ of nutrition in the multicellular animal-body, is the oldest and most important organ of all the metazoa, and, together with the primitive mouth, is formed in every case in the gastrula as the primitive gut; it is only at a much later stage that the body-cavity, which is entirely wanting in the ccelenterata, is developed in some of the metazoa between the ventral and the body wall. The two cavities are entirely different in content and purport. The alimentary cavity (enteron) serves the purpose of digestion; it contains water and food taken from without, as well as the pulp (chymus) formed from this by digestion. On the other hand, the body-cavity, quite distinct from the gut and closed externally, has nothing to do with digestion; it encloses the gut itself and its glandular appendages, and also contains the sexual products and a certain amount of blood or lymph, a fluid that is transuded through the ventral wall.

As soon as the body-cavity appears, the ventral wall is found to be separated from the enclosing body-wall, and the two continue to be directly connected at various points. We can also then always distinguish a number of different layers of tissue in both walls—at least two in each. These tissue-layers are formed originally from four different simple cell-layers, which are the much-discussed four secondary germinal layers. The outermost of these, the skin-sense-layer (Figs. 77, 78 hs), and the innermost, the gut-gland-layer (dd), remain at first simple epithelia or covering-layers. The one limits the outer surface of the body, the other the inner surface of the ventral wall; hence they are
called limiting-layers, or *methoria*. Between them are the two middle layers, or mesoblasts, which enclose the body-cavity.

The four secondary germinal layers are so distributed in the structure of the body in all the ccelomaria (or all metazoa that have a body-cavity) that the outer two, joined fast together, constitute the body-wall, and the inner two the ventral wall; the two walls are separated by the cavity of the ccelom. Each of the walls is made up of a limiting layer and a middle layer. The two limiting layers chiefly give rise to epithelia, or covering-tissues, and glands and nerves, while the middle layers form the great bulk of the fibrous tissue, muscles, and connective matter. Hence the latter have also been called fibrous or muscular layers. The outer middle layer, which lies on the inner side of the skin-sense-layer, is the skin fibre-layer; the inner middle layer, which attatches from without to the ventral glandular-layer, is the ventral fibre-layer. The former is usually called briefly the parietal, and the latter the visceral layer, or mesoderm. Of the many different names that have been given to the four secondary germinal layers, the following are those most in use to-day:

---

*Fig. 77.*

**Diagram of the four secondary germinal layers,** transverse section through the metazoic embryo: Fig. 77 of an annelid, Fig. 78 of a vermale. *a* primitive gut, *dd* ventral glandular layer, *df* ventral fibre-layer, *hm* skin-fibre-layer, *hs* skin-sense-layer, *n* traces of the rudimentary kidneys, *u* trace of the nerve-plates.

---
THE COELOM THEORY

1. Skin-sense-layer (outer limiting layer).
2. Skin-fibre-layer (outer middle layer).

I. Neural layer (neuroblast).
II. Parietal layer (myoblast).
III. Visceral layer (gonoblast).
IV. Enteral layer (enteroblast).

The two secondary germinal layers of the body-wall (somatopleura):
I. Epithelial.
II. Fibrous.

The two secondary germinal layers of the gut-wall (splanchnopleura):
III. Fibrous.
IV. Epithelial.

The first scientist to recognise and clearly distinguish the four secondary germinal layers was Baer. It is true that he was not quite clear as to their origin and further significance, and made several mistakes in detail in explaining them. But, on the whole, their great importance did not escape him, and he advanced the view as to the origin of the two middle layers which was afterwards adopted by most embryologists, and which I gave in the first edition of the Anthropogeny.

He derives each of the middle layers separately from a primary germinal layer (by cleavage), and says that the outer or animal layer divides into two folds (a skin-layer and a muscle-layer), and the inner or vegetative layer into two also (a vascular and a mucous layer). As compared with the more recent and usual terminology, Baer's opinion may be put as follows:

A. The two primary germinal layers (blastophylla).
I. Outer or animal germinal layer (skin-layer or ectoderm).
II. Inner or vegetative germinal layer (gut-layer or ectoderm).

B. The four secondary germinal layers (blastoplatie).
1. Skin-sense-layer (Baer's skin-layer). Neural limiting layer.
2. Skin-fibre-layer (Baer's muscle-layer). Parietal middle layer.

This opinion of Baer's, which had a good deal of probability in respect of the physiological division of labour among the germinal layers, had to be given up later on in consequence of more accurate observations. Remak had stated, in
1850, in the first part of his distinguished "Studies of Vertebrate Development," that in the two-layered germinal disk of the new-laid hen's egg (our disco gastrula) a few hours after incubation the lower germinal layer divides into two—a middle germinal layer and a glandular layer. Subsequently the middle germinal layer, or fibrous layer, had to split up again into two—an inner gut-fibre layer and an outer skin-fibre layer. The relation of Remak's "three-layer theory" to Baer's original "four-layer theory" may be expressed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Remak's three germinal layers (three-layer theory)</th>
<th>The four secondary germinal layers (Blastoplates)</th>
<th>The two primary germinal layers of Baer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Outer or upper layer</td>
<td>1. Outer (or upper) germinal layer (sensory layer)</td>
<td>1. Skin-sense-layer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Middle germinal layer (motor-germinative layer)</td>
<td>2. Skin-fibre-layer</td>
<td>2. Animal layer, Ectoderm, Skin-layer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inner or lower layer</td>
<td>4. Gut-gland-layer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remak's theory of the germinal layers, in the following-up of which this distinguished observer made some very important discoveries, soon met with approval, especially as it was the first clear recognition of the constituent elementary parts of the germinal layers, and the first provision of an historical foundation for ontogeny by an application of the cell theory. The assumption that the secondary germinal layers arise from the primary by the cleavage of surfaces—in which Baer and Remak agree—was admitted by embryologists who dissented on other points—Kölliker, for instance, who holds that "in the higher vertebrates the middle germinal layer originates from the outer." These generally-accepted theories of cleavage began to give way thirty years ago, when Kowalevsky (1871) showed that in the case of sia tuta (a very clear and typical subject of gastrulation) the two middle germinal layers and the two limiting layers arise not by cleavage, but by folding—a secondary invagination of the primary inner germ-layer. This invagination proceeds from
the primitive mouth, at the two sides of which (right and left) a couple of pouches are formed. As these coelom-pouches or coelom-sacs detach themselves from the primitive gut, a double body-cavity is formed (Figs. 77-9).

The same kind of coelom-formation as in sagitta was afterwards found by Kowalevsky in brachiopods and other invertebrates, and in the lowest vertebrate—the amphioxus. Further instances were discovered by two English embryologists, to whom we owe very considerable advance in ontogeny—E. Ray-Lankester and F. Balfour. On the strength of these and other studies, as well as most extensive research of their own, the brothers Oscar and Richard Hertwig constructed in 1881 the Coelom Theory: An Attempt to Explain the Middle Germinal Layer. In order to appreciate fully the great merit of this illuminating and helpful theory one must remember what a chaos of contradictory views was then represented by the "problem of the mesoderm," or the much-disputed "question of the origin of the middle germinal layer." In particular the curious "parablast theory" of the Leipzig embryologist, His, based on the most perverse assumptions, had caused a frightful confusion; not only all possible, but a good many impossible, ideas as to the origin of the secondary germinal layers, the development of the tissues from them, and the building-up of the animal body, were then seriously and dogmatically discussed (cf. Chapter III., p. 49). The coelom theory of the brothers Hertwig brought some light and order into this infinite confusion by establishing the following points: 1. The body-cavity originates in the great majority of animals (especially in all the vertebrates) in the same way as in sagitta; a couple of pouches or saes are formed by folding inwards at the primitive mouth, between the two primary germinal layers; as these pouches detach from the primitive gut, a pair of coelom-sacs (right and left) are formed; the coalescence of these produces a simple body-cavity (enterocoe). 2. When these coelom-embryos develop, not as a pair of hollow pouches, but as solid layers of cells (in the shape of a pair of mesodermal streaks)—as happens in the higher
vertebrates—we have a secondary (eenogenetic) modification of the primary (palingenetic) structure; the two walls of the pouches, inner and outer, are pressed together by the expansion of the large food-yolk. 3. Hence the mesoderm consists from the first of two genetically distinct layers, which do not originate by the cleavage of a primary simple middle layer (as Remak supposed). 4. These two middle layers have, in all vertebrates, and the great majority of the invertebrates, the same radical significance for the construction of the animal body; the inner middle layer, or the visceral mesoderm (gut-fibre-layer), attaches itself to the original entoderm, and forms the fibrous, muscular, and connective part of the visceral wall (splanchnopleura); the outer middle layer, or the parietal mesoderm (skin-fibre-layer), attaches itself to the original ectoderm, and forms the fibrous, muscular, and connective part of the body-wall (somato-pleura). 5. It is only at the point of origination, the primitive mouth and its vicinity, that the four secondary germinal layers are directly connected; from this point the two middle layers advance forward separately between the two primary germinal layers, to which they severally attach themselves. 6. The further separation or differentiation of the four secondary germinal layers and their division into the various tissues and organs take place especially in the later fore-part or head of the embryo, and extend backwards from there towards the primitive mouth.

All animals in which the body-cavity demonstrably arises in this way from the primitive gut (vertebrates, tunicates, echinoderms, articulates, and a part of the vermalia) were comprised by the Hertwigs under the title of enterocæla, and were contrasted with the other groups of the pseudocæla (with false body-cavity) and the céleterata (with no body-cavity). Among the pseudocæla they counted the mollusces and a part of the vermalia (plathelminthia, bryozoa, and rotatoria). In these cases the body-cavity either represented a relic of the segmentation-cavity (blastocæl) or arose secondarily by cleavage or the formation of holes in a solid mesoderm (schizocæl). However, this radical distinction and the views
as to classification which it occasioned have been shown to be untenable. Further, the absolute differences in tissue-formation which the Hertwigs set up between the enterocœla and pseudocœla cannot be sustained in this connection. For these and other reasons their coelom-theory has been much criticised and partly abandoned. Nevertheless, it has rendered a great and lasting service in the solution of the difficult problem of the mesoderm, and a material part of it will certainly be retained. I consider it an especial merit of the theory that it has established the similarity of the development of the two middle layers in all the vertebrates, and has traced them as cenogenetic modifications back to the original palingenetic form of development that we still find in the amphioxus. Carl Rabl comes to the same conclusion in his able Theory of the Mesoderm, and so do Ray-Lankester, Rauber, Kupffer, Rükert, Selenka, Hatschek, and others. There is a general agreement in these and many other recent writers that all the different forms of coelom-construction, like those of gastrulation, follow one and the same strict hereditary law in the vast vertebrate stem; in spite of their apparent differences, they are all only cenogenetic modifications of one palingenetic type, and this original type has been preserved for us down to the present day by the invaluable amphioxus.

But before we go into the regular coelomation of the amphioxus, we will glance at that of the arrow-worm (sagitta), the remarkable pelagic worm that is interesting in so many ways for comparative anatomy and ontogeny. On the one hand, the transparency of the clear body and its embryo, and, on the other hand, the typical simplicity of its palingenetic development, make the sagitta a most instructive object in connection with various problems. The class of the chaetognatha, which is only represented by the cognate genera of sagitta and spadella, is in another respect also a most remarkable branch of the extensive worm-stem. It was therefore very gratifying that Oscar Hertwig (1880) fully explained the anatomy, classification, and evolution of the chaetognatha in his careful monograph.
The spherical blastula that arises from the impregnated ovum of the sagitta is converted by uni-polar folding into a typical archigastrula, entirely similar to that of the monoxenia which I described (Chapter VIII., Fig. 31). This oval, uni-axial cup-larva (circular in section) becomes bilateral (or tri-axial) by the growth of a couple of cœlum-pouches from the primitive gut (Figs. 79, 80). To the right and left a sac-shaped fold appears towards the oral pole (where the permanent mouth, \( m \), afterwards arises). The two sacs are at first separated by a couple of folds of the entoderm (Fig. 79 \( pv \)), and are still connected with the primitive gut by wide apertures; they also communicate for a short time with the dorsal side (Fig. 80 \( d \)). Soon, however, the cœlom-pouches completely separate from each other and from the primitive gut; at the same time they enlarge so much that they close round the primitive gut (Fig. 81). But in the middle line of the dorsal and ventral sides the pouches remain separated, their approaching walls joining here to form a thin vertical partition, the mesentery (\( dm \) and \( vm \)). Thus sagitta has throughout life a double body-cavity (Fig. 81 \( lh \)), and the gut is fastened to the body-wall both

---

**Fig. 79.**

*Coelomula of sagitta* (gastrula with a couple of cœlum-pouches). (From Kowalevsky.) \( blp \) primitive mouth, \( al \) primitive gut, \( pv \) cœlom-folds, \( m \) permanent mouth.

**Fig. 80.** *Coelomula of sagitta*, in section. (From Hertwig.) \( D \) dorsal side, \( l^v \) ventral side, \( ik \) inner germinal layer, \( mv \) visceral mesoblast, \( lh \) body-cavity, \( mp \) parietal mesoblast, \( ak \) outer germinal layer.
above and below by a mesentery—below by the ventral mesentery \((vm)\), and above by the dorsal mesentery \((dm)\). The inner layer of the two cælom-pouches (visceral mesoblast, \(mv\)) attaches itself to the entoderm \((ik)\), and forms with it the visceral wall. The outer layer (parietal mesoblast, \(mp\)) attaches itself to the ectoderm \((ak)\), and forms with it the outer body wall. Thus we have in \(sagitta\) a perfectly clear and simple illustration of the original cælomation of the enterocœla. This palingenetic fact is the more important, as the greater part of the two body-cavities in \(sagitta\) changes afterwards into sexual glands—the fore or female part into a pair of ovaries, and the hind or male part into a pair of testicles.

Coelomation takes place with equal clearness and transparency in the case of the amphioxus, the lowest vertebrate, and its nearest relatives, the invertebrate tunicates, the ascidia. However, in these two stems, which we class together as \(chordonia\), this important process is more complex as two other processes are associated with it—the development of the chorda from the entoderm and the separation of the medullary plate or nervous centre from the ectoderm. Here again the skull-less amphioxus has preserved to our own time by tenacious heredity the chief phenomena in their original form, while it has been more or less modified by embryonic adaptation in all the other vertebrates (with skulls). Hence we must once more thoroughly understand the palingenetic embryonic features of the lancelet before we go on to consider the cenogenetic forms of the craniota.

The cælomation of the amphioxus, which was first observed by Kowalevsky in 1867, has been very carefully studied since by Hatschek (1881). According to him, there are first formed on the bilateral gastrula we have already
considered (Figs. 40, 41) three parallel longitudinal folds—one single ectodermal fold in the central line of the dorsal surface, and a pair of entodermic folds at the two sides of the former. The broad ectodermal fold that first appears in the medium line of the flattened dorsal surface, and forms a shallow longitudinal groove, is the beginning of the central nervous system, the medullary tube. Thus the primary outer germinal layer divides into two parts, the medium medullary plate (Fig. 84 mp) and the horn-plate (ak), the beginning of the outer skin or epidermis. As the parallel borders of the concave medullary plate fold towards each other and grow underneath the horn-plate, a cylindrical tube is formed, the medullary tube (Fig. 85 nh); this quickly detaches itself altogether from the horn-plate. At each side of the medullary tube, between it and the alimentary tube (Figs. 82–85 dh), the two parallel longitudinal folds grow out of the dorsal wall of the alimentary tube, and these form the two cælom-pouches (Figs. 83 and 84 lh). This part of the entoderm, which thus represents the first structure of the middle germinal layer, is shown darker than the rest of the inner germinal layer in Figs. 82–85. The place of the double mesodermic fold is indicated in Fig. 83 with asterisks.
The basal edges of the curved folds grow together at these points, and form closed pouches (Fig. 84 in transverse section). The hindermost part of the two parallel mesodermic folds attaches originally to the border of the primitive mouth, and is connected there with the two large "primitive mesodermic cells" or "promesoblasts," which we have considered previously (Fig. 41 p). The embryonic structures that develop from the latter may be called, with Rabl, peristomal mesoblasts, in opposition to the structures of the former, the gastral mesoblasts.

During this interesting process the outline of a third very important organ, the chorda or axial rod, is being formed between the two cœlom-pouches. This first foundation of the skeleton, a solid cylindrical cartilaginous rod, is formed in the median line of the dorsal primitive gut-wall, from the entodermal cell-streak that remains here between the two cœlom-pouches (Figs. 82–85 ch). The chorda appears at first in the shape of a flat longitudinal fold or a shallow groove (Figs. 83, 84); it does not become a solid cylindrical cord until after separation from the primitive gut (Fig. 85). Hence we might say that the dorsal wall of the primitive gut forms three parallel longitudinal folds at this important period—one single and a pair of folds. The single medium longitudinal fold becomes the chorda, and lies immediately

---

**Fig. 84.**

Transverse section of amphioxus embryo. Fig. 84 at the stage with five somites. Fig. 85 at the stage with eleven somites. (From Hutschek.) ak outer germinal layer, mp medullary plate, n nerve-tube, ik inner germinal layer, dh visceral cavity, lh body-cavity, mk middle germinal layer (mk₁ parietal, mk₂ visceral), us primitive segment, ch chorda.
below the middle longitudinal groove of the ectoderm, which becomes the medullary tube; the pair of longitudinal folds, right and left, lie at the sides between the former and the latter, and form the coelom-pouches. The part of the primitive gut that remains after the cutting off of these three dorsal primitive organs is the permanent gut (enteron or mesodaeum); its entoderm is the gut-gland-layer or enteric layer (enteroblast).

I give the name of chordula or chordalarva to the embryonic stage of the vertebrate organism which is represented by the amphioxus larva at this period (Figs. 86, 87, in the third period of development according to Hatschek). (Strabo and Plinius give the name of cordula or cordyla to young fish larvae.) I ascribe the utmost phylogenetic significance to it, as it is found in all the chordonia (tunicates as well as vertebrates) in essentially the same form. Although the construction of the large food-yolk greatly modifies the form of the chordula in the higher vertebrates, it remains the same in its main features throughout. In all cases the nerve-tube \( m \) lies on the dorsal side of the bilateral, worm-like body, the visceral tube \( d \) on the ventral side, the chorda \( ch \) between the two, on the long axis, and the coelom-pouches \( c \) at each side. In every case these primitive organs develop in the same way from the germinal layers, and the same organs always arise from them in the mature chorda-animal. Hence we may conclude, according to the laws of heredity of the theory of descent, that all these chordonia or chordata (tunicates and vertebrates) descend from an ancient common ancestral form, which we may call chordaea. We should regard this long-extinct chordaea, if it were still in existence, as a special class of unarticulated worm (chordaria). It is especially noteworthy that neither the dorsal nerve-tube nor the ventral gut-tube, nor even the chorda that lies between them, shows any trace of articulation or metamera-formation; even the two coelom-sacs are not segmented at first (though in the amphioxus they quickly divide into a series of somites by transverse folding). These ontogenetic facts are of the greatest importance for the
purpose of learning those ancestral forms of the vertebrates which we have to seek in the group of the unarticulated vermalia. The coelom-pouches were originally sexual glands in these ancient chordonia.

From the phylogenetic point of view the coelom-pouches...
are, in any case, older than the chorda; since they also develop in the same way as in the chordonia in a number of invertebrates which have no chorda (for instance, sagitta, Figs. 79-81). Moreover, in the amphioxus the first outline of the chorda appears later than that of the ccelom-sacs. Hence we must, according to the biogenetic law, postulate a special intermediate form between the gastrula and the chordula, which we will call ccelomula, an unarticulated, worm-like body with primitive gut, primitive mouth, and a double body-cavity, but no chorda. This embryonic form, the bilateral ccelomula (Fig. 84), may in turn be regarded as the ontogenetic reproduction (maintained by heredity) of an ancient ancestral form of the ccelomaria, the ccelomae (cf. Chapter XX.).

In sagitta and other helmintha the two ccelom-pouches (presumably the gonades or sex-glands of the ccelomae) are separated by a complete median partition, the dorsal and ventral mesentery (Fig. 81 dm and vm); but in the vertebrates only the upper part of this vertical partition is maintained, and forms the dorsal mesentery. This mesentery afterwards takes the form of a thin membrane, which fastens the visceral tube to the chorda (or the vertebral column). At the under side of the visceral tube the ccelom-sacs blend together, their inner or median walls breaking down and disappearing. The body-cavity then forms a single simple hollow, in which the gut is quite free, or only attached to the dorsal wall by means of the mesentery (cf. Plate IV., Fig. 5).

The development of the body-cavity and the formation of the chordula in the higher vertebrates is, like that of the gastrula, chiefly modified by the pressure of the food-yolk on the embryonic structures, which forces its hinder part into a discoid expansion. These cenogenetic modifications seem to be so great that until twenty years ago these important processes were totally misunderstood. It was generally believed that the body-cavity in man and the higher vertebrates was due to the division of a simple middle layer, and that the latter arose by cleavage from one or both of the primary germinal layers. The truth was brought to
light at last by the comparative embryological research of the Hertwigs. They showed in their *Coelom Theory* (1881) that all vertebrates are true enterocæla, and that in every case a pair of coelom-pouches are developed from the primitive gut by folding. The cenogenetic chordula-forms of the craniotes must therefore be derived in the same way from the palingenetic embryology of the amphioxus, as I had previously proved for their gastrula-forms.

The chief difference between the coelomation of the acrania (*amphioxus*) and the other vertebrates (craniotes) is that the two coelom-folds of the primitive gut in the former are from the first hollow vesicles, filled with fluid, but in the latter are empty pouches, the layers of which (inner and outer) close with each other. In common parlance we still call a pouch or pocket by that name, whether it is full or empty. It is different in ontogeny; in embryological literature ordinary logic does not count for very much. In many of the manuals and large treatises on this science it is proved that vesicles, pouches, or sacs deserve that name only when they are inflated and filled with a clear fluid. When they are not so filled (for instance, when the primitive gut of the gastrula is filled with yolk, or when the walls of the empty coelom-pouches are pressed together), these vesicles must not be cavities any longer, but "solid structures."

The evolution of the large food-yolk in the ventral wall of the primitive gut (Figs. 88, 89) is the simple cenogenetic cause that converts the sac-shaped coelom-pouches of the acrania into the leaf-shaped coelom-streaks of the craniotes. To convince ourselves of this we need only compare, with Hertwig, the palingenetic coelomula of the amphioxus (Figs. 83, 84) with the corresponding cenogenetic form of the amphibia (Figs. 92–94), and construct the simple diagram that connects the two (Figs. 90, 91). If we imagine the ventral half of the primitive gut-wall in the amphioxus embryo (Figs. 82–87) distended with food-yolk, the vesicular coelom-pouches (*lh*) must be pressed together by this, and forced to extend in the shape of a thin double plate between
THE COELOM THEORY

the gut-wall and body-wall (Figs. 89, 90). This expansion follows a downward and forward direction. They are not directly connected with these two walls. The real unbroken connection between the two middle layers and the primary germ-layers is found right at the back, in the region of the primitive mouth (Fig. 90 a). At this important spot we have the source of embryonic development (blastocrene), or "zone of growth," from which the coelomation (and also the gastrulation) originally proceeds.

Hertwig even succeeded in showing, in the coelomula-embryo of the water salamander (triton), between the first

structures of the two middle layers, the relic of the body-cavity, which is represented in the diagrammatic transitional form (Figs. 90, 91). In sections both through the primitive mouth itself (Fig. 92) and in front of it (Fig. 93) the two middle layers (pb and vb) diverge from each other, and disclose the two body-cavities as narrow clefts. At the primitive mouth itself (Fig. 93 a) we can penetrate into them from without. It is only here at the border of the primitive mouth that we can show the direct transition of the two middle layers into the two limiting layers or primary germinal layers.

---

**Diagrammatic vertical section of coelomula-embryos of vertebrates.** (From Hertwig.) Fig. 90, vertical section through the primitive mouth. Fig. 91, vertical section before the primitive mouth. u primitive mouth, ud primitive gut, ak yolk, dk yolk-nuclei, dh gut-cavity, lh body-cavity, mp medullary plate, ch chorda plate, ak and ik outer and inner germinal layers, pb parietal and vb visceral mesoblast.
The structure of the chorda also shows the same features in these cælomula-embryos of the amphibia (Fig. 94) as in the amphioxus (Figs. 82–85). It arises from the entodermic cell-streak, which forms the middle dorsal line of the primitive gut, and occupies the space between the flat cælom-pouches (Fig. 94 A). While the nervous centre is formed here in the median line of the back and separated from the ectoderm as "medullary tube," there takes place at the same time, directly underneath, the severance of the chorda from the entoderm (Fig. 94, A, B, C). Under the chorda is formed (out of the ventral entodermic half of the gastrula) the permanent gut or visceral cavity (enteron) (Fig. 94, B, dh). This is done by the coalescence, under the chorda in the median line, of the two dorsal side-borders of the gut-gland-layer (ik), which were previously separated by the chorda-plate (Fig. 94, A, ch); these now alone form the clothing of the visceral cavity (dh) (enteroderm, Fig. 94, C). All these important modifications take place at first in the fore or head-part of the embryo, and spread backwards from there; here at the hinder end, the region of the primitive mouth, the important border of the mouth (or properistoma).
remains for a long time the source of development (*blasto-
crene*), or the zone of fresh construction, in the further 
building-up of the organism.

One has only to compare carefully the illustrations given 
(Figs. 88–94) to see that, as a fact, the cenogenetic coelomation 
of the amphibia can be deduced directly from the palingenetic

---

**Fig. 94 A, B, C.** — *Vertical section of the dorsal part of three triton-
embryos.* (From Hertwig.) In Fig. A the medullary swellings (the parallel 
borders of the medullary plate) begin to rise; in Fig. B they grow towards 
each other; in Fig. C they join and form the medullary tube. *mp* medullary 
plate, *mf* medullary folds, *n* nerve-tube, *ch* chorda, *lh* body-cavity, *mk₁* and *mk₂* 
parietal and visceral mesoblasts, *uw* primitive-segment cavities, *ak* ectoderm, 
*ik* endoderm, *dz* yolk-cells, *dh* gut-cavity.
form of the acrania (Figs. 82–87). Hence Hertwig was quite right in formulating the following important thesis on the basis of this comparison: "The closing of the permanent gut at the dorsal side, the severance of the two body-sacs from the inner germinal layer, and the rise of the *chorda dorsalis*, are processes with the most intimate relations to each other, both in the amphibia and the amphioxus. Here also the severance of the said parts begins at the head-extremity of the embryo, and proceeds slowly backwards, where for a long time a zone of new formation remains, by means of which the longitudinal growth of the body is effected."

The same principle holds good for the amniotes, the three higher classes of vertebrates, although in this case the processes of *œlomation* are more modified and more difficult to identify on account of the colossal accumulation of food-yolk and the corresponding notable flattening of the germinal disk. However, as the whole group of the amniotes has been developed at a comparatively late date from the class of the amphibia, their *œlomation* must also be directly traceable to that of the latter. This is really possible as a matter of fact; even the older and more objective illustrations showed an essential identity of features. Thus forty years ago Kölliker gave, in the first edition of his *Evolution of Man* (1861), some sections of the chicken-embryo, the features of which could at once be reduced to those already described and explained in the sense of Hertwig's *œlom-theory*. A section through the embryo of the hatched hen's egg towards the close of the first day of incubation shows in the middle

---

**Fig. 95.—Transverse section of the chordula-embryo of a bird** (from a hen's egg at the close of the first day of incubation). (From Kölliker.)
- *h* horn-plate (ectoderm), *m* medullary plate, *Rf* dorsal folds of same, *Pr* medullary furrow, *ch* chorda, *vwp* median (inner) part of the middle layer (median wall of the *œlom-pouches*), *sp* lateral (outer) part of same, or lateral plates, *mwh* structure of the body-cavity, *dd* gut-gland-layer.
of the dorsal surface a broad ectodermic medullary groove (Fig. 95, R f), and underneath the middle of the chorda (ch) and at each side of it a couple of broad mesodermic layers (sp). These enclose a narrow space or cleft (wch), which is nothing else than the structure of the body-cavity. The two layers that enclose it—the upper parietal layer (hpl) and the lower visceral layer (df)—are pressed together from without, but clearly distinguishable. This is even clearer a little later, when the medullary furrow is closed into the nerve-tube (Fig. 96 mr). Here the mesoderm has divided into two sections by a longitudinal fold, an inner (median) primitive-segment plate (wv) and an outer (lateral) plate; the narrow coelom-cleft may be seen both in the former (wch) and the latter (mp). It afterwards enlarges into

the secondary body-cavity, the parietal skin-fibre-layer (hpl) and the visceral gut-fibre-layer (df) blending together.

In this special importance attaches to the fact that here again the four secondary germinal layers are already sharply distinct, and easily separated from each other. There is only one very restricted area in which they are connected, and actually pass into each other; this is the region of the primitive mouth, which is contracted in the amniotes into a dorsal longitudinal cleft, the primitive groove. Its two lateral lip-borders form the primitive streak, which has long been recognised as the most important embryonic source and starting-point of further processes (Remak’s “axial plate”). Sections through this primitive streak (Figs. 97 and 98) show that the two primary germinal layers grow at an early stage

Fig. 96.—Transverse section of the vertebrate-embryo of a bird (from a hen’s egg on the second day of incubation). (From Külliker.) ch horn-plate, mr medullary tube, ch chorda, wv primitive segments, wch primitive segment cavity (median relic of the coelom), sp lateral coelom-cleft, hpl skin-fibre-layer, df gut-fibre-layer, ung primitive-kidney passage, ao primitive aorta, dd gut-gland-layer.
(in the discogastrula of the chick, a few hours after incubation) into the primitive streak (x), and that the two middle layers extend outward from this thickened axial plate (y) to the right and left between the former. The plates of the ccelom-layers, the parietal skin-fibre-layer (m) and the visceral gut-fibre-layer (f), are seen to be still pressed close together, and only diverge later to form the body-cavity. Between the inner (median) borders of the two flat ccelom-pouches lies the chorda (Fig. 98, x), which here again develops from the middle line of the dorsal wall of the primitive gut.

Ccelomation takes place in the vertebrates in just the same way as in the birds and reptiles. This was to be expected, as the characteristic gastrulation of the mammal has descended phylogenetically from that of the reptiles. In both cases a discogastrula with primitive streak arises from the segmented ovum, a two-layered germinal disk with long and small hinder primitive mouth. Here again the two primary germinal layers are only directly connected (Fig. 99 pr) along the primitive streak (at the invagination-point of the blastula), and from this spot (from the properistoma or border of the primitive mouth) the middle
germinal layers \((mk)\) grow out to right and left between the preceding. In the fine illustration of the cœlomula of the hare which Van Beneden has given us (Fig. 99) one can clearly see that each of the four secondary germinal layers consists of a single stratum of cells.

Finally, we must point out, as a fact of the utmost importance for our anthropogeny and of great general interest, that the four-layered cœlomula of man has just the same construction as that of the hare (Fig. 99). A vertical section that Count Spee made through the primitive mouth or streak of a very young human germinal disk (Fig. 100) clearly shows that here again the four secondary germ-layers are only

![Diagram](image)

Fig. 99.—Transverse section of the primitive groove (or primitive mouth) of a hare. (From Van Beneden.) \( pr \) primitive mouth, \( ul \) lips of same (primitive lips), \( ak \) and \( ik \) outer and inner germinal layers, \( mk \) middle germinal layer, \( mp \) parietal layer, \( mv \) visceral layer of the mesoderm.

inseparably connected at the primitive streak, and that here also the two flattened cœlom-pouches \((mk)\) extend centrifugally to right and left from the primitive mouth between the outer and inner germinal layers. In this case, too, the middle germinal layer consists from the first of two separate strata of cells, the parietal \((mp)\) and visceral \((mv)\) mesoblasts.

These concordant results of the best recent investigations (which have been confirmed by the observations of a number of scientists I have not enumerated) prove the unity of the vertebrate-stem in point of cœlomation, no less than of gastrulation. In both respects the invaluable amphioxus—the sole living survivor of the acrania—is found to be the original model that has preserved for us in palingenetic form
by a tenacious heredity these most important embryonic processes. From this primary model of construction we can cenogenetically deduce all the embryonic forms of the other vertebrates, the craniota, by secondary modifications. My thesis of the universal formation of the gastrula by folding of the blastula has now been clearly proved for all the vertebrates; so also has been Hertwig’s thesis of the origin of the middle germinal layers by the folding of a couple of cælom-pouches which appear at the border of the primitive mouth. Just as the gastræa-theory explains the origin and identity of the two primary layers, so the cælom-theory explains those of the four secondary layers. The point of origin is always

![Diagram](image_url)

**Fig. 190.—Transverse section of the primitive mouth (or groove) of a human embryo** (at the cælomula stage). (From Count Spec.) *pr* primitive mouth, *al* lips of same (primitive folds), *ak* and *ik* outer and inner germinal layers, *mk* middle layer, *mp* parietal layer, *mv* visceral layer of the mesoblats.

the properistoma, the border of the original primitive mouth of the gastrula, at which the two primary layers pass directly into each other.

Moreover, the cælomula is important as the immediate source of the chordula, the ontogenetic reproduction of the ancient, typical, unarticulated, vermalia-form, which has an axial chorda between the dorsal nerve-tube and the ventral gut-tube. This instructive chordula (Figs. 86-89) provides a valuable support of our phylogeny; it indicates the important moment in our stem-history at which the stem of the chordonia (tunicates and vertebrates) parted for ever from the divergent stems of the other metazoa (articulates, echino-derms, and molluscs).
I may express here my opinion, in the form of a chordæa-theory, that the characteristic chordula-larva of the chordonia has in reality this great palingenetic significance—it is the typical reproduction (preserved by heredity) of the ancient common stem-form of all the vertebrates and tunicates, the long-extinct chordæa. We will return in the twentieth Chapter to these worm-like ancestors which stand out as luminous points in the obscure stem-history of the invertebrate ancestors of our race. (Cf. also the eighth and ninth Tables, as to the six fundamental organs and their functions in the chordæa.)
### SEVENTH TABLE

**SYNOPSIS OF THE NAMES OF THE GERMINAL LAYERS**

**(SYNONYMS OF THE FOUR SECONDARY LAYERS)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I. <strong>Ectoderma.</strong></th>
<th>II. <strong>Mesoderma.</strong></th>
<th>III. <strong>Entoderma.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Outer layer.</td>
<td>Middle layer.</td>
<td>Inner layer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ectoblastus.</strong></td>
<td>Mesoblastus.</td>
<td><strong>Endoblastus.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sensory layer</td>
<td>Motor-germinative layer</td>
<td>Trophic layer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>(sensation).</em></td>
<td><em>(movement and reproduction).</em></td>
<td><em>(nutrition).</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ectoblast.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Mesoblast and Mesenchym.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Endoblast.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sense-layer.</td>
<td>Muscle-layer.</td>
<td><strong>Mucous layer.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neural layer.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Parietal layer.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Enteral layer.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outer limiting</td>
<td>Outer middle</td>
<td>Inner limiting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>layer.</td>
<td>layer.</td>
<td>layer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Methorium externum.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Fibrosus externum.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Methorium internum.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Animal layer.</td>
<td>Animal fibrous</td>
<td><strong>Vegetal</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>covering layer.</td>
<td>layer.</td>
<td><strong>covering layer.</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IV. <strong>Neuroblast.</strong></th>
<th>V. <strong>Myoblast.</strong></th>
<th>VI. <strong>Gonoblast.</strong></th>
<th>VII. <strong>Enteroblast.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lamina neurodermalis.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Lamina inodermalis.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Lamina inogastralis.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Lamina endogastralis.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*(Chief products:</td>
<td>*(Chief products:</td>
<td>*(Chief products:</td>
<td>*(Chief products:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sense-cells and</td>
<td>muscle-cells and</td>
<td>sex-cells and</td>
<td>gland-cells and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nerves:</td>
<td>skeleton:</td>
<td>vascular skin.)</td>
<td>gut epithelium:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outer skin.)</td>
<td>corium.)</td>
<td></td>
<td><em>mucous lining.</em>)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Skin-layer.**      | **Muscle-layer.** | **Vascular layer.** | **Mucous layer.** |
| **Epidermis.**       | **Myodermis.**   | **Haemodermis.**    | **Gastrodermis.** |

**Body-wall.**
Somatopleura.
Animal double-layer.

**Gut-wall.**
Splanchnopleura.
Vegetal double-layer.
EIGHTH TABLE


N.B.—The eighth and the ninth Tables are for the purpose of explaining my chordæa-theory, and giving a clear general view of the original anatomic and physiological properties of the chordæa, and also of the palingenetic relation of this ancient pre-Silurian stem-form to the corresponding structures in the human embryo.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary condition of the Primitive Organs</th>
<th>Secondary condition of the Primitive Organs</th>
<th>Six Primitive Organs of the Chordæa</th>
<th>Six Primitive Functions of the Chordæa</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Ectoderm (epiblast). Outer layer.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Mesoderm (mesoblast). Middle layer.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4. Gonoblast (germinative layer).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111. Entoderm (hypoblast). Inner layer.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Protection.
2. Sensation.
3. Motion.
4. Propagation.
### NINTH TABLE

**SYNOPSIS OF THE SIX FUNDAMENTAL ORGANS (A) AND THE THREE BODY-CAVITIES (B) OF THE CHORDULA, AND THEIR ORIGIN FROM THE GERMINAL LAYERS.**

#### A. The Fundamental Organs of the Chordula.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The Two Primary Germinal Layers</th>
<th>Separation of the Four Secondary Germinal Layers</th>
<th>Six Primitive Embryonic Plates</th>
<th>Products of the Germinal Plates in Man</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I. Primitive Covering.</strong> Epithelium of the outer or upper layer: <strong>Ectoderm</strong> or ectoblast (animal layer), Epiblast.</td>
<td>1. Outer skin of the chordula ( = ectoderm of the chordsea).</td>
<td>1. <em>Cerablast</em> horn-plate (covering-ectoblast).</td>
<td>1. Outer skin, hair, nails.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 and 4. The two layers of the coelom-pouches (outer and inner plates). The lateral parts of the dorsal wall of the primitive gut.</td>
<td>3. <em>Parietal mesoblast</em> (outer layer of the coelom-pouches) muscle-plate.</td>
<td>3. Muscle-system, skeletal system, corium.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Median part of the dorsal wall of the primitive gut.</td>
<td>4. <em>Visceral mesoblast</em> (inner layer of the coelom-pouches) muscle-plate.</td>
<td>4. Sex-glands, vascular system, heart, blood.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### I. Animal Cavity.
- **Wall formed of ectoderm-epithelia.**
  - 1. Cavity of the nerve-tube. **Medullary Canal.**
  - 2a and 2b. Pair of coelom-pouches. 
  - 2a and 2b. Right and left body-cavity. **Coeloma.**

#### II. Vegetal Cavity.
- **Walls formed of entoderm-epithelia.**
  - 3. Cavity of the permanent gut. **Gastrocoel.**
## Tenth Table

### Synopsis of the Four Chief Groups of the Metazoa That May Be Distinguished According to the Number of Germinal Layers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I. One-layered animals.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monoblastica (without primitive gut).</td>
<td>Blastula. Vesicular larva (with embryonic cavity or blastocoele).</td>
<td>Blastacends (volvocina, catallacta, magosphaera).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diploblastica (with primitive gut).</td>
<td>Entoderm. (hypoblast).</td>
<td>Mesomula. Large larva or embryo with massive mesenchym between the two primary layers.</td>
<td>Most of the coelenteria (sponges, acraspeda, corals, ehenopora, platodes). Lowest coelomaria.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. Three-layered animals.</td>
<td>Ectoderm. skin-layer.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Triploblastica (with gut-cavity gastro-canal system—always without anus, without body-cavity).</td>
<td>Mesoderm. (in the shape of mesenchym) middle layer.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Entoderm. gut-layer.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tetrablastica (with gut-cavity and body-cavity; generally without anus and blood-vessels).</td>
<td>Parietal layer skin-fibre-layer myoblast.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Visceral layer gut-fibre-layer gonoblast.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enteral layer gut-gland-layer enteroblast.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER XI.

THE VERTEBRATE CHARACTER OF MAN


We have now secured a number of firm standing-places in the labyrinthine course of our individual development by our study of the important embryonic forms which we have called the cytula, morula, blastula, gastrula, cœlomula, and chordula. But we have still in front of us the difficult task of deriving the complicated frame of the human body, with all its different parts, organs, members, etc., from the simple form of the chordula. We have previously considered the origin of this four-layered embryonic form from the two-layered gastrula. The two primary germinal layers, which form the entire body of the gastrula, and the two middle layers of the cœlomula that develop between them, are the four simple cell-strata or epithelia, which alone go to the formation of the complex body of man and the higher animals. It is so difficult to understand this construction that we will first seek a companion who may help us out of many difficulties.

This helpful associate is the science of comparative
anatomy. Its task is, by comparing the fully-developed bodily forms in the various groups of animals, to learn the general laws of organisation, according to which the body is constructed; at the same time, it has to determine the affinities of the various groups by critical appreciation of the degrees of difference between them. Formerly, this work was conceived in a teleological sense, and it was sought to find traces of the pre-formed plan of the Creator in the actual purposive organisation of animals. But comparative anatomy has gone much deeper since the establishment of the theory of descent; its philosophic aim now is to explain the variety of organic forms by adaptation, and their similarity by heredity. At the same time, it has to recognise in the shades of difference in form the degree of blood-relationship, and make an effort to construct the ancestral tree of the animal world. In this way, comparative anatomy enters into the closest relations with comparative ontogeny on the one hand, and with the science of classification on the other.

Now, when we ask what position man occupies among the other organisms according to the latest teaching of comparative anatomy and classification, and how man's place in the zoological system is determined by comparison of the developed bodily forms, we get a very definite and significant reply; and this reply gives us extremely important conclusions that enable us to understand the embryonic development and its phylogenetic purport. Since Cuvier and Baer, since the immense progress that was effected in the early decades of the nineteenth century by these two great zoologists, the opinion has generally prevailed that the whole animal kingdom may be distributed in a small number of great divisions or types. They are called types because a certain typical or characteristic structure is constantly preserved within each of these large sections. Since we applied the theory of descent to this doctrine of types, we have learned that this common type is an outcome of heredity; the animals of one type are blood-relatives, or members of one stem, and can be traced to a common ancestral form. Cuvier and Baer set up four of these types: the vertebrates,
articulates, molluscs, and radiates. The former three of these are still retained, and may be conceived as natural phylogenetic unities, as stems or phyla in the sense of the theory of descent. It is quite otherwise with the fourth type—the radiata. These animals, little known as yet at the beginning of the nineteenth century, were made to form a sort of lumber-room, into which were cast all the lower animals that did not belong to the other three types. As we obtained a closer acquaintance with them in the course of the last sixty years, it was found that we must distinguish among them from four to eight different types. In this way the total number of animal stems or phyla has been raised to eight or twelve (cf. Chapter XX.).

These twelve stems of the animal kingdom are, however, by no means co-ordinate and independent types, but have definite relations, partly of subordination, to each other, and a very different phylogenetic meaning. Hence they must not be arranged simply in a row one after the other, as was generally done until thirty years ago, and is still done in some manuals. We must distribute them in three subordinate principal groups of very different value, and arrange the various stems phylogenetically on the principles which I laid down in my Monograph on the Sponges, and developed in the Study of the Gastrcea Theory. We have first to distinguish the unicellular animals (protozoa) from the multicellular tissue-forming (metazoa). Only the latter exhibit the important processes of segmentation and gastrulation; and they alone have a primitive gut, and form germinal layers and tissues.

The metazoa, the tissue-animals or gut-animals, then subdivide into two main sections, according as a body-cavity is or is not developed between the primary germinal layers. We may call these the coelenteria and coelomaria; the former

1 According to the early theory of types, those of the animal kingdom are parallel and completely independent; but according to my gastraea theory they are divergent stems, connected at their root. This view of the affinity of the lower and higher animal-stems, which I first advanced in 1872 (in the Monograph on the Sponges), is further developed in my Systematic Phylogeny (1896), and compendiously stated in the tenth edition of the History of Creation (1902).
are often also called zoophytes or coelenterata, and the latter bilaterals. This division is the more important as the coelentera (without coelom) have no blood and blood-vessels, or an anus. The coelomaria (with body-cavity) have generally an anus, and blood and blood-vessels. There are four stems belonging to the coelentera: the gastrseads ("primitive-gut animals"), sponges, cnidaria, and platodes. Of the coelomaria we can distinguish six stems: the vermalia at the bottom represent the common stem-group (derived from the platodes) of these, the other five typical stems of the coelomaria—the molluscs, echinoderms, articulates, tunicates, and vertebrates—being evolved from them.

Man is, in his whole structure, a true vertebrate, and develops from an impregnated ovum in just the same characteristic way as the other vertebrates. There can no longer be the slightest doubt about this fundamental fact, nor of the fact that all the vertebrates form a natural phylogenetic unity, a single stem. The whole of the members of this stem, from the amphioxus and the cyclostoma to the apes and man, have the same characteristic disposition, connection, and development of the central organs, and arise in the same way from the common embryonic form of the chordula. Without going into the difficult question of the origin of this stem, we must emphasise the fact that the vertebrate stem has no direct affinity whatever to five of the other ten stems; these five isolated phyla are the sponges, cnidaria, molluscs, articulates, and echinoderms. On the other hand, there are important and, to an extent, close phylogenetic relations to the other five stems—the protozoa (through the amœbæ), the gastrseads (through the blastula and gastrula), the platodes and vermalia (through the coelomula), and the tunicates (through the chordula).

How we are to explain these phylogenetic relations in the present state of our knowledge, and what place is assigned to the vertebrates in the animal ancestral tree, will be considered later (Chapter XX.). For the present our task is to make plainer the vertebrate character of man, and especially to point out the chief peculiarities of organisation by which
the vertebrate stem is profoundly separated from the other eleven stems of the animal kingdom. Only after these comparative anatomical considerations shall we be in a position to attack the difficult question of our embryology. The development of even the simplest and lowest vertebrate from the simple chordula (Figs. 86–89) is so complicated and difficult to follow that it is necessary to understand the organic features of the fully-formed vertebrate in order to grasp the course of its embryonic evolution. But it is equally necessary to confine our attention, in this general anatomic characterisation of the vertebrate-body, to the essential facts, and pass by all the unessential. Hence, in giving you now an ideal anatomic description of the chief features of the vertebrate and its internal organisation, I omit all the subordinate points and restrict myself to the most important characteristics.

Much, of course, will seem to the reader to be essential that is only of subordinate and secondary interest, or even not essential at all, in the light of comparative anatomy and embryology. For instance, the skull and vertebral column and the extremities are non-essential in this sense. It is true that these parts are very important physiologically; but for the morphological conception of the vertebrate they are not essential, because they are only found in the higher, not the lower, vertebrates. The lowest vertebrates have neither skull nor vertebrae, and no extremities or limbs. Even the human embryo passes through a stage in which it has no skull or vertebrae; the trunk is quite simple, and there is yet no trace of arms and legs. At this stage of development man, like every other higher vertebrate, is essentially similar to the simplest vertebrate form, which we now find in only one living specimen. This one lowest vertebrate that merits the closest study—undoubtedly the most interesting of all the vertebrates after man—is the famous lancelet or amphioxus, to which we have already often referred (Plates XVIII. and XIX.). As we are going to study it more closely later on (Chapters XVI. and XVII.), I will only make one or two passing observations on it here.
The amphioxus lives buried in the sand of the sea, is from 5-7 centimetres long, and has, when fully developed, the shape of a very simple, longish, lancet-like leaf; hence its name of the lancelet. The narrow body is compressed on both sides, almost equally pointed at the fore and hind ends, without any trace of external appendages or articulation of the body into head, neck, breast, abdomen, etc. Its whole shape is so simple that its first discoverer thought it was a naked snail. It was not until much later—half a century ago—that the tiny creature was studied more carefully, and was found to be a true vertebrate. More recent investigations have shown that it is of the greatest importance in connection with the comparative anatomy and ontogeny of the vertebrates, and therefore with human phylogeny. The amphioxus reveals the great secret of the origin of the vertebrates from the invertebrate vermalia, and in its development and structure connects directly with certain lower tunicates, the ascidia.

When we make a number of sections of the body of the amphioxus, firstly vertical longitudinal sections through the whole body from end to end, and secondly transverse sections from right to left, we get anatomic pictures of the utmost instructiveness (cf. Figs. 101-105 and Plates XVIII. and XIX.). In the main they correspond to the ideal which we form with the aid of comparative anatomy and ontogeny of the primitive type or build of the vertebrate—the long extinct form to which the whole stem owes its origin. As we take the phylogenetic unity of the vertebrate stem to be beyond dispute, and assume a common origin from a primitive stem-form for all the vertebrates, from amphioxus to man, we are justified in forming a definite morphological idea of this primitive vertebrate (*prospondylus* or *vertebrea*). We need only imagine a few slight and unessential changes in the real sections of the amphioxus in order to have this ideal anatomic figure or diagram of the primitive vertebrate form, as we see in Figs. 101-105. The amphioxus departs so little from this primitive form that we may, in a certain sense, describe it
as a modified "primitive vertebrate" \(^1\) (cf. Plates XVIII. and XIX. with Figs. 101-105).

The outer form of our hypothetical primitive vertebrate was at all events very simple, and probably more or less similar to that of the lancelet. The bilateral or bilateral-symmetrical body is stretched out lengthways and compressed at the sides (Figs. 101-103), oval in section (Figs. 104, 105). There are no external articulation and no external appendages, in the shape of limbs, legs, or fins. On the other hand, the division of the body into two sections, head and trunk, was probably clearer in *prospondylus* than it is in its little-changed ancestor, the amphioxus. In both animals the fore or head-half of the body contains different organs from the trunk, and different on the dorsal from on the ventral side. As this important division is found even in the ascidia, the remarkable invertebrate stem-relatives of the vertebrates, we may assume that it was also found in the prochordonia, the common ancestors of both stems. It is also very pronounced in the young larvae of the cyclostoma (Plate XIX., Fig. 16); this fact is particularly interesting, as this palingenetic larval-form is in other respects also an important connecting-link between the higher vertebrates and the acrania.

The head of the acrania, or the anterior half of the body (both of the real amphioxus and the ideal prospondylus), contains the gill-gut and heart in the ventral section and the brain and sense-organs in the dorsal section. The trunk, or posterior half of the body, contains the liver-gut and sexual-glands in the ventral part, and the spinal marrow and most of the muscles in the dorsal part.

In the longitudinal section of the ideal vertebrate (Fig. 101) we have in the middle of the body a thin and

\(^1\) The ideal figure of the vertebrate as given in Figs. 101-105 is a hypothetical scheme or diagram, that has been chiefly constructed on the lines of the amphioxus, but with a certain attention to the comparative anatomy and ontogeny of the ascidia and appendicularia on the one hand, and of the cyclostoma and selachii on the other. This diagram has no pretension whatever to be an "exact picture," but merely an attempt to reconstruct hypothetically the unknown and long extinct vertebrate stem-form, an ideal "architypus."
Figs. 101-105.—The ideal primitive vertebrate (prospadaylus).

**Diagram.** Fig. 101 side-view (from the left). Fig. 102 back-view. Fig. 103 front view. Fig. 104 transverse section through the head (to the left through the gill-pouches, to the right through the gill-clefts). Fig. 105 transverse section of the trunk (to the right a pro-renal canal is affected). a aorta, af anus, au eye, b side-furrow (primitive renal process), c coeloma (body-cavity), d small intestine, e parietal eye (epiphysis), f fin border of the skin, g auditory vesicle, gh brain, h heart, i muscular cavity (dorsal coelom-pouch), k gill-gut, ka gill-artery, kg gill-arch, ks gill-folds, t liver, ma stomach, md mouth, ms muscles, na nose (smell pit), n renal canals, a apertures of same, o outer skin, p gullet, r spinal narrow, s sexual glands (gonades), t corium, u kidney-openings (pores of the lateral furrow), v visceral vein (chief vein), x chorda, p hypophysis (urinary appendage), z gullet-groove or gill-groove (hypobranchial groove).
flexible, but stiff, cylindrical rod, pointed at both ends (ch). It goes the whole length through the middle of the body, and forms, as the central skeletal axis, the original structure of the later vertebral column. This is the axial rod, or *chorda dorsalis*, also called *chorda vertebralis*, vertebral cord, axial cord, spinal cord, *notochorda*, or, briefly, *chorda*. This solid, but flexible and elastic, axial rod consists of a cartilaginous mass of cells, and forms the inner axial skeleton or central frame of the body; it is only found in vertebrates and tunicates, not in any other animals. As the first structure of the spinal column it has the same radical significance in all vertebrates, from the amphioxus to man. But it is only in the amphioxus and the cyclostoma that the axial rod retains its simplest form throughout life. In man and all the higher vertebrates it is found only in the earlier embryonic period, and is afterwards replaced by the articulated vertebral column.

The axial rod or chorda is the real solid chief axis of the vertebrate body, and at the same time corresponds to the ideal long-axis, and serves to direct us with some confidence in the orientation of the principal organs. We therefore take the vertebrate-body in its original, natural disposition, in which the long-axis lies horizontally, the dorsal side upward and the ventral side downward (Fig. 101). When we make a vertical section through the whole length of this long-axis, the body divides into two equal and symmetrical halves, right and left. In each half we have originally the same organs in the same disposition and connection; only their disposal in relation to the vertical plane of section, or median plane, is exactly reversed: the left half is the reflection of the right. We call the two halves *antimera* (opposed-parts). In the vertical plane of section that divides the two halves the sagittal ("arrow") axis, or "dorsoventral axis," goes from the back to the belly, corresponding to the sagittal seam of the skull. But when we make an horizontal longitudinal section through the chorda, the whole body divides into a dorsal and a ventral half. The line of section that passes through the body from right to left is the transverse, frontal, or lateral axis (cf. Plates VI. and VII.).
The two halves of the vertebrate body that are separated by this horizontal transverse axis and by the chorda are of quite different characters. The dorsal half is mainly the animal part of the body, and contains the greater part of what are called the animal organs, the nervous system, muscular system, osseous system, etc.—the instruments of movement and sensation. The ventral half is essentially the vegetative half of the body, and contains the greater part of the vertebrate's vegetal organs, the visceral and vascular systems, sexual system, etc.—the instruments of nutrition and reproduction. Hence in the construction of the dorsal half it is chiefly the outer, and in the construction of the ventral half chiefly the inner, germinal layer that is engaged. Each of the two halves develops in the shape of a tube, and encloses a cavity in which another tube is found. The dorsal half contains the narrow spinal-column cavity or vertebral canal above the chorda, in which lies the tube-shaped central nervous system, the medullary tube. The ventral half contains the much more spacious visceral cavity or body-cavity underneath the chorda, in which we find the alimentary canal and all its appendages.

The medullary tube, as the central nervous system or psychic organ of the vertebrate is called in its first stage, consists, in man and all the higher vertebrates, of two different parts: the large brain, contained in the skull, and the long spinal cord which stretches from there over the whole dorsal part of the trunk (Plate VII., Figs. 11-16 n). Even in the primitive vertebrate this composition is plainly indicated. The fore half of the body, which corresponds to the head, encloses a knob-shaped vesicle, the brain (gh); this is prolonged backwards into the thin cylindrical tube of the spinal marrow (r). Hence we find here this very important psychic organ, which accomplishes sensation, will, and thought, in the vertebrates, in its simplest form. The thick wall of the nerve-tube, which runs through the long axis of the body immediately over the axial rod, encloses a narrow central canal filled with fluid (Figs. 101-105 r). We still find the medullary tube in this very simple form for a time in the
embryo of all the vertebrates (cf. Plate VII., Figs. 11-13), and it retains this form in the amphioxus throughout life; only in the latter case the cylindrical medullary tube barely indicates the separation of brain and spinal cord. The lancelet’s medullary tube runs nearly the whole length of the body, above the chorda, in the shape of a long thin tube of almost equal diameter throughout (Plate XIX., Fig. 15), and there is only a slight swelling of it right at the front to represent the rudiment of a cerebral lobe. It is probable that this peculiarity of the amphioxus is connected with the partial atrophy of its head, as the ascidian larvæ (Plate XVIII., Fig. 5) on the one hand and the young cyclostoma (Plate XIX., Fig. 16) on the other clearly show a division of the vesicular brain, or head-marrow, from the thinner, tubular spinal marrow.

Probably we must trace to the same phylogenetic cause the defective nature of the sense-organs of the amphioxus, which we will describe later (Chapter XVI.). ProspOndylus, on the other hand, has probably had three pairs of sense-organs, though of a simple character, a pair of, or a single olfactory depression, right in front (Figs. 101, 102, na), a pair of eyes (au) in the lateral walls of the brain, and a pair of simple auscultory vesicles (g) behind. There was also, perhaps, a single parietal or “pineal” eye at the top of the skull (epiphysis, e).

In the vertical median plane (or middle plane, dividing the bilateral body into right and left halves) we have in the acrania, underneath the chorda, the mesentery and visceral tube, and above it the medullary tube; and above the latter a membranous partition of the two halves or antimera of the body. With this partition is connected the mass of connective tissue which acts as a sheath both for the medullary tube and the underlying chorda, and is, therefore, called the chord-sheath (perichorda); it originates from the dorsal and median part of the coelom-pouches which we shall call the skeleton plate or “sclerotom” in the craniote embryo. In the latter the chief part of the skeleton—the vertebral column and skull—developes from this chord-sheath; in the
acrania it retains its simple form as a soft connective matter, from which are formed the membranous partitions between the various muscular plates or myotomes (Figs. 101, 102, ms).

To the right and left of the cord-sheath, at each side of the medullary tube and the underlying axial rod, we find in all the vertebrates the large masses of muscle that constitute the musculature of the trunk and effect its movements. Although these are very elaborately differentiated and connected in the developed vertebrate (corresponding to the many differentiated parts of the bony skeleton), in our ideal primitive vertebrate we can distinguish only two pairs of these principal muscles, which run the whole length of the body parallel to the chorda. These are the upper (dorsal) and lower (ventral) lateral muscles of the trunk. The upper (dorsal) muscles, or the original dorsal muscles (Fig. 105 ms), form the thick mass of flesh on the back. The lower (ventral) muscles, or the original muscles of the belly, form the fleshy wall of the abdomen. Both sets are articulated, and consist of a double row of muscular plates (Figs. 101, 102 ms); the number of these myotomes determines the number of joints in the trunk, or metamera. The myotomes are also developed from the thick wall of the coelom-pouches (Fig. 105 i).

Outside this muscular tube we have the external envelope of the vertebrate body, which is known as the corium or cutis (Plate VI. i). This strong and thick envelope consists, in its deeper strata, chiefly of fat and loose connective tissue, and in its upper layers of cutaneous muscles and firmer connective tissue. It covers the whole surface of the fleshy body, and is of considerable thickness in all the craniota. But in the acrania the corium is merely a thin plate of connective tissue, an insignificant "corium-plate" (lamella corii, Figs. 101-105 i).

Immediately above the corium is the outer skin (epidermis, o), the general covering of the whole outer surface. In the higher vertebrates the hairs, nails, feathers, claws, scales, etc., grow out of this epidermis. It consists, with all its appendages and products, of simple cells, and has no blood-vessels. Its cells are connected with the terminations of the
sensory nerves. Originally, the outer skin is a perfectly simple covering of the outer surface of the body, composed only of homogeneous cells—a permanent horn-plate. In this simplest form, as one-layered epithelium, we find it, at first, in all the vertebrates, and throughout life in the acrania. It afterwards grows thicker in the higher vertebrates, and divides into two strata—an outer, firmer horn-layer and an inner, softer mucus-layer; also a number of external and internal appendages grow out of it: outwardly, the hairs, nails, claws, etc., and internally, the sweat-glands, fat-glands, etc.

It is probable that in our primitive vertebrate the skin was raised in the middle line of the body in the shape of a vertical fin border (f). A similar border, going round the greater part of the body, is found to-day in the amphioxus and the cyclostoma; we also find one in the tail of fish-larvae and tadpoles.

Now that we have considered the external parts of the vertebrate and the animal organs, which mainly lie in the dorsal half, above the chorda, we turn to the vegetal organs, which lie for the most part in the ventral half, below the axial rod. Here we find a large body-cavity or visceral cavity in all the craniota. The spacious cavity that encloses the greater part of the viscera corresponds to only a part of the original cæloma, which we considered in the tenth Chapter; hence it may be called the metacæloma. As a rule, it is still briefly called the cæloma; formerly it was known in anatomy as the pleuropertitoneal cavity. In man and the other mammals (but only in these) this cæloma divides, when fully developed, into two different cavities, which are separated by a transverse partition—the muscular diaphragm. The fore or pectoral cavity (pleura cavity) contains the oesophagus, heart, and lungs; the hind or peritoneal or abdominal cavity contains the stomach, small and large intestines, liver, pancreas, kidneys, etc. But in the vertebrate embryo, before the diaphragm is developed, the two cavities form a single continuous body-cavity, and we find it thus in all the lower vertebrates throughout life. This
body-cavity is clothed with a delicate layer of cells, the ccelom-epithelium. In the acrania the cælom is articulated both dorsally and ventrally, as their muscular pouches and primitive genital organs plainly show (Fig. 105).

The chief of the viscera in the body-cavity is the alimentary canal, the organ that represents the whole body in the gastrula. In all the vertebrates it is a long tube, enclosed in the body-cavity and more or less differentiated in length, and has two apertures—a mouth for taking in food (Figs. 101, 103 md) and an anus for the ejection of unusable matter or excrements (af). With the alimentary canal (Plates IV., V. d) a number of glands are connected which are of great importance for the vertebrate body, and which all grow out of the canal. Glands of this kind are the salivary glands, the lungs, the liver, and many smaller glands. Nearly all these glands are wanting in the acrania; probably there were merely a couple of simple hepatic tubes (Figs. 101, 103 l) in the vertebrate stem-form. The wall of the alimentary canal and all its appendages consists of two different layers; the inner, cellular clothing is the gut-gland-layer, and the outer, fibrous envelope consists of the gut-fibre-layer; it is mainly composed of muscular fibres which accomplish the digestive movements of the canal, and of connective-tissue fibres that form a firm envelope. We have a continuation of it in the mesentery, a thin, bandage-like layer, by means of which the alimentary canal is fastened to the ventral side of the chorda, originally the dorsal partition of the two cælom-pouches (Plate VI., Fig. 8 l). The alimentary canal is variously modified in the vertebrates both as a whole and in its several sections, though the original structure is always the same, and is very simple. As a rule, it is longer (often several times longer) than the body, and therefore folded and winding within the body-cavity, especially at the lower end. In man and the higher vertebrates it is divided into several sections, often separated by valves—the mouth, pharynx, oesophagus, stomach, small and large intestine, and rectum. All these parts develop from a very simple structure, which originally (throughout life in the amphioxus) runs from end to
end under the chorda in the shape of a straight cylindrical canal.

As the alimentary canal may be regarded morphologically as the oldest and most important organ in the body, it is interesting to understand its essential features in the vertebrate more fully, and distinguish them from unessential features. In this connection we must particularly note that the alimentary canal of every vertebrate shows a very characteristic division into two sections—a fore and a hind chamber. The fore chamber is the head-gut or branchial gut (Figs. 101–103, p, k), and is chiefly occupied with respiration. The hind section is the trunk-gut or hepatic gut, which accomplishes digestion (ma, d). In all vertebrates there are formed, at an early stage, to the right and left in the fore-part of the head-gut, certain special clefts that have an intimate connection with the original respiratory apparatus of the vertebrate—the branchial (gill) clefts (ks). All the lower vertebrates, the amphioxus, lampreys, and fishes, are constantly taking in water at the mouth, and letting it out again by the lateral clefts of the gullet. This water serves for breathing. The oxygen contained in it is inspired by the blood-canals, which spread out on the parts between the gill-clefts, the gill-arches (kg). These very characteristic branchial clefts and arches are found in the embryo of man and all the higher vertebrates at an early stage of development, just as we find them throughout life in the lower vertebrates (Plates VIII.–XIII.). However, these clefts and arches never act as respiratory organs in the mammals, birds, and reptiles, but gradually develop into quite different parts. Still, the fact that they are found at first in the same form as in the fishes is one of the most interesting proofs of the descent of these three higher classes from the fishes.

Not less interesting and important is an organ that develops from the ventral wall in all vertebrates—the gill-groove or hypobranchial-groove. In the acrania and the ascidia it consists throughout life of a glandular ciliated groove, which runs down from the mouth in the ventral
middle line of the gill-gut, and takes small particles of food to the stomach (Fig. 104 z). But in the craniota the thyroid gland (*thyreoidea*) is developed from it, the gland that lies in front of the larynx, and which, when pathologically enlarged, forms goitre (*struma*).

From the head-gut we get not only the gills, the organs of water-breathing in the lower vertebrates, but also the lungs, the organs of atmospheric breathing in the five higher classes. In these cases a vesicular fold appears in the gullet of the embryo at an early stage, and gradually takes the shape of two spacious sacs, which are afterwards filled with air. These sacs are the two air-breathing lungs, which take the place of the water-breathing gills. But the vesicular invagination, from which the lungs arise, is merely the familiar air-filled vesicle, which we call the floating-bladder of the fish, and which alters its specific weight as hydrostatic organ or floating apparatus. This structure is not found in the lowest vertebrate classes—the acrania and cyclostoma.

The second chief section of the vertebrate-gut, the trunk or liver-gut, which accomplishes digestion, is of very simple construction in the acrania. It consists of two different chambers. The first chamber, immediately behind the gill-gut, is the expanded stomach (*ma*); the second, narrower and longer chamber, is the straight small intestine (*d*); it opens behind on the ventral side by the anus (*af*). Near the limit of the two chambers in the visceral cavity we find the liver, in the shape of a simple tube or blind sac (*l*); in the amphioxus it is single (Plate XIX., Fig. 15 *l*); in the prospondylus it was probably double (Figs. 101, 103 *l*).

Closely related morphologically and physiologically to the alimentary canal is the vascular system of the vertebrate, the chief sections of which develop from the fibrous gut-layer. It consists of two different but directly connected parts, the system of blood-vessels and that of lymph-vessels. In the passages of the one we find red blood, and in the other colourless lymph. To the lymphatic system belong, first of all, the lymphatic canals proper or absorbent veins, which are
distributed among all the organs, and absorb the used-up juices from the tissues, and conduct them into the venous blood; but besides these there are the chyle-vessels, which absorb the white chyle (or milk-juice), the nutritive fluid prepared by the alimentary canal, and conduct this also to the blood.

The blood-vessel system of the vertebrate has a very elaborate construction, but seems to have had a very simple form in the primitive vertebrate, as we find it to-day permanently in the ringed-worms (for instance, rain-worms) and the amphioxus. We accordingly distinguish first of all as essential, original parts of it two large single blood-canals, which lie in the fibrous wall of the gut, and run along the alimentary canal in the median plane of the body, one above and the other underneath the canal. These principal canals give out numerous branches to all parts of the body, and pass into each other by arches before and behind; we will call them the primitive artery and the primitive vein. The first corresponds to the dorsal vessel, the second to the ventral vessel, of the worms. The primitive or principal artery, usually called the aorta (Fig. 101 a), lies above the gut in the middle line of its dorsal side, and conducts oxidised or arterial blood from the gills to the body. The primitive or principal vein (Fig. 103 v) lies below the gut, in the middle line of its ventral side, and is therefore also called the vena subintestinalis; it conducts carbonised or venous blood back from the body to the gills. At the branchial section of the gut in front the two canals are connected by a number of branches, which rise in arches between the gill-clefts. These "branchial vascular arches" (kg) run along the gill-arches, and have a direct share in the work of respiration. The anterior continuation of the principal vein which runs on the ventral wall of the gill-gut, and gives off these vascular arches upwards, is the branchial artery (ka). At the border of the two sections of the ventral vessel it enlarges into a contractile spindle-shaped tube (Figs. 101, 103 h). This is the first outline of the heart, which afterwards becomes a four-chambered pump in the higher vertebrates and man. There
is no heart in the amphioxus, probably owing to degeneration. In prospondylus the ventral gill-heart probably had the simple form in which we still find it in the ascidia and the embryos of the craniota (Figs. 101, 103 b).

The kidneys, which act as organs of excretion or urinary organs in all vertebrates, have a very different and elaborate construction in the sections of this stem; we will consider them further in the twenty-ninth Chapter. Here I need only mention that in our hypothetical primitive vertebrate they probably had the same form as in the actual amphioxus—the fore-kidneys (*protonephra*). These are originally made up of a double row of little canals, which directly convey the used-up juices or the urine out of the body-cavity (Fig. 105 n). The inner aperture of these pronephridial canals opens with a vibratory funnel into the body-cavity; the external aperture opens in lateral grooves of the epidermis, a couple of longitudinal grooves in the lateral surface of the outer skin (Fig. 105 b). The pronephridial duct is formed by the closing of this groove to the right and left at the sides. In all the craniota it develops at an early stage in the horn-plate (Plate VI., Figs. 4 u, 5 u); in the amphioxus it seems to be converted into a wide cavity, the atrium, or peribranchial space (Plate XVIII., Fig. 13 c).

Next to the kidneys we have the sexual organs of the vertebrate. In most of the members of this stem the two are joined together in a unified urogenital system; it is only in a few groups that the urinary and sexual organs are separated (in the amphioxus, the cyclostoma, and some sections of the fish-class). In man and all the higher vertebrates the sexual apparatus is made up of various parts, which we will consider in the twenty-ninth Chapter. But in the two lowest classes of our stem, the acrania and cyclostoma, they consist merely of simple sexual glands or gonades, the ovaries of the female sex and the testicles (*spermaria*) of the male; the former provide the ova, the latter the sperm. In the craniota we always find only one pair of gonades; in the amphioxus several pairs, metamERICALLY arranged. They must have had the same form in our hypothetical prospondylus (Figs. 101, 103 s).
These segmental pairs of gonades are the original ventral halves of the celom-pouches.

The organs which we have now enumerated in this general survey, and of which we have noted the characteristic disposition, are those parts of the organism that are found in all vertebrates without exception in the same relation to each other, however much they may be modified. We have chiefly had in view the transverse section of the body (Figs. 104, 105), because in this we see most clearly the distinctive arrangement of them. But to complete our picture we must also consider the articulation or metamerization of them, which has yet been hardly noticed, and which is seen best in the longitudinal section. In man and all the more advanced vertebrates the body is made up of a series or chain of similar members, which succeed each other in the long axis of the body—the segments or metamer of the organism. In man these homogeneous parts number thirty-three in the trunk, but they run to several hundred in many of the vertebrates (such as serpents or eels). As this internal articulation or metamerism is mainly found in the vertebral column and the surrounding muscles, the sections or metamer were formerly called pro-vertebrae. As a fact, the articulation is by no means chiefly determined and caused by the skeleton, but by the muscular system and the segmental arrangement of the kidneys and gonades. However, the composition from these pro-vertebrae or internal metamer is usually, and rightly, put forward as a prominent character of the vertebrate, and the manifold division or differentiation of them is of great importance in the various groups of the vertebrates. But as far as our present task—the derivation of the simple body of the primitive vertebrate from the chordula—is concerned, the articulate parts or metamer are of secondary interest, and we need not go into them just now.

The characteristic composition of the vertebrate body develops from the embryonic structure in the same way in man as in all the other vertebrates. As all competent experts now admit the monophyletic origin of the vertebrates
on the strength of this significant agreement, and this "common descent of all the vertebrates from one original stem-form" is admitted as an historical fact, we have found the answer to "the question of all questions." We may, moreover, point out that this answer is just as certain and precise in the case of the origin of man from the mammals. This advanced vertebrate class is also monophyletic, or has evolved from a common stem-group of lower vertebrates (reptiles, and, earlier still, amphibia). This follows from the fact that the mammals are clearly distinguished from the other classes of the stem, not merely in one striking particular, but in a whole group of distinctive characters.

It is only in the mammals that we find the skin covered with hair, the breast-cavity separated from the abdominal cavity by a complete diaphragm, and the larynx provided with an epiglottis. The mammals alone have three small auscultory bones in the tympanic cavity—a feature that is connected with the characteristic modification of their maxillary joint. Their red blood-cells have no nucleus, whereas this is retained in all other vertebrates. Finally, it is only in the mammals that we find the remarkable function of the breast-structure which has given its name to the whole class—the feeding of the young by the mother's milk. The mammary glands which serve this purpose are interesting in so many ways that we may devote a few lines to them here.

As is well known, the lower mammals, especially those which beget a number of young at a time, have several mammary glands at the breast. Hedge-hogs and sows have five pairs, mice four to five pairs, dogs and squirrels four pairs, cats and bears three pairs, most of the ruminants and many of the rodents two pairs, each provided with a teat or nipple (mastos). In the various genera of the half-apes (lemures) the number varies a good deal. On the other hand, the bats and apes, which only beget one young at a time as a rule, have only one pair of mammary glands, and these are found at the breast as in man.

These variations in the number or structure of the
mammary apparatus (mammarium) have become doubly interesting in the light of recent research in comparative anatomy. It has been shown that in man and the apes we often find redundant mammary glands (hypermastism) and

Fig. 106 A, B, C, D.—Instances of redundant mammary glands and nipples (hypermastism). A pair of small redundant breasts (with two nipples on the left) above the large normal ones; from a 45-year-old Berlin woman, who had had children 17 times (twins twice). (From Hansemann.) B the highest number: ten nipples (all giving milk), three pairs above, one pair below, the large normal breasts; from a 22-year-old servant at Warschau. (From Neugebaur.) C three pairs of nipples: two pairs on the normal glands and one pair above; from a 19-year-old Japanese maiden. D four pairs of nipples: one pair above the normal and two pairs of small accessory nipples underneath; from a 22-year-old Baden soldier. (From Wiedersheim.)

corresponding teats (hyperthelism) in both sexes. Fig. 106 shows four cases of this kind—A, B, and C of three women, and D of a man. They prove that all the above-mentioned numbers may be found occasionally in man. Fig. 106 A
shows the breast of a Berlin woman who had had children seventeen times, and who has a pair of small accessory breasts (with two nipples on the left one) above the two normal breasts; this is a common occurrence, and the small soft pad above the breast is not infrequently represented in ancient statues of Venus. In Fig. 106 C we have the same phenomenon in a Japanese girl of nineteen, who has two nipples on each breast besides (three pairs altogether). Fig. 106 D is a man of twenty-two with four pairs of nipples (as in the dog), a small pair above and two small pairs beneath the large normal teats. The maximum number of five pairs (as in the pig and hedge-hog) was found in a Polish servant of twenty-two who had had several children; milk was given by each nipple; there were three pairs of redundant nipples above and one pair underneath the normal and very large breasts (Fig. 106 B).

A number of recent investigations (especially among recruits) have shown that these things are not uncommon in the male as well as the female sex. They can only be explained by phylogeny, which attributes them to atavism and latent heredity. The earlier ancestors of all the primates (including man) were lower placentals, which had, like the hedge-hog (one of the oldest forms of the living placentals), several mammary glands (five or more pairs) in the abdominal skin. In the apes and man only a couple of them are normally developed, but from time to time we get a development of the atrophied structures. Special notice should be taken of the arrangement of these accessory mammae; they form, as is clearly seen in Fig. 106 B and D, two long rows, which diverge forward (towards the arm-pit), and converge behind in the middle line (towards the loins). The milk-glands of the polymastic lower placentals are arranged in similar lines.

The phylogenetic explanation of polymastism, as given in comparative anatomy, has lately found considerable support in ontogeny. Hans Strahl, E. Schmitt, and others, have found that there are always in the human embryo at the sixth week (when it is 15 mm. long) the microscopic traces
Fig. 107.—A Greek gynecomast.
of five pairs of mammary glands, and that they are arranged at regular distances in two lateral and divergent lines, which correspond to the mammary lines. Only one pair of them—the central pair—are normally developed, the others atrophying. Hence there is for a time in the human embryo a normal hyperthelism, and this can only be explained by the descent of man from polythelic lower primates (lemures).

But the milk-gland of the mammal has a great morphological interest from another point of view. This organ for feeding the young in man and the higher mammals is, as is known, found in both sexes. However, it is usually active only in the female sex, and yields the valuable "mother's milk"; in the male sex it is small and inactive, a real rudimentary organ of no physiological interest. Nevertheless, in certain cases we find the breast as fully developed in man as in woman, and it may give milk for feeding the young.

We have a striking instance of this *gynecomastism* (large milk-giving breasts in a male) in Fig. 107. I owe the photograph (taken from life) to the kindness of Dr. Ornstein, of Athens, a German physician, who has rendered service by a number of anthropological observations (for instance, in several cases of tailed men). The gynecomast in question is a Greek recruit in his twentieth year, who has both normally developed male organs and a very pronounced female breast. It is noteworthy that the other features of the structure are in accord with the softer forms of the female sex. It reminds us of the marble statues of hermaphrodites which the ancient Greek and Roman sculptors often produced. But the man would only be a real hermaphrodite if he had ovaries internally besides the (externally visible) testicles.

I observed a very similar case during my stay in Ceylon (at Belligemnia) in 1881. A young Cinghalese in his twenty-fifth year was brought to me as a curious hermaphrodite, half-man and half-woman. His large breasts gave plenty of milk; he was employed as "male nurse" to suckle a newborn infant whose mother had died at birth. The outline of his body was softer and more feminine than in the Greek shown in Fig. 107. As the Cinghalese are small of stature
and of graceful build, and as the men often resemble the women in clothing (upper part of the body naked, female dress on the lower part) and the dressing of the hair (with a comb), I first took the beardless youth to be a woman. The illusion was greater, as in this remarkable case gynecomastism was associated with cryptorchism—that is to say, the testicles had kept to their original place in the visceral cavity, and had not travelled in the normal way down into the scrotum. (Cf. Chapter XXIX.) Hence the latter was very small, soft, and empty. Moreover, one could feel nothing of the testicles in the inguinal canal. On the other hand, the male organ was very small, but normally developed (as in Fig. 107). It was clear that this apparent hermaphrodite also was a real male.

Another case of practical gynecomastism has been described by Alexander von Humboldt. In a South American forest he found a solitary settler whose wife had died in childbirth. The man had laid the new-born child on his own breast in despair; and the continuous stimulus of the child’s sucking movements had revived the activity of the mammary glands. It is possible that nervous suggestion had some share in it. Similar cases have been often observed in recent years, even among other male mammals (such as sheep and goats).

The great scientific interest of these facts is in their bearing on the question of heredity. The stem-history of the mammarium rests partly on its embryology (Chapter XXIV.) and partly on the facts of comparative anatomy and physiology. As in the lower and higher mammals (the monotremes, and most of the marsupials) the whole lactiferous apparatus is only found in the female; and as there are traces of it in the male only in a few younger marsupials, there can be no doubt that these important organs were originally found only in the female mammal, and that they were acquired by these through a special adaptation to habits of life.

Later, these female organs were communicated to both sexes by heredity; and they have been maintained in all
persons of either sex, although they are not physiologically active in the males. This normal permanence of the female lactiferous organs in both sexes of the higher mammals and man is independent of any selection, and is a fine instance of the much-disputed "inheritance of acquired characters."
### ELEVENTH TABLE

**SYNOPSIS OF THE CHIEF ORGANS OF THE PROVERTEBRATES (THE HYPOTHETICAL PRIMITIVE VERTEBRATES) AND THEIR DEVELOPMENT (PROSPONDYLUS)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Four Secondary Germinal Layers</th>
<th>Synonyms of the Layers</th>
<th>Fundamental Organs of the Primitive Vertebrates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I. Sensory layer</strong>&lt;br&gt; (skin-sense-layer) neuroblast. &lt;br&gt;<em>Lamina neuralis</em>&lt;br&gt; outer limiting layer. <em>(Sensation.)</em></td>
<td>Skin-layer <em>(Baer).</em>&lt;br&gt;Primary animal layer.</td>
<td>1. <strong>Outer skin</strong> <em>(epidermis)</em>&lt;br&gt;(simple cell-layer on the outer surface of the body).&lt;br&gt;2. <strong>Nervous system</strong> <em>(sensorium).</em>&lt;br&gt;2. A. Medullary tube <em>(nervous centre).</em>&lt;br&gt;2. B. Peripheral nervous system. 3. <strong>Sense-organs</strong> <em>(sensilla).</em>&lt;br&gt;3. A. Nose <em>(olfactory pits).</em>&lt;br&gt;3. B. Eyes.&lt;br&gt;3. C. Auscultory vesicles <em>(statocysts).</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>III. Sexual layer</strong>&lt;br&gt; (gut-fibrous-layer) gonoblast. &lt;br&gt;<em>Lamina visceralis</em>&lt;br&gt;inner middle layer. <em>(Reproduction.)</em></td>
<td>Vascular layer <em>(Baer).</em>&lt;br&gt;(Mainly used for construction of the hypsomites and the splanchnopleura.)</td>
<td>11. <strong>Chorda dorsalis</strong> <em>(notochorda)</em>&lt;br&gt;(axial rod), unarticulated.&lt;br&gt;12. <strong>Gut-epithelium</strong> <em>(gastrodermis).</em>&lt;br&gt;12. A. Epithelium of the head or gill-gut.&lt;br&gt;12. B. Epithelium of the trunk or liver-gut.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IV. Glandular layer</strong>&lt;br&gt; (gut-gland-layer) enteroblast. &lt;br&gt;<em>Lamina enteralis</em>&lt;br&gt;inner limiting layer. <em>(Nutrition.)</em></td>
<td>Mucous layer <em>(Baer).</em>&lt;br&gt;Primary vegetal layer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**PROPERTY OF R.I. M. COLLEGE LIBR.**
CHAPTER XII.

EMBRYONIC SHIELD AND GERMINATIVE AREA

Cenogenetic characteristics of amniote embryology. The classic hen's egg as a source of error. False antithesis of germ and yolk. The yolk belongs to the vegetal half. Yolk-germ and yolk-glands of the amphibia. Flat germinial disk of the birds and reptiles. Severance of it from the yolk-sac. Primary, secondary, and tertiary embryonic stages of the vertebrate. The so-called blastula of the mammal (germinal gut-vesicle or blastocyst). Its origin by modification of the feeding of the young. Descent of the viviparous mammals from oviparous. Envelopes of their epigastrula (covering layer). Conversion of the two-layered into the four-layered germinial disk. Dark and light germinative area. Embryonic shield (embryaspis) or dorsal shield (notaspis), embryonic formation. Relation of the germinative area to the permanent gut (menosoma). The continued inheritance and subsequent loss of the food-yolk in the vertebrates. Influence of these cenogenetic processes on the modification of the gastrula.

The three higher classes of vertebrates which we call the amniotes—the mammals, birds, and reptiles—are notably distinguished by a number of peculiarities of their development from the five lower classes of the stem—the animals without an amnion (anamnia or ichthyopoda). All the amniotes have a distinctive embryonic membrane known as the amnion (or "water-membrane"), and a special embryonic appendage—the allantois. They have, further, a considerable yolk-sac, which is filled with food-yolk in the reptiles and birds, and with a clear corresponding fluid in the mammals. In consequence of these cenogenetic structures, the original features of the development of the amniotes are so much altered that it is very difficult to reduce them to the palinogenetic embryonic processes of the lower amnion-less vertebrates. The gastræa theory shows us how to do this, by representing the embryology of the lowest vertebrate, the skull-less amphioxus, as the original form, and deducing from it, through a series of gradual modifications, the gastrulation and cælomation of the craniota.

It was somewhat fatal to the true conception of the chief
embryonic processes of the vertebrate that all the older embryologists, from Malpighi (1687) and Wolff (1750) to Baer (1828) and Remak (1850), always started from the investigation of the hen's egg, and transferred to man and the other vertebrates the impressions they gathered from this. This classical object of embryological research is, as we have seen, a source of dangerous errors. The large globular food-yelk of the bird’s egg causes, in the first place, a flat discoid expansion of the small gastrula, and then so distinctive a development of this thin round embryonic disk that the controversy as to its significance occupies a large part of embryological literature.

One of the most unfortunate errors that this led to was the idea of an original antithesis of germ and yelk. The latter was regarded as a foreign body, extrinsic to the real germ, whereas it is really a part of it, an embryonic organ of nutrition. Many authors said there was no trace of the embryo until a later stage, and outside the yelk; sometimes the two-layered embryonic disk itself, at other times only the central axial portion of it (as distinguished from the germinative area which we will describe presently) was taken to be the first outline of the embryo. In the light of the gastraea theory it is hardly necessary to dwell on the defects of this earlier view and the erroneous conclusions drawn from it. In reality, the first segmentation-cell, and even the stem-cell itself and all that issues therefrom, belong to the embryo. As the large original yelk-mass in the undivided egg of the bird only represents an inclosure in the greatly enlarged ovum, so the later content of its embryonic yelk-sac (whether yet segmented or not) is only a part of the entoderm which forms the primitive gut. This is clearly shown by the amphiblastic ova of the amphibia and cyclostoma, which explain the transition from the archiblastic yelk-less ova of the amphioxus to the large yelk-filled ova of the reptiles and birds.

It is precisely in the study of these difficult features that we see the incalculable value of phylogenetic considerations in explaining complex ontogenetic facts, and the need of
EMBRYONIC SHIELD AND GERMINATIVE AREA

separating cenogenetic phenomena from palingenetic. This is particularly clear as regards the comparative ontogeny of the vertebrates, because here the phylogenetic unity of the stem has been already established by the well-known facts of paleontology and comparative anatomy. If this unity of the stem, on the basis of the amphioxus, were always borne in mind, we should not have these errors constantly recurring.

A wrong idea of the formation of the yolk not only led astray the most and best of the older embryologists, but the same thing not infrequently happens in our time. We have a recent instance in the excellent work, On the Embryology and Anatomy of the Ceylon Ichthyophis Glutinosus. Those admirable observers, the brothers Paul and Fritz Sarasin, formulated the thesis, in the third part of this work (1889), that "the two germinal layers of the gastrula do not correspond to the entoderm and ectoderm, but to the blastoderm and yolk of the vertebrate," and thought they had thus "provided the foundation for a comparative embryology of the animal kingdom." On their view, "the gastrula consists of two layers, of which the inner is the lecithoblast and the outer the blastoderm."

The misinterpretation of facts and confusion of ideas which lie at the bottom of these opinions are due to the supposition that in every case the yolk is a part of the vegetal half of the embryo. As the undivided food-yolk is only a portion of the contents of the vegetal hemisphere of the ovum in the unicellular germ (the stem-cell), so we must always regard the divided food-yolk as a part of the ventral wall of the primitive gut in the multicellular embryo. The yolk embryo, or lecithoblast, of Sarasin is only a limited portion of the entoderm—that portion which develops in the ventral wall of the primitive gut from its central part; as "yolk-gland" (lecithadenia) it is just as much a subordinate glandular part of the whole gut-tube as the visceral glands (liver, lungs, etc.) that afterwards grow out of it. On the other hand, the dorsal part of the embryo, which Sarasin opposes as "blastoderm" to the ventral lecithoblast, is by no means the original embryonic membrane (embracing all the
EMBRYONIC SHIELD AND GERMINATIVE AREA

embryonic cells), the real blastoderm, but the relic of the entoderm and the whole of the ectoderm.

In many other cases also the cenogenetic relation of the embryo to the food-yelk has until now given rise to a quite wrong idea of the first and most important embryonic processes in the higher vertebrates, and has occasioned a number of false theories in the ontogeny of them. Until thirty years ago the embryology of the higher vertebrates always started from the position that the first structure of the embryo is a flat, leaf-shaped disk; it was for this reason that the cell-layers that compose this germinal disk (also called germinative area) are called "germinal layers." This flat germinal disk (blastodiscus), which is round at first and then oval, and which is often described as the scar or cicatrice in the laid hen's egg, is found at a certain part of the surface of the large globular food-yelk. I am convinced that it is nothing else than the discoid, flattened gastrula of the birds (discogastrula). At the beginning of germination the flat embryonic disk curves outwards, and separates on the inner side from the underlying large yelk-ball. In this way the flat layers are converted into tubes, their edges folding and joining together (Fig. 108). As the embryo grows at the expense of the food-yelk, the latter becomes smaller and smaller; it is completely surrounded by the germinal layers. Later still, the remainder of the food-yelk only forms a small round sac, the yelk sac or umbilical vesicle (saccus vitellinus or vesicula umbilicalis, Fig. 108 nb). This is enclosed by the visceral layer, is connected by a thin stalk, the yelk-duct (ductus vitellinus), with the central part of the gut-tube, and is finally, in most of the vertebrates, entirely absorbed by this (H). The point at which this takes place, and where the gut finally closes, is the visceral navel. In the mammals, in which the remainder of the yelk-sac remains without and atrophies, the yelk-duct at length penetrates the outer ventral wall. At birth the umbilical cord proceeds from here, and the point of closure remains throughout life in the skin as the navel.

As the older embryology of the higher vertebrates was mainly based on the chick, and regarded the antithesis of
EMBRYONIC SHIELD AND GERMINATIVE AREA

Embryo (or formative-yolk) and food-yolk (or yolk-sac) as original, it had also to look upon the flat leaf-shaped structure of the germinal disk as the primitive embryonic form, and emphasise the fact that hollow grooves were formed of these flat layers by folding, and closed tubes by the joining together of their edges.

Fig. 108.—Severance of the discoid mammal embryo from the yolk-sac, in transverse section (diagrammatic). A. The germinal disk \( h, h' \) lies flat on one side of the gill-gut vesicle \( k b \). B. In the middle of the germinal disk we find the medullary groove \( m r \), and underneath it the chorda \( c h \). C. The gut-fibre-layer \( d f \) has been enclosed by the gut-gland-layer \( d d \). D. The skin-fibre-layer \( h f \) and gut-fibre-layer \( d f \) divide at the periphery; the gut \( d \) begins to separate from the yolk-sac or umbilical vesicle \( n b \). E. The medullary tube \( m r \) is closed; the body-cavity \( c \) begins to form. F. The provertebrae \( w \) begin to grow round the medullary tube \( m r \) and the chorda \( c h \); the gut \( d \) is cut off from the umbilical vesicle \( n b \). G. The vertebrae \( v \) have grown round the medullary tube \( m r \) and chorda; the body-cavity is closed, and the umbilical vesicle has disappeared. The amnion and serous membrane are omitted.

The letters have the same meaning throughout: \( h \) horn-plate, \( m r \) medullary tube, \( h f \) skin-fibre-layer, \( w \) provertebrae, \( c h \) chorda, \( c \) body-cavity or coeloma, \( d f \) gut-fibre-layer, \( d d \) gut-gland-layer, \( d \) gut-cavity, \( n b \) umbilical vesicle.

This idea, which dominated the whole treatment of the embryology of the higher vertebrates until thirty years ago, was totally false. The gastræa theory, which has its chief application here, teaches us that it is the very reverse of the truth. The cup-shaped gastrula, in the body-wall of which the two primary germinal layers appear from the first as closed tubes, is the original embryonic form of all the
vertebrates, and all the invertebrate metazoa; and the flat germinal disk with its superficially expanded germinal layers is a later, secondary form, due to the cenogenetic formation of the large food-yelk and the gradual spread of the germ-layers over its surface. Hence the actual folding of the germinal layers and their conversion into tubes is not an original and primary, but a much later and tertiary, evolutionary process. In the phylogeny of the vertebrate embryonic process we may distinguish the following three stages:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A. First Stage :</th>
<th>B. Second Stage :</th>
<th>C. Third Stage :</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Primary</strong></td>
<td><strong>Secondary</strong></td>
<td><strong>Tertiary</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(palingenetic)</td>
<td>(cenogenetic)</td>
<td>(cenogenetic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>embryonic process.</td>
<td>embryonic process.</td>
<td>embryonic process.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The germinal layers form from the first closed tubes, the one-layered blastula being converted into the two-layered gastrula by invagination. No food-yelk. *(Amphioxus.)*

The germinal layers spread out leaf-wise, food-yelk gathering in the ventral entoderm, and a large yelk-sac being formed from the middle of the gut-tube. *(Amphibia.)*

The germinal layers form a flat germinal disk, the borders of which join together and form closed tubes, separating from the central yelk-sac. *(Amniotes.)*

As this theory, a logical conclusion from the gastræa theory, has been fully substantiated by the comparative study of gastrulation in the last few decades, we must exactly reverse the hitherto prevalent mode of treatment. The yelk-sac is not to be treated, as was done formerly, as if it were originally antithetic to the embryo, but as an essential part of it, a part of its visceral tube. The primitive gut of the gastrula has, on this view, been divided into two parts in the higher animals as a result of the cenogenetic formation of the food-yelk—the permanent or after-gut *(metagaster)*, or the permanent alimentary canal, and the yelk-sac *(lecithoma)* or umbilical vesicle. This is very clearly shown by the comparative ontogeny of the fishes and amphibia. In these cases the whole yelk undergoes cleavage at first, and forms a yelk-gland, composed of yelk-cells, in the ventral wall of
the primitive gut. But it afterwards becomes so large that a part of the yolk does not divide, and is used up in the yolk-sac that is cut off outside.

When we make a comparative study of the embryology of the amphioxus, the frog, the chick, and the hare (Plates II., III.), there cannot, in my opinion, be any further doubt as to the truth of this position, which I have held for thirty years. Hence in the light of the gastraea theory we must regard the features of the amphioxus as the only and real primitive structure, departing very little from the palingenetic embryonic form, among all the vertebrates. In the cyclostoma and the frog these features are, on the whole, not much altered cenogenetically, but very much so in the chick, and most of all in the hare. In the bell-gastrula of the amphioxus and in the crested gastrula of the petromyzoa and the frog the germinal layers are found to be closed tubes or vesicles from the first (Plate II., Figs. 6, 11). On the other hand, the chick-embryo (in the new laid, but not yet hatched, egg) is a flat circular disk, and it was not easy to recognise this as a real gastrula. Rauber and Goette have, however, achieved this. As the discoid gastrula grows round the large globular yolk, and the after-gut or permanent gut then separates from the outlying yolk-sac, we find all the processes which we have shown (diagrammatically) in Fig. 108—processes that were hitherto regarded as principal acts, whereas they are merely secondary.

The oldest, oviparous mammals, the discoblastic monotremes, behave in the same way as the sauropsida (reptiles and birds). But the corresponding embryonic processes in the viviparous mammals, the marsupials and placentals, are very elaborate and distinctive. They were formerly quite misinterpreted; it was not until the publication of the studies of Edward van Beneden (1875) and the later research of Selenka, Kupffer, Rabl, and others, that light was thrown on them, and we were in a position to bring them into line with the principles of the gastraea theory and trace them to the embryonic forms of the lower vertebrates. Although there is no independent food-yolk, apart from the formative yolk,
in the mammal ovum, and although their segmentation is total on that account, nevertheless a large yolk-sac (lecithoma) is formed in their embryos, and the "embryo proper" spreads leaf-wise over its surface, as in the reptiles and birds, which have a large food-yolk and partial segmentation. In the mammals, as well as in the latter, the flat, leaf-shaped germinal disk (blastodiscus) separates from the yolk-sac, and its edges join together and form tubes.

How, then, can we explain this curious anomaly? Only as a result of very characteristic and peculiar cenogenetic modifications of the embryonic process, the real causes of which must be sought in the change in the rearing of the young on the part of the viviparous mammals. These are clearly connected with the fact that the ancestors of the viviparous mammals were oviparous amniotes like the present monotremes, and only gradually became viviparous. This can no longer be questioned now that it has been shown (1884) that the monotremes, the lowest and oldest of the mammals, still lay eggs, and that these develop like the discoblastic ova of the reptiles and birds. Their nearest descendants, the marsupials, formed the habit of retaining the eggs, and developing them in the oviduct; the latter was thus converted into a womb (uterus). A nutritive fluid that was secreted from its wall, and transuded through the wall of the blastula, now served to feed the embryo, and took the place of the food-yolk. In this way the original food-yolk of the meroblastic monotremes was gradually atrophied, and at last disappeared so completely that the partial ovum-segmentation of their descendants, the rest of the mammals, once more became total. From the discogastrula of the former was evolved the distinctive epigastrula of the latter.

It is only by this phylogenetic explanation that we can understand the formation and development of the peculiar, and hitherto totally misunderstood, blastula of the mammal. This vesicular condition of the mammal embryo was discovered 200 years ago (1677) by Regner de Graaf. He found in the uterus of a hare four days after impregnation small, round, loose, transparent vesicles, with a double
EMBRYONIC SHIELD AND GERMINATIVE AREA 281

However, Graaf’s discovery passed without recognition. It was not until 1827 that these vesicles were re-discovered by Baer, and then more closely studied in 1842 by Bischoff in the hare (Figs. 109, 110). They are found in the womb of the hare, the dog, and other small mammals, a few days after copulation. The mature ova of the mammal, when they have left the ovary, are fertilised either here or in the oviduct immediately afterwards by the invading sperm-cells.¹ (As to the womb and oviduct see Chapter XXIX.) The cleavage and formation of the gastrula take place in the oviduct. Either here in the oviduct or after the mammal gastrula has passed into the

uterus it is converted into the globular vesicle which is shown externally in Fig. 109, and in section in Fig. 110. The thick, outer, structureless envelope that encloses it is the original ovolemma or zona pellucida, modified, and clothed with a layer of albumin that has been deposited on the outside. From this stage the envelope is called the external membrane, the primary chorion or prochorion (a).

¹ In man and the other mammals the fertilisation of the ova probably takes place, as a rule, in the oviduct; here the ova, which issue from the female ovary in the shape of the Graafian follicle, and enter the inner aperture of the oviduct, encounter the mobile sperm-cells of the male seed, which pass into the uterus at copulation, and from this into the external aperture of the oviduct. Impregnation rarely takes place in the ovary or in the womb.
The real wall of the vesicle enclosed by it consists of a simple layer of ectodermal cells, which are flattened by mutual pressure, and generally hexagonal; a light nucleus shines through their fine-grained protoplasm (Fig. 111). At one part (c) inside this hollow ball we find a circular disc, formed of darker, softer, and rounder cells, the dark-grained entodermal cells (Fig. 112).

The characteristic embryonic form that the developing mammal now exhibits has up to the present usually been called the "blastula" (Bischoff), "sac-shaped embryo" (Baer), "vesicular embryo" (*vesicula blastodermica*, or, briefly, *blastospheæra*). The wall of the hollow vesicle, which consists of a single layer of cells, was called the "blastoderm," and was supposed to be equivalent to the cell-layer of the same name that forms the wall of the real blastula of the amphioxus (Plate II., Fig. 4) and many of the invertebrates (such as *monoxenio*, Fig. 31, F, G). Formerly this real blastula was generally believed to be equivalent or homologous to the embryonic vesicle of the mammal. However, this is by no means the case. What is called the "blastula" of the mammal and the real blastula of the amphioxus and many of the invertebrates are totally different embryonic structures. The latter (blastula) is palingenetic, and precedes the formation of the gastrula. The former (blastodermal vesicle) is cenogenetic, and follows gastrulation. The globular wall of the blastula is a real blastoderm, and consists of homogeneous (blastodermal) cells; it is not yet differentiated into the two primary germinal layers. But the globular wall of the mammal vesicle is the differentiated ectoderm, and at one point in it we find a circular disk of quite different cells—the entoderm. The round cavity, filled with fluid, inside the real
EMBRYONIC SHIELD AND GERMINATIVE AREA

blastula is the segmentation-cavity. But the similar cavity within the mammal vesicle is the yolk-sac cavity, which is connected with the incipient gut-cavity. This primitive gut-cavity passes directly into the segmentation-cavity in the mammals, in consequence of the peculiar cenogenetic changes in their gastrulation, which we have considered previously (cf. Chapter IX.).

For these reasons it is very necessary to recognise the secondary embryonic vesicle in the mammal \((gastrocystis\) or blastocystis, formerly called \(vesicula blastodermica\)) as a characteristic structure peculiar to this class, and distinguish it carefully from the primary blastula of the amphioxus and the invertebrates. The wall of this mammal vesicle consists of two different parts. The greater portion of it is one-layered, and formed only of the ectoderm. The smaller part, namely the round disk that is made up of the two primary germinal layers, may be called with Van Beneden the gastric disk \((gastrodiscus\)\). The primary ectoderm is partly transitory (a temporary envelope or Raub’s “covering layer”), and is replaced by a secondary ectoderm, which develops from the border of the gastric disk.

The small, circular, whitish, and opaque spot which this gastric disk forms at a certain part of the surface of the clear and transparent embryonic vesicle has long been known to science, and compared to the germinal disk of the birds and reptiles. Sometimes it has been called the germinal disk \((discus blastodermicus\)\), sometimes the germinal spot \((tache embryonnaire)\), and usually the germinative area \((area germinativa)\). From the area the further development of the embryo proceeds. However, the larger part of the embryonic vesicle of the mammal is not directly used for building up the later body, but for the construction of the temporary umbilical vesicle. The embryo separates from this in proportion as it grows at its expense; the two are only connected by the yolk-duct (the stalk of the yolk-sac), and this maintains the direct communication between the cavity of the umbilical vesicle and the forming visceral cavity (Fig. 108).
The germinative area or gastric disk of the mammal consists at first (like the germinal disk of birds and reptiles) merely of the two primary germinal layers, the ectoderm and entoderm. But soon there appears in the middle of the circular disk between the two a third stratum of cells, the rudiment of the middle layer or fibrous layer (*mesoderma*). This middle germinal layer consists from the first, as we have seen in the tenth Chapter, of two separate epithelial plates, the two layers of the celom-pouches (parietal and visceral). However, in all the amniotes (on account of the large formation of yolk) these thin middle plates are so firmly pressed together that they seem to represent a single layer. It is thus peculiar to the amniotes that the middle of the germinative area is composed of four germinal layers, the two limiting (or primary) layers and the middle layers between them (Figs. 99, 100). These four secondary germinal layers can be clearly distinguished as soon as what is called the sickle-groove (or "embryonic sickle") is seen at the hind border of the germinative area. At the periphery, however, the germinative area of the mammal only consists of two layers. The rest of the wall of the embryonic vesicle consists at first (but only for a short time in most of the mammals) of a single layer, the outer germinal layer.

From this stage, however, the whole wall of the embryonic vesicle becomes two-layered. The middle of the germinative area is much thickened by the growth of the cells of the middle layers, and the inner layer expands at the same time, and increases at the border of the disk all round. Lying close on the outer layer throughout, it grows over its inner surface at all points, covers first the upper and then the lower hemisphere, and at last closes in the middle of the inner layer (Figs. 113-117). The wall of the embryonic vesicle now consists throughout of two layers of cells, the ectoderm without and the entoderm within. It is only in the centre of the circular area, which becomes thicker and thicker through the growth of the middle layers, that it is made up of all four layers. At the same time small structureless tufts or warts are deposited on the surface of the outer ovolemma or
prochorion, which has been raised above the embryonic vesicle (Figs. 115-117 a).

We may now disregard both the outer ovolemma and the greater part of the vesicle, and concentrate our attention on

---

**Fig. 113.** Ovum of a hare from the uterus, four mm. in diameter. The embryonic vesicle (b) has withdrawn a little from the smooth ovolemma (a). In the middle of the ovolemma we see the round germinal disk (blastodiscus, c), at the edge of which (at d) the inner layer of the embryonic vesicle is already beginning to expand. (Figs. 113-117 from Bischoff.)

**Fig. 114.** The same ovum, seen in profile. Letters as in Fig. 113.

**Fig. 115.** Ovum of a hare from the uterus, six mm. in diameter. The blastoberm is already for the most part two-layered (b). The ovolemma, or outer envelope, is tufted (a).

**Fig. 116.** The same ovum, seen in profile. Letters as in Fig. 115.

**Fig. 117.** Ovum of a hare from the uterus, eight mm. in diameter. The embryonic vesicle is now nearly everywhere two-layered (k), only remaining one-layered below (at d).
the germinative area and the four-layered embryonic disk. It is here alone that we find the important changes which lead to the differentiation of the first organs. In this it is immaterial whether we examine the germinative area of the mammal (of the hare, for instance) or the germinal disk of a bird or a reptile (such as a lizard or tortoise). The embryonic processes we are now going to consider are essentially the same in all members of the three higher classes of vertebrates which we call the amniotes. Man is found to agree in this respect with the hare, dog, ox, etc.; and in all these mammals the germinative area undergoes essentially the same changes as in the birds and reptiles. They are most

![Fig. 118.](image1.png)

**Fig. 118.**—**Round germinative area of the hare**, divided into the central light area (*area pellucida*) and the peripheral dark area (*area opaca*). The light area seems darker on account of the dark ground appearing through it.

![Fig. 119.](image2.png)

**Fig. 119.**—**Oval area**, with the opaque whitish border of the dark area without.

frequently and accurately studied in the chick, because we can have incubated hen's eggs in any quantity at any stage of development. Moreover, the round germinal disk of the chick passes immediately after the beginning of incubation (within a few hours) from the two-layered to the four-layered stage, the two-layered mesoderm developing from the median primitive groove between the ectoderm and entoderm (Figs. 85–98).

The first change in the round germinal disk of the chick is that the cells at its edges multiply more briskly, and form
darker nuclei in their protoplasm. This gives rise to a dark ring, more or less sharply set off from the lighter centre of the germinal disk (Fig. 118). From this point the latter takes the name of the “light area” (area pellucida), and the darker ring is called the “dark area” (area opaca). (In a strong light, as in Figs. 118–120, the light area seems dark, because the dark ground is seen through it; and the dark area seems whiter.) The circular shape of the area now changes into elliptic, and then immediately into oval (Figs. 119, 120). One end seems to be broader and blunter, the other narrower and more pointed; the former corresponds to the anterior and the latter to the posterior section of the subsequent body. At the same time, we can already trace the characteristic bilateral form of the body, the antithesis of right and left, before and behind. This will be made clearer by the “primitive streak,” which appears at the posterior end.

At an early stage an opaque spot is seen in the middle of the clear germinative area, and this also passes from a circular to an oval shape. At first this shield-shaped marking is very delicate and barely perceptible; but it soon becomes clearer, and now stands out as an oval shield, surrounded by two rings or areas (Fig. 120). The inner and brighter ring is the remainder of the pellucid area, and the dark outer ring the remainder of the opaque area; the opaque shield-like spot itself is the first rudiment of the dorsal part of the embryo. We give it briefly the name of embryonic shield (embryaspis) or dorsal shield (notaspis).1 Remak has called it the “double shield,” because it arises from a shield-shaped thickening of the outer and middle germinal layer. In most works this embryonic shield is described as “the first rudiment or trace of the embryo” or “primitive embryo.” But this is wrong, though it rests on the authority of Baer and Bischoff. As a matter of fact, we already have the embryo in the stem-cell, the gastrula, and all the subsequent stages.

1 The germinal shield is at first merely a dorsal shield in the amniotes; when the frontal septum is afterwards formed between the episoma and hyposoma, the dorsal shield appears as the “stem-zone” in contrast to the ventral body (“parietal zone” or yolk-sac).
The embryonic shield is simply the first rudiment of the dorsal part, which is the earliest to develop.

As the older names of "embryonic rudiment" and "germinative area" are used in many different senses—and this has led to a fatal confusion in ontogenetic literature—we must explain very clearly the real significance of these important embryonic parts of the amniote. Remak had pointed out in 1850 that it is quite wrong to describe the embryonic shield or "Baer’s shield" as "the future embryo" or "the first trace of the embryo." The primary germinal layers are really the first rudiment of the embryo. Nevertheless, the older names have been retained in great measure to our own time, thanks to the authority of Baer and Bischoff. Thus, Kölliker, for instance, one of the most distinguished and influential embryologists, says, even in the latest edition of his Human Embryology (1884): "In the middle of the pellucid area (of the chick) we get later on the first traces of
the embryo”; and in the blastodermic vesicle of the hare
there appears, at the part where it is three-layered, a white,
round, opaque spot, the embryonal spot (area embryonalis),
which is no other than the first outline of the embryo.” The
misunderstanding that arises from these and similar expres-
sions has led to a number of serious errors in explaining the
embryonic structures. In view of these, I must formally
draw up the following principles:

1. The so-called “first trace of the embryo” in the
amniotes, or the embryonic shield (embryaspis), in the
centre of the pellucid area, consists merely of an early differen-
tiation and formation of the middle dorsal parts.

2. Hence the best name for it is “the dorsal shield”
(notaspis), as I proposed long ago.

3. The germinative area, in which the first embryonal
blood-vessels appear at an early stage, is not opposed as an
external area to the “embryo proper,” but is a part of it.

4. In the same way, the yolk-sac or the umbilical vesicle
(the “relic of the blastula”) is not a foreign external append-
ance of the embryo, but an outlying part of its primitive
gut, an embryonal visceral gland.

5. The dorsal shield gradually separates from the germina-
tive area and the yolksac, its edges growing downwards and
folding together to form ventral plates (laminee ventrales).

6. The yolksac and vessels of the germinative area, which
soon spread over its whole surface, are, therefore, real
embryonal organs, or temporary parts of the embryo, and
have a transitory importance in connection with the nutrition
of the growing later body; the latter may be called the
“permanent body” (menosoma) in contrast to them.

The relation of these cenogenetic features of the amniotes
to the palinogenetic structures of the older non-amniotic
vertebrates may be expressed in the following theses: The
original gastrula, which completely passes into the embryonic
body in the acrania, cyclostoma, and amphibia, is early
divided into two parts in the amniotes—the embryonic
shield (embryaspis), which represents the dorsal outline of
the permanent body (menosoma); and the temporary
embryonic organs of the germinative area and its blood-vessels, which soon grow over the whole of the yelk-sac. The differences which we find in the various classes of the vertebrate stem in these important particulars can only be fully understood when we bear in mind their phylogenetic relations on the one hand, and, on the other, the cenogenetic modifications of structure that have been brought about by changes in the rearing of the young and the variation in the mass of the food-yelk.

We have already described in the ninth Chapter the changes which this polyphyletic increase and decrease of the nutritive yelk causes in the form of the gastrula, and especially in the situation and shape of the primitive mouth. The primitive mouth or prostoma is originally a simple round aperture at the lower (aboral) pole of the long axis; its dorsal lip is above and ventral lip below. In the holoblastic amphioxus this primitive mouth is a little eccentric, or shifted to the dorsal side (Fig. 41). The aperture increases with the growth of the food-yelk in the cyclostoma and ganoids; in the sturgeon it lies almost on the equator of the round ovum, the ventral lip (a) in front and the dorsal lip (b) behind (Fig. 122 b). In the wide-mouthed, circular discoid gastrula of the selachii or primitive fishes, which spreads quite flat on the large food-yelk, the anterior semi-circle of the border of the disk is the ventral, and the posterior semi-circle the dorsal lip (Fig. 122 A). The amphiblastic amphibia are directly connected with their earlier fish-ancestors, the dipneusts and ganoids, and further the oldest selachii (cestracion); they have retained their total unequal segmentation, and their small primitive mouth (Fig. 122, C, ab) is blocked up by the yelk-stopper, lies at the limit of the dorsal and ventral surface of the embryo (at the aboral pole of its equatorial axis), and there again has an upper dorsal and a lower ventral lip (a, b). The formation of a large food-yelk followed again in the stem-forms of the amniotes, the protaminotes or proreptilia, descended from the amphibia (Fig. 122 D). But here the accumulation of the food-yelk took place only in the ventral wall of the primitive-gut, so that
the narrow primitive mouth lying behind was forced upwards, and came to lie on the back of the discoid "epigastrula" in the shape of the "primitive groove"; thus (in contrast to the case of the selachii, Fig. 122 A) the dorsal lip (b) had to lie in front, and the ventral lip (a) behind (Fig. 122 D). This feature was transmitted to all the amniotes, whether they retained the large food-yolk (reptiles, birds, and monotremes), or lost it by atrophy (the viviparous mammals).

This phylogenetic explanation of gastrulation and coelom-ation and the comparative study of them in the various vertebrates throw a clear and full light on many ontogenetic phenomena, as to which the most obscure and confused opinions were prevalent thirty years ago. In this we see especially the high scientific value of the biogenetic law and
the careful separation of palingenetic from cenogenetic processes. To the opponents of this law the real explanation of these remarkable phenomena is impossible. We have curious instances of this lack of a thorough grasp of the subject in Wilhelm His (of Leipzig) and Victor Hensen (of Kiel). Although these industrious observers have been devoted to the accurate description of ontogenetic facts for more than thirty years, they have completely failed to detect their phylogenetic causes. The same may be said of many new workers in the field of mechanical and experimental embryology. Of these Hans Driesch particularly deserves notice for the obscurity of his ideas and lack of a real grip of the biogenetic processes. In his violent antagonism to the theory of descent he goes as far as to say that all Darwinists have softening of the brain, and that Darwinism is only the illusion of a generation. Driesch has lately won a certain regard in uneducated circles by foolish expressions of this kind, and by his metaphysical speculations on neo-vitalism. This, however, is chiefly grounded on the fact that no one can find any rational meaning in his extraordinary theories. Both these vitalistic vagaries and the supposed simple mechanical explanations that "mechanical evolutionists" give of historical processes are totally unsatisfactory (see p. 46). Here, and in every other part of embryology, the true key to the solution lies in phylogeny.
# SYNOPSIS OF THE COMPOSITION OF THE AMNIOTE-EMBRYO FROM THE PERMANENT BODY (MENOSOMA) AND TEMPORARY EMBRYONIC ORGANS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I. Permanent body.</strong>&lt;br&gt;Menosoma.</td>
<td><strong>I. A.</strong>&lt;br&gt;Dorsal body&lt;br&gt;(= provertebral-plates).&lt;br&gt;Episoma&lt;br&gt;stem zone (dorsal shield).</td>
<td><strong>a.</strong> Cerebrospinal and head-plates.&lt;br&gt;b. Spinal marrow and provertebral-plates.&lt;br&gt;c. Chorda (axial entoderm).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The (small) part of the amniote-embryo (central part of the discogastrula) that develops into the permanent body.</td>
<td><strong>I. B.</strong>&lt;br&gt;Ventral body&lt;br&gt;(= lateral plates).&lt;br&gt;Hyposoma&lt;br&gt;parietal zone (ventral plates).</td>
<td><strong>a.</strong> Ventral plates (parietal lateral plates, somatopleura).&lt;br&gt;b. Visceral plates (visceral lateral plates, splanchnopleura).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>II. Embryonic organs.</strong>&lt;br&gt;The (large) part of the amniote-embryo that takes no part in the composition of the permanent body, but forms the temporary “extra-embryonic” organs of the embryo.</td>
<td><strong>II. A 1.</strong>&lt;br&gt;Germinative area,&lt;br&gt;or vascular area.&lt;br&gt;II. A 2. Umbilical vesicle.</td>
<td><strong>a.</strong> Light area (area bellucida).&lt;br&gt;b. Dark area (area opaca).&lt;br&gt;c. Yolk-area (area vitellina).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Embryonic shield&lt;br&gt;Embryaspis&lt;br&gt;= embryonic spot (area embryonalis).&lt;br&gt;or “embryonic rudiment,” or “first trace of the embryo.”&lt;br&gt;(= Remak’s “double shield” and Baer’s shield.)</td>
<td><strong>II. B 1.</strong>&lt;br&gt;Intrafetal allantois.&lt;br&gt;II. B 2. Extrainfetal allantois.</td>
<td><strong>a.</strong> Urinary bladder (vesica urinaria).&lt;br&gt;b. Urinary duct (urachus).&lt;br&gt;c. Placenta.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>II. A.</strong>&lt;br&gt;Yolk-sac.&lt;br&gt;Lechithoma&lt;br&gt;(sacculus vitellinus).</td>
<td><strong>II. C 1.</strong>&lt;br&gt;Amnion.&lt;br&gt;Water membrane (fetal sac).</td>
<td><strong>C 1.</strong> Amniotic cavity (amniocoele).&lt;br&gt;C 2. Serous cavity (serosacaleum).&lt;br&gt;Excelsa or interamniotic cavity, or extrafetal celom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>II. B.</strong>&lt;br&gt;Primitive urinary sac.&lt;br&gt;Allantois&lt;br&gt;(urinary vesicle of the amphibia).</td>
<td><strong>II. C 2.</strong>&lt;br&gt;Serolemma.&lt;br&gt;Serous membrane converted into the chorion by formation of villi.&lt;br&gt;Chorion.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER XIII.

DORSAL BODY AND VENTRAL BODY

Development of the dorsal shield (*notaspis*). Primitive groove (primitive mouth) in the hind half and medullary groove in the fore-half of the dorsal shield. Connection of the two median grooves by the medullary visceral duct or neurenteric canal. Neuroporus. The oval form of the embryonic disk changes into a sandal-shape. Differentiation of dorsal body (*episoma* or stem-zone) and ventral body (*hyposoma* or parietal zone). Separation of the two by the lateral furrow. Differentiation of provertebral plates and lateral plates. Transverse studies of the sole-shaped amniote embryo. Separation of the median tube from the horn-plate. Origin of the closed gastric tube from the flat gut-layer of the embryonic shield. Formation of the navel. Separation of the mammal embryonic shield from the embryonic vesicle. Cutaneous navel and intestinal navel. Formation of the amnion, the allantois, and the umbilical vesicle. Similar construction of dorsal wall and ventral wall. Fore gut-cavity and pelvic-cavity. Mouth-pit and anus-pit. Pro-renal ducts. First blood-vessels.

The earliest stages of the human embryo are, for the reasons already given, either quite unknown or only imperfectly known to us. But as the subsequent embryonic forms in man behave and develop just as they do in all the other mammals, there cannot be the slightest doubt that the preceding stages also are similar. We have been able to see in the ccelomula of the human embryo (Fig. 100), by transverse sections through its primitive mouth, that its two ccelom-pouches are developed in just the same way as in the hare (Fig. 99); moreover, the peculiar course of the gastrulation is just the same.

The germinative area forms in the human embryo in the same way as in the other mammals, and in the axial middle part of this we have the embryonic shield (*embryaspis*), the purport of which we considered in the preceding chapter. The next changes of the embryonic disk, or the “embryonic spot” (*area embryonalis*), take place in corresponding fashion. These are the changes we are now going to consider more closely.

The chief part of the oval embryonic shield is at first the
narrow hinder end; it is in the median line of this that the primitive streak appears (Fig. 124 ps). The narrow longitudinal groove or meridian furrow in it—the so-called "primitive groove"—is, as we have seen, the primitive mouth of the gastrula. In the gastrula-embryos of the mammals, which are much modified cenogenetically, this cleft-shaped prostoma is lengthened so much that it soon traverses the whole of the hinder half of the dorsal shield; as we find in a
hare-embryo of six to eight days (Fig. 125 pr). The two swollen parallel borders that limit this median furrow are the lateral lips of the primitive mouth, right and left. In this way the bilateral, dipleurous, or bilateral-symmetrical type of the vertebrate becomes pronounced. The subsequent head of the amniote is developed from the broader and rounder fore-half of the dorsal shield.

In this fore-half of the dorsal shield a median furrow quickly makes its appearance (Fig. 125 rf). This is the broader dorsal furrow or medullary groove, the first structure of the central nervous system. The two parallel dorsal or medullary swellings that enclose it grow together over it afterwards, and form the medullary tube. As is seen in transverse sections, it is formed only of the outer germinal layer (Figs. 139, 140). The lips of the primitive mouth, however, lie, as we know, at the important point where the outer layer bends over the inner, and from which the two coelom pouches grow between the primary germinal layers.

Thus the median primitive furrow (pr) in the hind-half and the median medullary furrow (rf) in the fore-half of the oval shield are totally different structures, although the latter seems to a superficial observer to be merely the forward continuation of the former. Hence they were formerly
always confused, and in the oldest and much-copied illustration of the dorsal shield of the hare which Bischoff gave in 1842 (Fig. 120) one simple longitudinal furrow goes the whole length of the middle line. This error was the more pardonable as immediately afterwards the two grooves do actually connect in a very remarkable way. The two parallel dorsal swellings, which pass into each other arch-wise in front, diverge in the rear and embrace the anterior end of the primitive groove (Fig. 125). They then grow together over it in such a way that the primitive groove (or the hindernost cavity of the primitive gut) passes directly into the closing medullary tube. The point of transition is the remarkable neurenteric

**Fig. 126.** Embryonic shield of a hare of eight days. (From Van Beneden.) *pr* primitive groove, *cn* canalis neurentericus, *nk* nodus neurentericus (or "Hensen's knot"), *kf* head-process (chorda).

**Fig. 127.** Longitudinal section of the coelomula of amphioxus (from the left). *i* entoderm, *d* primitive gut, *cn* medullary duct, *n* nerve-tube, *m* mesoderm, *s* first primitive segment, *e* coelom-pouches. (From Hatschek.)

canal (Fig. 127 *cn*). The thickened mass at the border of the primitive mouth, which surrounds it, is the neurenteric knot (or "Hensen's knot," Fig. 126 *nk*). The direct connection which is thus established between the two cavities of the primitive gut and the medullary tube does not last long; the two are soon definitely separated by a partition.

The enigmatic *canalis neurentericus* is a very old embryonic organ, and of great phylogenetic interest, because it arises in the same way in all the chordonia (both tunicates and vertebrates). In every case it touches or embraces like
an arch the posterior end of the chorda, which has been developed here in front out of the middle line of the primitive gut (between the two cœlom-folds of the sickle-groove) ("head-process," Fig. 126 kf). These very ancient and strictly hereditary structures, which have no physiological significance to-day, deserve (as "rudimentary organs") our closest attention. The tenacity with which the useless neurenteric canal has been transmitted down to man through the whole series of vertebrates is of equal interest for the theory of descent in general, and the phylogeny of the chordonia in particular.

Fig. 128.—Longitudinal section of the chordula of a frog. (From Balfour.) ne nerve-tube, x canalis neurentericus, al alimentary canal, yk yolk-cells, m mesoderm.

Fig. 129.—Longitudinal section of a frog-embryo. (From Goette.) m mouth, l liver, an anus, ne canalis neurentericus, mc medullary tube, pn pineal gland (epiphysis), ch chorda.

The connection which the canalis neurentericus (Fig. 127 cn) establishes between the dorsal nerve-tube (n) and the ventral gut-tube (d) is seen very plainly in the amphioxus in a longitudinal section of the cœlomula, as soon as the primitive mouth is completely closed at its hinder end. The medullary tube has still at this stage an opening at the forward end, the neuroporus (Fig. 86 np). This opening also is afterwards closed. There are then two completely closed canals over each other—the medullary tube above and the gastric tube below, the two being separated by the chorda. The same features as in the acrania are exhibited by the related tunicates, the ascidia (Plate XVIII., Figs. 5, 6).
Again, we find the neurenteric canal in just the same form and situation in the amphibia. A longitudinal section of a young tadpole (Fig. 128) shows how we may penetrate from the still open primitive mouth \((x)\) either into the wide primitive gut-cavity \((al)\) or the narrow overlying nerve-tube. A little later, when the primitive mouth is closed, the narrow neurenteric canal (Fig. 129, \(ne\)) represents the arched connection between the dorsal medullary canal \((me)\) and the ventral gastric canal.

In the amniotes this original curved form of the neurenteric canal cannot be found at first, because here the primitive mouth travels completely over to the dorsal surface of the gastrula, and is converted into the longitudinal furrow we call the primitive groove. Hence the primitive groove (Fig. 131 \(pr\)), examined from above, appears to be the straight continuation of the fore-lying and younger medullary furrow \((me)\). The divergent hind legs of the latter embrace the anterior end of the former. Afterwards we have the complete closing of the primitive mouth, the dorsal swellings joining to form the medullary tube and growing over the prostoma. The canalis neurentericus then
leads directly, in the shape of a narrow arch-shaped tube (Fig. 132 ne), from the medullary tube (sp) to the gastric tube (pag).

Directly in front of it is the latter end of the chorda (ch).

While these important processes are taking place in the axial part of the dorsal shield, its external form also is changing. The oval form (Fig. 120) becomes like the sole of a shoe or sandal, lyre-shaped or finger biscuit-shaped (Fig. 133). The middle third does not grow in width as quickly as the posterior, and still less than the anterior third; thus the shape of the permanent body becomes somewhat narrow at the waist. At the same time the oval form of the germinative area returns to a circular shape, and the inner pellucid area separates more clearly from the opaque outer area (Fig. 134 a). The completion of the circle in the area marks the limit of the formation of blood-vessels in the mesoderm.

---

**Fig. 132.—Longitudinal section of the hinder end of a chick.** (From Balfour.) sp medullary tube, connected with the terminal gut (pag) by the neurenteric canal (ne), ch chorda, pr neurenteric (or Hensen's) knot, al allantois, ep ectoderm, hy entoderm, so parietal layer, sp visceral layer, an amnion.

**Fig. 133.—Germinal area or germinal disk of the hare with sole-shaped embryonic shield, magnified about ten times.** The clear circular field (d) is the opaque area. The pellucid area (c) is lyre-shaped, like the embryonic shield itself (b). In its axis is seen the dorsal furrow or medullary furrow (a). (From Bischoff.)
Fig. 134. — Embryo of the opossum, sixty hours old, four mm. in diameter. (From Selenka.) k the globular embryonic vesicle, a the round germinal area, b limit of the ventral plates, r dorsal shield, r its fore part, u the first primitive segment, ch chorda, chr its fore-end, pr primitive groove (mouht).

Fig. 135. — Sandal-shaped embryonic shield of a hare of eight days, with the fore part of the germinal area {ap opaque, ap pellucid area}. (From Külliker.) rf dorsal furrow, in the middle of the medullary plate, k, pr primitive groove (mouht), s1z dorsal (stem) zone, pv ventral (parietal) zone. In the narrow middle part the first three primitive segments may be seen.

Fig. 136. — Human embryo at the sandal-stage, two mm. long, from the end of the second week, magnified twenty-five times. (From Count Spec.)
The characteristic sandal-shape of the dorsal shield, which is determined by the narrowness of the middle part, and which is compared to a violin, lyre, or shoe sole, persists for a long time in all the amniotes. All mammals, birds, and reptiles have substantially the same construction at this stage, and even for a longer or shorter period after the division of the primitive segments into the coelom-folds has begun (Fig. 135). The human embryonic shield assumes the sandal-form in the second week of development; towards the end of the week our sole-embryo has a length of about one line or two millimetres (Fig. 136). (Cf. Plates IV. and V.)

The complete bilateral symmetry of the vertebrate body is very early indicated in the oval form of the embryonic shield (Fig. 120) by the median primitive streak; in the sandal-form it is even more pronounced (Figs. 134-138). The axial organs of the middle plane (the primitive streak behind, the medullary tube in front, and the chorda underneath) are still more clearly differentiated in the sole-shaped embryonic shield, and so are the lateral organs that develop symmetrically to the right and left of them. In these lateral organs of the embryonic shield a darker central and a lighter peripheral zone become more obvious; the former is called the stem-zone (Fig. 137 stz),
SANDAL-EMBRYOS OF SAUROPSIDA

The Evolution of Man. V. Ed.

Pl. IV.

E Lizard (lacerta)
C Tortoise (chelonia)
H Hen (gallus)
and the latter the parietal zone (*pz*); from the first we get the dorsal and from the second the ventral half of the body-wall.

The stem-zone of the amniote embryo would be called more appropriately the dorsal zone or dorsal shield; from it develops the whole of the dorsal half of the later body (or permanent body)—that is to say, the dorsal body (*episoma*). Again, it would be better to call the "parietal zone" the ventral zone or ventral shield; from it develop the ventral "lateral plates," which afterwards separate from the embryonic vesicle and form the ventral body (*hyposoma*)—that is to say, the ventral half of the permanent body, together with the body-cavity and the gastric canal that it encloses.

The sole-shaped germinal shields of all the amniotes are still, at the stage of construction which Fig. 137 illustrates in the hare and Fig. 138 in the opossum, so like each other that we can either not distinguish them at all or only by means of quite subordinate peculiarities in the size of the various parts. Moreover, the human sandal-shaped embryo cannot at this stage be distinguished from those of other mammals, and it particularly resembles that of the hare. I have given on Plates IV. and V. the sandal-shaped embryos of six different amniotes for the purpose of comparison, and have reduced them to the same size; all of them are highly magnified. Plate IV. shows the sandal-shaped embryonic shield (at three stages of development) of three of the sauropsids: *E* lizard (*lacerta*), *C* tortoise (*chelonia*), *H* hen (*gallus*). Plate V. gives the embryos of three mammals: *S* pig (*sus*), *K* hare (*lepus*), *M* man (*homo*).

On the other hand, the outer form of these flat sandal-shaped embryos is very different from the corresponding form of the holoblastic lower animals, especially the acrania (amphioxus). Nevertheless, the body is just the same in the essential features of its structure as that we find in the chordula of the latter (Figs. 86–89), and in the segmented embryonic forms which immediately develop from it. The striking external difference is here again due to the fact that in the palingenetic embryos of the amphioxus (Figs. 86, 87) and the amphibia
(Figs. 88, 89) the gut-wall and body-wall form closed tubes from the first, whereas in the cenogenetic embryos of the amniotes they are forced to expand leaf-wise on the surface owing to the great extension of the food-yolk.

Fig. 138.—Sandal-shaped embryonic shield of an opossum (didelphys), three days old. (From Selenka.) (Back view from above.) stz stem-zone or dorsal shield (with eight pairs of primitive segments), pz parietal or ventral zone, ap pellucid area, ao opaque area, hh halves of the heart, v fore-end, h hind-end. In the median line we see the chorda (ch) through the transparent medullary tube (m). u primitive segment, pr primitive streak (or primitive mouth).

It is all the more notable that the early separation of dorsal and ventral halves takes place in the same rigidly hereditary fashion in all the vertebrates. In both the acrania and the craniota the dorsal body is about this period separated
from the ventral body. In the middle part of the body this division has already taken place by the construction of the axial chorda between the dorsal nerve-tube and the ventral canal. But in the outer or lateral part of the body it is only brought about by the division of the cœlom-pouches into two sections by a frontal constriction—a dorsal episomite (dorsal segment or provertebra) and a ventral hyposomite (or ventral segment). In the amphioxus each of the former makes a muscular pouch, and each of the latter a sex-pouch or gonad. (Cf. the transverse section of the vertebrate, Figs. 104, 105, and Figs. 3-7 on Plate VI.)

These important processes of differentiation in the mesoderm, which we will consider more closely in the next Chapter, proceed step by step with interesting changes in the ectoderm, while the entoderm changes little at first. We can study these processes best in transverse sections, made vertically to the surface through the sole-shaped embryonic shield. Such a transverse section of a chick-embryo, at the end of the first day of incubation, shows the gut-gland layer as a very simple epithelium, which is spread like a leaf over the outer surface of the food-yolk (Fig. 139 dd). The chorda (ch) has separated from the dorsal middle line of the entoderm; to the right and left of it are the two halves of the mesoderm, or the two cœlom-folds. A narrow cleft in the latter indicates the body-cavity (vēh); this separates the two plates of the cœlom-pouches, the lower (visceral) and upper (parietal). The broad dorsal furrow (Rf) formed by the medullary plate (m) is still wide open, but is divided from the lateral horn-plate (h) by the parallel medullary swellings.

As the medullary swellings rise and bend towards each other (Fig. 140 m), one of these parallel longitudinal furrows, the lateral furrow (sulcus lateralis), is formed in the mesoderm on each side. In this lateral furrow we find at first the pro-renal duct (Fig. 141 ung). As the lateral furrow cuts completely through the middle layer, this falls into two sections: the inner or middle part (v) is the primitive segment piece, which forms the greater part of the stem-zone, and afterwards
divides by articulation into the chain of somites (in Figs. 137 and 138 with eight pairs of somites already). The outer or lateral section is the lateral plate (Fig. 140 sp); when we look at it from above it appears as the parietal zone, and afterwards divides into the two fibrous layers. In the fore half of the embryonic shield, which corresponds to the later

![Diagram](image-url)

**Fig. 139.**—Transverse section of the embryonic shield of a chick, at the end of the first day of incubation. (From Kölliker.) h horn-plate, m medullary plate, forming the dorsal furrow (Rf), ch chorda, wch coelom-cleft, wdp dorsal part of the mesoderm, sp ventral part (lateral plates), dd gut-gland layer.

head, there is no separation between the inner provertebral mass and the outer lateral plates. The median innermost part of the lateral plates, which touches the primitive segment piece or provertebral plate, is called the middle plate (Fig. 141, mp). Underneath it we find the first two blood-vessels, the primitive aortas (ao).

During these processes important changes are taking place in the outer germinal layer (the "skin-sense layer"). The continued rise and growth of the dorsal swellings causes

![Diagram](image-url)

**Fig. 140.**—Transverse section of the embryonic disk of a chick at the end of the first day of incubation, a little more advanced than Fig. 139, magnified about twenty times. The edges of the medullary plate (m), the medullary swellings (w), which separate the medullary from the horn-plate (h), are bending towards each other. At each side of the chorda (ch) the primitive segment plates (u) have separated from the lateral plates (sp). A gut-gland layer. (From Remak.)

their higher parts to bend together at their free borders, approach nearer and nearer (Fig. 140 w), and finally unite. Thus in the end we get from the open dorsal furrow, the upper cleft of which becomes narrower and narrower, a closed cylindrical tube (Fig. 141 mr). This tube is of the utmost importance; it is the first rudiment of the central nervous
system, the brain and spinal marrow, the medullary tube (tubus medullaris). This ontogenetic fact was formerly looked upon as very mysterious. We shall see presently that in the light of the theory of descent it is a thoroughly natural process. The phylogenetic explanation of it is that the central nervous system is the organ by means of which all intercourse with the outer world, all psychic action and sense-perception, are accomplished; hence it was bound to develop originally from the outer and upper surface of the body, or from the epidermis. The medullary tube afterwards separates completely from the outer germinal layer, and is surrounded by the middle parts of the provertebræ and forced inwards (Fig. 151). The remaining portion of the skin-sense layer (Fig. 141 h) is now called the horn-plate or

Fig. 141. Transverse section of the embryonic shield (of a chick, on the second day of incubation), magnified about one hundred times. (From Kölliker.) h horn-plate, mr medullary tube, ung prorenal duct, un primitive segments, hpl skin-fibre layer, mp middle plate, df gut-fibre layer, sp coelom-folds, ao primitive aorta, dd gut-gland layer.

horn-layer, because from it is developed the whole of the outer skin or epidermis, with all its horny appendages (nails, hair, etc.). (Cf. Plates VI. and VII. and the explanation.)

A totally different organ, the prorenal (primitive kidney) duct (ung), is found to be developed at an early stage from the ectoderm. This is originally a quite simple, tube-shaped, lengthy duct, or straight canal, which runs from front to rear at each side of the provertebra (on the outer side, Fig. 141, ung). It originates, it seems, out of the horn-plate at the side of the medullary tube, in the gap that we find between the provertebral and the lateral plates. The prorenal duct is visible in this gap even at the time of the severance of the medullary tube from the horn-plate. Other observers think that the first trace of it does not come from the skin-sense layer, but the skin-fibre layer.
The inner germinal layer, or the gut-fibre layer (Fig. 141 \textit{dd}), remains unchanged during these processes. A little later, however, it shows a quite flat, groove-like depression in the middle line of the embryonic shield, directly under the chorda. This depression is called the gastric groove or furrow. This at once indicates the future lot of this germinal layer. As this ventral groove gradually deepens, and its lower edges bend towards each other, it is formed into a closed tube, the \textit{alimentary canal}, in the same way as the medullary groove grows into the medullary tube. The gut-fibre layer (Fig. 142 \textit{f}), which lies on the gut-gland layer \textit{(d)}, naturally follows it in its folding. Moreover, the incipient gut-wall consists from the first of two layers, internally the gut-gland layer and externally the gut-fibre layer.

The formation of the alimentary canal resembles that of the medullary tube to this extent—in both cases a straight groove or furrow arises first of all in the middle line of a flat layer. The edges of this furrow then bend towards each other, and join to form a tube (Fig. 142). But the two processes are really very different. The medullary tube closes in its whole length, and forms a cylindrical tube, whereas the alimentary canal remains open in the middle, and its cavity continues for a long time in connection with the cavity of the embryonic vesicle. The open connection between the two cavities is only closed at a very late stage, the construction of the navel. The closing of the medullary tube is effected from both sides, the edges of the groove joining together from right and left. But the closing of the alimentary canal is not only effected from right and left, but also from front and rear, the edges of the ventral groove growing together from every side towards the navel. Throughout the three higher classes of vertebrates the whole of this process of the secondary construction of the gut is closely connected with the formation of the navel, or with the separation of the embryo from the yolk-sac or umbilical vesicle. (Cf. Fig. 108, and Plate VII., Figs. 14, 15.)

In order to get a clear idea of this, we must understand carefully the relation of the embryonic shield to the germinative
area and the embryonic vesicle. This is done best by a comparison of the five stages which are shown in longitudinal section in Figs. 143-147. The embryonic shield (c), which at first projects very slightly over the surface of the germinative area, soon begins to rise higher above it, and to separate from the embryonic vesicle. At this point the embryonic shield, looked at from the dorsal surface, shows still the original simple sandal-shape (Figs. 135-138). We do not yet see any trace of articulation into head, neck, trunk, etc., or limbs. But the embryonic shield has increased greatly in

![Diagram of embryonic disk](image)

**Fig. 142.** Three diagrammatic transverse sections of the embryonic disk of the higher vertebrate, to show the origin of the tubular organs from the bending germinal layers. In Fig. A the medullary tube (n) and the alimentary canal (a) are still open grooves. In Fig. B the medullary tube (n) and the dorsal wall are closed, but the alimentary canal (a) and the ventral wall are closed; the prorenal ducts (u) are cut off from the horn-plate (h) and internally connected with segmental prorenal canals. In Fig. C both the medullary tube and the dorsal wall above and the alimentary canal and ventral wall below are closed. All the open grooves have become closed tubes; the primitive kidneys are directed inwards. The figures have the same meaning in all three figures: h skin-sense layer, n medullary tube, u prorenal ducts, x axial rod, s primitive-vertebra, r dorsal wall, b ventral wall, c body-cavity or celoma, f gut-fibre layer, t primitive artery (aorta), v primitive vein (subin testinale vein), d gut-fibre layer, a alimentary canal. (Cf. Plates VI. and VII.)

thickness, especially in the anterior part. It now has the appearance of a thick, oval swelling, strongly curved over the surface of the germinative area. It begins to sever completely from the embryonic vesicle, with which it is connected at the ventral surface. As this severance proceeds, the back bends more and more; in proportion as the embryo grows the embryonic vesicle decreases, and at last it merely hangs as a small vesicle from the belly of the embryo (Fig. 147 ds). In consequence of the growth-movements which cause this
Figs. 143-147.—Five diagrammatic longitudinal sections of the maturing mammal embryo and its envelopes. In Figs. 143-146 the longitudinal section passes through the sagittal or middle plane of the body, dividing the right and left halves; in Fig. 147 the embryo is seen from the left side. In Fig. 143 the tufted prochorion (dd') encloses the germinal vesicle, the wall of which consists of the two primary layers. Between the outer (a) and inner (i) layer the middle layer (m) has been developed in the region of the germinative area. In Fig. 144 the embryo (e) begins to separate from the embryonic vesicle (ds), while the wall of the amnion-fold rises about it (in front as head-sheath, ks, behind as tail-sheath, ss). In Fig. 145 the edges of the amniotic fold (am) rise together over the back of the embryo, and form the amniotic cavity (ab); as the embryo separates more completely from the embryonic vesicle (ds) the alimentary canal (dd) is formed, from the hinder end of which the allantois grows (al). In Fig. 146 the allantois is larger; the
severance, a groove-shaped depression is formed at the surface of the vesicle, the \textit{limiting furrow}, which surrounds the vesicle in the shape of a pit, and a circular mound or dam (Fig. 144 \textit{ks}) is formed at the outside of this pit by the elevation of the contiguous parts of the germinal vesicle.

In order to understand clearly this important process, we may compare the embryo to a fortress with its surrounding rampart and trench. The ditch consists of the outer part of the germinative area, and comes to an end at the point where the area passes into the vesicle. The important fold of the middle germinal layer that brings about the formation of the body-cavity proceeds peripherally beyond the borders of the embryo over the whole germinative area. At first this middle layer reaches as far as the germinative area; the whole of the rest of the embryonic vesicle consists in the beginning only of the two original limiting layers, the outer and inner germinal layers. Hence, as far as the germinative area extends the germinal layer splits into the two plates we have already recognised in it, the outer skin-fibre layer and the inner gut-fibre layer. These two plates diverge considerably, a clear fluid gathering between them (Fig. 145 \textit{am}). The inner plate, the gut-fibre layer, remains on the inner layer of the embryonic vesicle (on the gut-gland layer). The outer plate, the skin-fibre layer, lies close on the outer layer of the germinative area, or the skin-sense layer, and separates together with this from the embryonic vesicle. From these two united outer plates is formed a continuous membrane. This is the circular mound that rises higher and higher round the whole embryo, and at last joins above it (Figs. 144–147 \textit{am}). To return to our illustration of the fortress, we

\textit{yolk-sac (ds) smaller. In Fig. 147 the embryo shows the gill-clefts and the outline of the two legs; the chorion has formed branching villi (tufts). In all four figures} e = embryo, a = outer germinal layer, \textit{m} = middle germinal layer, \textit{i} = inner germinal layer, \textit{am} = amnion (\textit{ks} = head-sheath, \textit{ss} = tail-sheath), \textit{ah} = amniotic cavity, \textit{as} = amniotic sheath of the umbilical cord, \textit{kh} = embryonic vesicle, \textit{ds} = yolk-sac (umbilical vesicle), \textit{dg} = vitelline duct, \textit{df} = gut-fibre layer, \textit{dd} = gut-gland layer, \textit{al} = allantois, \textit{hl} = heart, \textit{d} = vitelline membrane (ovolemma or prochorion), \textit{t} = tufts or villi of same, \textit{sh} = serous membrane (serolemma), \textit{st} = tufts of same, \textit{ch} = chorion, \textit{che} = tufts or villi, \textit{st} = terminal vein, \textit{r} = pericoelom or serocoelom (the space, filled with fluid, between the amnion and chorion).} (From \textit{Külliker.}) (Cf. Plate VII., Figs. 14 and 15.)
must imagine the circular rampart to be extraordinarily high and towering far above the fortress. Its edges bend over like the combs of an overhanging wall of rock that would enclose the fortress; they form a deep hollow, and at last join together above. In the end the fortress lies entirely within the hollow that has been formed by the growth of the edges of this large rampart. (Cf. Figs. 148-152 and Plate VII., Fig. 14.)

As the two outer layers of the germinative area thus rise in a fold about the embryo, and join above it, they come at last to form a spacious sac-like membrane about it. This envelope takes the name of the germinative membrane, or water-membrane, or amnion (Fig. 147 am). The embryo floats in a watery fluid, which fills the space between the embryo and the amnion, and is called the amniotic fluid (Figs. 146, 147 ah). We will deal with the significance of this remarkable formation later on (Chapter XV.). For the moment it does not interest us, as it has no direct relation to the construction of the body.

Among the various appendages which we shall have to discuss later we will only mention, in passing, the allantois and the yelk-sac. The allantois, or the urinary sac (Figs. 145, 146 al), is a pear-shaped vesicle that grows from the hindermost part of the alimentary canal; its outermost section forms, with its vessels, the foundation of the placenta. In front of the allantois the yelk-sac or umbilical vesicle (ds), the remainder of the original embryonic vesicle, starts from the open belly of the embryo (Fig. 143 kh). In more advanced embryos, in which the gastric wall and the ventral wall are nearly closed, it hangs out of the navel-opening in the shape of a small vesicle with a stalk (Figs. 146, 147, ds). Its wall consists of two layers, the gut-gland layer within and the gut-fibre layer without. Hence it is a vesicular appendage of the alimentary canal proper, an embryonic "gastric gland." The more the embryo grows, the smaller becomes the vitelline (yelk) sac or lecithoma. At first the embryo looks like a small appendage of the large embryonic vesicle.
Afterwards it is the yolk-sac, or the remainder of the embryonic vesicle, that seems a small pouch-like appendage of the embryo (Fig. 147 ds). It ceases to have any significance in the end. The very wide opening, through which the gastric cavity at first communicates with the umbilical vesicle, becomes narrower and narrower, and at last disappears altogether. The navel, the small pit-like depression that we find in the developed man in the middle of the abdominal wall, is the spot at which the remainder of the embryonic vesicle (the umbilical vesicle) originally entered into the ventral cavity, and joined on to the growing gut. (Cf. Figs. 14 and 15 on Plate VII.)

The origin of the navel coincides with the complete closing of the external ventral wall. In the amniotes the ventral wall originates in the same way as the dorsal wall. Both are formed substantially from the skin-fibre layer, and externally covered with the horn-plate, the peripheral section of the skin-sense layer. Both come into existence by the conversion of the four flat germinal layers of the embryonic shield into a double tube by folding from opposite directions; above, at the back, we have the vertebral canal which encloses the medullary tube, and below, at the belly, the wall of the body-cavity which contains the alimentary canal (Fig. 142).

We will consider the formation of the dorsal wall first and that of the ventral wall afterwards (Figs. 148–152). In the middle of the dorsal surface of the embryo there is originally, as we already know, the medullary (mr) tube directly underneath the horn-plate (h) from the middle part of which it has been developed. Later, however, the provertebral plates (uw) grow over from the right and left between these originally connected parts (Figs. 150, 151). The upper and inner edges of the two provertebral plates push between the horn-plate and medullary tube, force them away from each other, and finally join between them in a seam that corresponds to the middle line of the back. The coalescence of these two dorsal plates and the closing in the middle of the dorsal wall take place in the same way as the medullary tube, which is
henceforth enclosed by the vertebral tube. Thus is formed the dorsal wall, and the medullary tube takes up a position inside the body. In the same way the provertebral mass grows afterwards round the chorda, and forms the vertebral column. Below this the inner and outer edge of the provertebral plate splits on each side into two horizontal plates, of which the upper pushes between the chorda and medullary tube, and the lower between the chorda and gastric tube. As

---

Figs. 148-151.—Transverse sections of embryos (of chicks). Fig. 148 of the second, Fig. 149 of the third, Fig. 150 of the fourth, and Fig. 151 of the fifth day of incubation. Figs. 148-150 from Kölliker, magnified about 100 times; Fig. 151 from Remak, magnified about twenty times. \( h \) horn-plate, \( mr \) medullary tube, \( un \) prorenal duct, \( un \) prorenal vesicles, \( hp \) skin-fibre layer, \( m = mw = mp \) muscle-plate, \( nwh \) provertebral plate (\( wh \) cutaneous rudiment of the body of the vertebra, \( wb \) of the arch of the vertebra, \( wy \) the rib or transverse continuation), \( nwh \) provertebral cavity, \( ch \) axial rod or chord, \( sh \) chorda-sheath, \( bh \) ventral wall, \( g \) hind and \( v \) fore root of the spinal nerves, \( a \) amnion fold, \( p \) body-cavity or celoma, \( df \) gut-fibre layer, \( ao \) primitive aortas, \( sa \) secondary aorta, \( ce \) cardinal veins, \( d = dd \) gut-gland layer, \( dr \) gastric groove. In Fig. 148 the larger part of the right half, in Fig. 149 the larger part of the left half, of the section is emitted. Of the yolk-sac or remainder of the embryonic vesicle only a small piece of the wall is indicated below. (Cf. the sections in Plate VI., Figs. 3–8.)
the plates meet from both sides above and below the chorda, they completely enclose it, and so form the tubular, outer chord-sheath, the skeleton-forming sheath from which the
vertebral column is formed (perichorda, Fig. 142 C, s; Figs. 150 wh, 151). (Cf. Figs. 3-8 on Plate VI. and the following Chapters.)

We find below in the construction of the ventral wall precisely the same processes as in the formation of the dorsal wall (Fig. 142 b, Fig. 149 hp, Fig. 151 bh). It is formed on the flat embryonic shield of the amniotes from the upper plates of the parietal zone, or the parietal lamella of the lateral plates, which is covered with the horn-plate. The right and left parietal plates bend downwards towards each other, and grow round the gut in the same way as the gut itself closes. The outer part of the lateral plates forms the ventral wall or the lower wall of the body, the two lateral plates bending considerably on the inner side of the amniotic fold, and growing towards each other from right and left. While the alimentary canal is closing, the body-wall also closes on all sides. Hence the ventral wall, which embraces the whole ventral cavity below, consists of two parts, two lateral plates that bend towards each other. These approach each other all along, and at last meet at the navel. We ought, therefore, really to distinguish two navels, an inner and an outer one. The internal or intestinal navel is the definitive point of the closing of the alimentary wall, which puts an end to the open communication between the ventral cavity and the cavity of the yolk-sac (Fig. 108). The external or cutaneous navel is the definitive point of the closing of the ventral wall; this is visible in the developed body as a small depression. In each case two secondary germinal layers take part in the coalescence—in the gut-wall the gut-gland layer and gut-fibre layer; in the ventral wall the skin-fibre layer and skin-sense layer.

With the formation of the internal navel and the closing of the alimentary canal is connected the formation of two cavities which we call the capital and the pelvic sections of the visceral cavity. As the embryonic shield lies flat on the wall of the embryonic vesicle at first, and only gradually separates from it, its fore and hind ends are independent in the beginning; on the other hand, the middle part of the
ventral surface is connected with the yolk-sac by means of the vitelline or umbilical duct (Fig. 152 m). This leads to a notable curving of the dorsal surface; the head-end bends downwards towards the breast and the tail-end towards the belly. We see this very clearly in the excellent old diagrammatic illustration given by Baer (Fig. 152), a median longitudinal section of the embryo of the chick in which the dorsal body or episoma is deeply shaded. The embryo seems to be trying to roll up, like a hedgehog protecting itself from its pursuers. This pronounced curve of the back

![Median longitudinal section of the embryo of a chick (fifth day of incubation), seen from the right side (head to the right, tail to the left). Dorsal body (episoma) dark, with convex outline, d gut, e mouth, a anus, l lungs, h liver, g mesentery, v auricle of the heart, k ventricle of the heart, b arch of the arteries, t aorta, e yolk-sac, m vitelline (yolk) duct, u allantois, r pedicle (stalk) of the allantois, n amnion, w amniotic cavity (amniocoele), s serous membrane. (From Baer.)](image-url)

is due to the more rapid growth of the convex dorsal surface, and is directly connected with the severance of the embryo from the yolk-sac. At the head there is no division of skin-fibre layer from gut-fibre layer, as there is in the trunk, but the two remain joined, and are called the "head-plates." As these head-plates release themselves at an early stage from the surface of the germinative area, and grow, first downwards towards the surface of the embryonic vesicle and then backwards towards its passage into the alimentary groove, a small cavity is formed within the head-part—this represents
the foremost and blindly closed part of the gut. It is the small "head-cavity of the gut" (Fig. 153, above \(d\)); its opening in the middle gut is called the "fore entrance of the gut" (Fig. 153 at \(d\)). It corresponds to the branchial gut of the amphioxus, which nearly occupies the fore half of the body. The tail-end bends forward to the ventral side in just the same way; this causes the ventral wall to enclose a similar small cavity, the pelvic cavity of the gut, the hind end of which is closed. Its opening in the middle gut is called the "hind entrance of the gut."

As a result of these processes the embryo attains a shape that may be compared to a wooden shoe, or, better still, to an overturned canoe. Imagine a canoe or boat with both ends rounded and a small covering before and behind; if this canoe is turned upside down, so that the curved keel is uppermost, we have a fair picture of the canoe-shaped embryo (Fig. 152). The upturned convex keel corresponds to the middle line of the back; the small chamber underneath the fore-deck represents the capital cavity, and the small chamber under the rear-deck the pelvic chamber of the gut (cf. Fig. 145).

The embryo now, as it were, presses into the outer surface of the embryonic vesicle with its free ends, while it moves away from it with its middle part. As a result of this change the yelk-sac becomes henceforth only a pouch-like outer
appendage at the middle of the ventral wall. The ventral appendage, growing smaller and smaller, is afterwards called the umbilical (navel) vesicle. (Cf. Figs. 146, 147 as; Fig. 151 and Plate VII., Figs. 14, 15.) The cavity of the yolk-sac or umbilical vesicle communicates with the corresponding visceral cavity by a wide opening, which gradually contracts into a narrow and long canal, the vitelline (yolk) duct (ductus vitellinus, Fig. 152 m). Hence, if we were to imagine ourselves in the cavity of the yolk-sac, we could get from it through the yolk-duct into the middle and still wide open part of the alimentary canal. If we were to go forward from there into the head-part of the embryo, we should reach the capital cavity of the gut, the fore-end of which is closed up. Hence the first structure of the alimentary canal consists now of three different sections: (1) The capital cavity, which opens behind (through the fore-opening of the gut) into the middle gut; (2) the middle cavity, which opens below (through the vitelline duct) into the yolk-sac; and (3) the pelvic cavity, which opens outwards (by the hind aperture of the gut) into the middle gut.

The reader will ask: "Where are the mouth and the anus?" These are not at first present in the embryo. The whole of the primitive gut-cavity is completely closed, and is merely connected in the middle by the vitelline duct with the equally closed cavity of the embryonic vesicle (Fig. 145). The two later apertures of the alimentary canal—the anus and the mouth—are secondary constructions, formed from the outer skin. In the horn-plate, at the spot where the mouth is found subsequently, a pit-like depression is formed, and this grows deeper and deeper, pushing towards the blind fore-end of the capital cavity; this is the mouth-pit. In the same way, at the spot in the outer skin where the anus is afterwards situated a pit-shaped depression appears, grows deeper and deeper, and approaches the blind hind-end of the pelvic cavity; this is the anus-pit. In the end these pits touch with their deepest and innermost points the two blind ends of the primitive alimentary canal, so that they are now only separated from them by thin membranous partitions.
This membrane finally disappears, and henceforth the alimentary canal opens in front at the mouth and in the rear by the anus (Figs. 146, 152). Hence at first, if we penetrate into these pits from without, we find a partition cutting them off from the cavity of the alimentary canal, which gradually disappears. The formation of mouth and anus is secondary in all the vertebrates.

The remainder of the embryonic vesicle, which we have called the umbilical vesicle or yolk-sac, becomes smaller and smaller, and at last hangs out like a little pouch from the middle of the gut by a thin pedicle, the vitelline duct (Fig. 147 ds). This vitelline duct has no permanent importance; it is afterwards, like the yolk-sac, completely atrophied and used up. Its contents are taken into the gut, while the duct itself grows. The point at which it connects with the gut is the visceral navel. Here in the end the alimentary canal closes up altogether. (Cf. Chapter XV. and Fig. 154; also Plate VII., Figs. 14, 15.)

During these important processes, which lead to the
formation of the intestinal wall and ventral wall, we find a number of other interesting changes taking place in the embryonic shield of the amniotes. These relate chiefly to the prorenal ducts and the first blood-vessels. The prorenal (primitive kidney) ducts, which at first lie quite flat under the horn-plate or epiderm (Fig. 141 ung), soon back towards each

other in consequence of special growth movements (Figs. 148-150 ung). The direction they take in this corresponds to the limit between the dorsal body and the ventral body (cf. Figs. 155 and 156). While they advance between the stem-zone and parietal zone of the embryonic shield of the amniote, they depart more and more from their point of origin, and approach the gut-gland layer. In the end they lie deep in the interior, on either side of the mesentery,
underneath the chorda (Fig. 150 ung). At the same time the two primitive aortas change their position (cf. Figs. 141–150 ao); they travel inwards underneath the chorda, and there coalesce at last to form a single secondary aorta, which is found under the rudimentary vertebral column (Fig. 150 ao).

The cardinal veins, the first venous blood-vessels, also back towards each other, and eventually unite immediately above the rudimentary kidneys (Figs. 150 vc, 157 cav). In the same spot, at the inner side of the fore-kidneys, we soon see the first trace of the sexual organs. The most important part of this apparatus (apart from all its appendages) is the

---

**Fig. 157.—Transverse section of a duck-embryo with twenty-four primitive segments.** (From Balfour.) From a dorsal lateral joint of the medullary tube (spc) the spinal knots (spg) grow out between it and the horn-plate. ch chorda, ao double aorta, hy gut-gland layer, sp gut-fibre layer, with blood-vessels in section, ms muscle plate, in the dorsal wall of the myoccel (episomite). Below the cardinal vein (cav) is the prorenal duct (wd) and a segmental prorenal canal (st). The skin-fibre layer of the body-wall (so) is continued in the amniotic fold (am). Between the four secondary germinal layers and the structures formed from them there is formed embryonic connective matter with stellate cells and vascular structures. (Hertwig's "mesenchym.")
ovary in the female and the testicle in the male. Both develop from a small part of the cœlous epithelium, the cell-covering of the body-cavity, at the spot where the skin-fibre layer and gut-fibre layer touch. The connection of this embryonic gland with the prorenal ducts, which lie close to it and assume most important relations to it, is only secondary. (Cf. Chapter XXIX. and Plate VI., Figs. 4–8.)
**THIRTEENTH TABLE**

**SYNOPSIS OF THE COMPOSITION OF THE VERTEBRATE-BODY FROM DORSAL AND VENTRAL BODY, HEAD-HALF AND TRUNK-HALF**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Stem-zone&quot; (= prevertebral plates). (Animal hemisphere of the amphigastrula, Figs. 43-50.) Neural region.</td>
<td>b. Three pairs of simple organs of sense.</td>
<td>b. Three pairs of complex organs of sense.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. Ventral body. <strong>Hyposoma</strong> (= lateral plates and yolk-sac, besides the allantois in the amniote embryo).</td>
<td>II. A. Head-half of the ventral body. <strong>(Hyposoma capitale.)</strong></td>
<td>a. Head-wall permanent, with numerous gill-clefts.</td>
<td>a. Head-wall embryonal with from five to seven pairs of gill-clefts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Parietalzone&quot; (= lateral plates). (Vegetal hemisphere of the amphigastrula, Figs. 43-50.) Gastric region.</td>
<td>b. Segmental pronephridia.</td>
<td>b. Head-kidneys (pronephros).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>c. Mouth. Branchial gut and hypobranchial groove. No floating bladder or lungs.</td>
<td>c. Mouth. Gullet (jaw cavity) and thyrocidea. Floating bladder or lungs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Many-chambered heart.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b. Several segmental pronephridia.</td>
<td>b. A pair of compact kidneys.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>c. Several segmental gonades.</td>
<td>c. One pair of gonades.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Horizontal Frontal Septum between Episoma and Hyposoma; Axial, the Endoblastic Chorda—Lateral, the Ectoblastic Prorenal Duets.*
**ALPHABETICAL TABLE**

**IN EXPLANATION OF THE LETTERS ON PLATES VI. AND VII.**

N.B.—The ectoderm (skin-sense layer) is coloured orange, the dorsal mesoderm (in the episoma) blue, the ventral mesoderm (in the hyposoma) red, and the entoderm (gut-gland layer) green.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>Anus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ah</td>
<td>Amniotic cavity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al</td>
<td>Allantois (urinary sac)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>am</td>
<td>Amnion (water-vesicle)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ao</td>
<td>Aorta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>au</td>
<td>Primitive mouth (prostoma)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>Ventral muscles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bb</td>
<td>Breast-bone (sternum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>Body-cavity (celoma)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cd</td>
<td>Celom-pouches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cg</td>
<td>Gonocoel (ventral celoma)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ch</td>
<td>Axial rod (chorda)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cn</td>
<td>Myocoel (dorsal celoma)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cn</td>
<td>Neurenteric canal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ct</td>
<td>Celom-pouches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dp</td>
<td>Celom polar cells (cells of the primitive mesoderm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cx</td>
<td>Serocoel (extra-fœtal celom)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>Alimentary canal (trachus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dc</td>
<td>Large intestine (colon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dd</td>
<td>Small intestine (ileum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>df</td>
<td>Gut-fibre layer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ds</td>
<td>Yolk-sac (umbilical vesicle)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du</td>
<td>Primitive gut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>Ectoderm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>em</td>
<td>Embryo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>Womb (uterus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>Sexual glands (gonades)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gp</td>
<td>Sexual plates (embryonic epicrinal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>Horn-plate (cerablastus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hb</td>
<td>Bladder (vesica urinaria)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hbf</td>
<td>Skin-fibre layer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hhh</td>
<td>Heart-ventricle (ventriculus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hlt</td>
<td>Left (arterial) heart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hrr</td>
<td>Right (venous) heart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hvt</td>
<td>Heart-auricle (atrium)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hz</td>
<td>Heart (cor)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>Entoderm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ivv</td>
<td>Gall-bladder (vesica fellea)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>Embryonic glands (sex-glands)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ks</td>
<td>Gill-clefts (gullet-clefts)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>Corium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lb</td>
<td>Liver (hepar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lr</td>
<td>Wind-pipe (trachea)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ltu</td>
<td>Lung (pulmo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>md</td>
<td>Mammary gland (mamma)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mg</td>
<td>Stomach (stomachus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mh</td>
<td>Mouth-cavity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mp</td>
<td>Muscular plate (muscularis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>Neural or medullary tube</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n1</td>
<td>Fore-brain (cerebrum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n2</td>
<td>Intermediate brain (sphere of vision)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n3</td>
<td>Middle brain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n4</td>
<td>Cerebellum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n5</td>
<td>Hind-brain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nc</td>
<td>Brain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nr</td>
<td>Spinal marrow (medulla spinalis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>Mouth (osculum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>Pancreas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q</td>
<td>Organs of sense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r</td>
<td>Dorsal muscles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rp</td>
<td>Ribs (costa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>Skull (cranium)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sb</td>
<td>Pubic bone (os pubis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sh</td>
<td>Gullet (pharynx)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sk</td>
<td>Skeleton-plate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sr</td>
<td>Oesophagus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>Mesentery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>Prorenal duct (nephroductus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ns</td>
<td>Prorenal tubes (pronephridia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ur</td>
<td>Prorenal groove (nephrosulcus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nw</td>
<td>Primitive segments (provertebral somites)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v</td>
<td>Rudimentary vein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vc</td>
<td>Cardinal veins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vg</td>
<td>Vagina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w</td>
<td>Vertebra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wb</td>
<td>Vertebral arch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wk</td>
<td>Body of vertebra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
<td>Legs (limbs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z</td>
<td>Diaphragm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

325
EXPLANATION OF PLATES VI. AND VII.

The Plates VI. and VII. are intended to give a partly ontogenetic and partly phylogenetic explanation of the construction of the human body from the germinal layers. Plate VI. contains only diagrammatic transverse sections (through the saggital and the transverse axis); Plate VII. contains only diagrammatic longitudinal sections (through the sagittal and the long axis), seen from the left. The primary layers and their products are marked by the same colours throughout, the skin-sense layer orange and the gut-gland layer green. The mesoderm and its products are blue in the epimema, or dorsal body; and red in the hyposoma, or ventral body. The letters have the same meaning throughout. In all the figures the dorsal surface of the body is upward, and the ventral surface downward.

PLATE VI. DIAGRAMMATIC TRANSVERSE SECTIONS OF VERTEBRATES.

Fig. 1. Transverse section of the gastrula of a primitive vertebrate (amphioxus, cf. Fig. 10, Plate VII., longitudinal section, and Figs. 49 and 41). The whole body is an alimentary canal (d); the wall of it consists only of the two primary layers.

Fig. 2. Transverse section of the cœlomula of a primitive vertebrate (amphioxus) at the commencement of cœlomation. The dorsal wall of the primitive gut (du) divides into the rudiments of the median chorda (ch) and the two cœlom-pouches (ct). The neural tube (n) begins to separate from the corneous plate (c). (Cf. Figs. 82-84.)

Fig. 3. Transverse section of the chordula (Figs. 86-89). The axial chorda (ch) lies between the dorsal nerve-tube (n) and the ventral gut-tube (d). The cœlom-pouch still simple in the left (younger) half (ct); in the right (older) half it is divided by the lateral furrow into a dorsal muscular pouch (myoccel, cm) and a ventral sexual pouch (gonoccel, cg). mp muscle-plate, gp sexual-plate, l corium-plate, h horn-plate (outer skin).

Fig. 4. Transverse section of an ideal primitive vertebrate (prospandylus or vertebrae, p. 251). The cœlom-pouch is still simple in the left (younger) half, and opens outwardly by a prorenal canal (us) into the lateral prorenal groove (ur); in the right (older) half the dorsal part, or muscular pouch (cm), is divided from the ventral part, or sexual pouch (cg); the latter opens by a prorenal canal (us) into the prorenal duct (u), which has separated from the the horn-plate (h). The right and left body-cavities are still separate. In the gut-fibre wall we see the first blood-vessels, the arteries above (aorta, ao) and veins below (principal or subintestinal vein, v). ch chorda, n medullary tube, d alimentary tube, gp sexual plate, mp muscular plate, l corium-plate, h horn-plate.

Fig. 5. Transverse section of a primitive fish embryo (selachii). The features of construction are almost the same as in the preceding; only the right and left cœlom-pouches have united. This has given rise to the simple body-cavity (metacœl or pleuro-peritoneal cavity). The skeletal plate
also (formed from the middle part of the dorsal cælom-pouch) is more advanced, and forms independent "provertebral halves" (wk). As in Fig. 4, it is assumed as a matter of hypothesis that the cæloma originally opens outwards (to the left?) by segmental canals (pronephridia), but afterwards (to the right?) the dorsal and ventral cælom-pouches are quite separate. (Cf. the section in Fig. 156.)

Fig. 6. **Transverse section of the germinal disk of an amniote** (or higher vertebrate), with rudiments of the first organs. (Cf. the section of the chick on the second day of incubation, Fig. 141.) The medullary tube (n) and the prorenal ducts (u) are separated from the horn-plate (h). At each side of the chorda (ch) the provertebræ (wv) and the lateral plates are differentiated. Between the sl-1 fibre layer (hf) and the gut-fibre layer (df) we see the first formation of the body-cavity or cæloma (eg); underneath it are the two primary aortas (ao).

Fig. 7. **Transverse section of the germinal disk of the same amniote**, a little further advanced than Fig. 3. (Cf. the section of the chick-embryo on the third day of incubation, Fig. 148.) Medullary tube (n) and chorda (ch) already begin to be enclosed by the provertebræ (wv). The prorenal ducts (u) are already completely separated from the horn-plate (h) by the corium-plate (l). c body-cavity, ao aortas. The cutaneous layer rises up round the embryo in the shape of the amniotic fold (am); this gives rise to a space between the amniotic fold and the wall of the yolk-sac (ds), the pericell (serocælom) or extra-fetal cæloma (ex).

Fig. 8. **Transverse section of the pelvic region** and the hind limbs of the embryo of an amniote. (Cf. the section of a chick-embryo on the fifth day of incubation, in Chapter XIV.) The medullary tube (n) is already entirely enclosed by the two arches of the vertebra (wb), and the chorda and its sheath by the two halves of the body of the vertebra (wk). The corium-plate (l) has separated completely from the muscular plate (mp). The horn-plate (h) is much thickened at the point of the hind legs (x). The sexual parts (g) extend far into the body-cavity (c), and lie close to the prorenal duct (n). The alimentary tube (d) is fastened by a mesentery (t), under the chief aorta (ao) and the two cardinal veins (vc), to the dorsal surface of the body-wall. Below, in the middle of the ventral wall, we see the pedicle of the allantois (al).

Fig. 9. **Transverse section of the thoracic (chest) cavity in man** (diagrammatic). The medullary tube (n) is surrounded by the developed vertebra. From the vertebra an arched rib goes to right and left, and strengthens the breast-wall (rp). Below, on the ventral surface, the breast-bone or sternum (bb) lies between right and left ribs. Externally, over the ribs (and the intercostal muscles), lies the outer skin, formed of the corium-plate (l) and the horny plate (h). The pectoral cavity (or fore part of the cæloma, c) is, for the most part, occupied by the lungs (lu), in which the air-tubes ramify like the branches of a tree. All these open together into the single larynx (lr), which opens at the neck into the pharynx (sr). The aorta (ao) lies between the alimentary canal and the vertebral column. Between the trachea and the sternum is the heart, divided into two halves by a partition. The left half (hl) contains only arterial and the right (hr) only venous blood. Each half of the heart is divided by a valve into an auricle and ventricle. The heart is represented diagrammatically in its (phylogenetically) original symmetrical situation (in the middle of the ventral side). In the developed man and the ape the heart is unsymmetrically and obliquely placed, the apex being drawn to the left.
PLATE VII. DIAGRAMMATIC LONGITUDINAL SECTIONS OF VERTEBRATES.

(All the sections on this Plate are seen from the left.)

Fig. 10. Longitudinal section of the gastrula of a primitive vertebrate (amphioxus, cf. Fig. 1, Plate VI., transverse section, and Figs. 40, 41). The primitive gut-cavity opens at the back by the primitive mouth (au). The body consists only of the two germinal layers. At the ventral border of the primitive mouth one of the two large polar cells of the mesoderm can be seen (coelom pole-cells, cp).

Fig. 11. Longitudinal section of the chordula (Figs. 86–89). The dorsal medullary tube (u) is connected behind with the alimentary canal (du) by the neurenteric canal; the axial chorda (ch) lies between the two.

Fig. 12. Lateral view of a primitive vertebrate (prospondylus, Figs. 101–103), from the left side. The axial chorda (ch) divides the epimera from the hypomera. In the head half we have the brain (ne) above and the gill-gut (ks) below, with eight pairs of gill-clefts; in the trunk half the medullary tube (nr) and the muscle-plates (mp) above and the segmental gonads (g) below. a anus, o mouth, mh mouth-cavity, q sense organs, hz heart.

Fig. 13. Longitudinal section of a primitive fish (proselachius), a close relation of the actual sharks and the hypothetical ancestors of man. (The fins are omitted.) The medullary tube has divided into the five primitive cerebral vesicles (n₁–n₅) and the spinal marrow (nr) (cf. Figs. 15, 16). The brain is enclosed by the skull (s), and the spinal marrow by the vertebral canal (above the marrow the vertebral arches, wb; underneath it the bodies of the vertebrae, wk; under these again the source of the ribs is indicated). In front a sense-organ (q) has developed from the horny plate. The alimentary canal (d) has divided into the following parts: mouth-cavity (mh), gullet-cavity with eight pairs of gill-clefts (ks), floating-bladder (= lungs, lu), œsophagus (sr), stomach (mg), liver (lb) with the gall-bladder (iv), small intestine (dd) and rectum with anus (a). Under the rectum is the sexual gland (g); higher up, the primitive kidneys (us). Under the gullet-cavity lies the heart, with auricle (hv) and ventricle (hk).

Fig. 14. Longitudinal section of the embryo of an amniote, showing the relation of the alimentary canal to the appendages. In the middle the long-stalked yelk-sac (or umbilical vesicle, ds) arises from the alimentary canal; behind, the long-stalked allantois (al) also proceeds from the canal. Beneath the fore-gut is the heart (hz). ah amniotic cavity. The ventral part of the amnion (ah) encloses the pedicle of the lecithorn and the allantois (umbilical cord).

Fig. 15. Longitudinal section of a human embryo of five weeks (cf. Fig. 14). The amnion, the placenta, and the urachus are omitted. The medullary tube has divided into the five primitive cerebral vesicles (n₁–n₅) and the spinal marrow (nr, cf. Figs. 13 and 16). The brain is enclosed by the skull (s); under the spinal marrow is the series of the vertebral bodies (wk). The alimentary canal has been differentiated into the following sections: gullet-cavity with three pairs of gill-clefts (ks), lungs (lu), œsophagus (sr), stomach (mg), liver (lb), small intestine (dd) into which the yelk-sac (ds) opens, urinary bladder (hb), and rectum. hz heart. The remainder of the tail is still clearly seen to the right below.
Fig. 16. Longitudinal section of a developed human female body. All the parts are fully developed, but diagrammatically reduced and simplified in order to show more clearly the arrangement and the relation to the four secondary germ-layers. In the brain the five original vesicles (Fig. 15, \(n_1-n_5\)) have separated and developed in the manner peculiar to the higher mammals: 

- \(n_1\) Fore-brain or cerebrum (preponderating over and covering the other four); 
- \(n_2\) intermediate-brain or optic thalami; 
- \(n_3\) middle brain or corpora quadrigemina; 
- \(n_4\) hind-brain or cerebellum; 
- \(n_5\) after-brain or pons Varolii, passing into the spinal cord (\(sr\)).

The brain is enclosed by the skull (\(s\)), the spinal cord by the vertebral canal; above the cord are the vertebral arches and spinal processes (\(wb\)), beneath it the bodies of the vertebrae (\(wb\)).

The alimentary canal has been divided into the following successive sections: 
- mouth-cavity, 
- gullet-cavity (in which the gill-clefts, \(ks\), were formerly), 
- wind-pipe (\(lr\)) with lungs (\(lu\)), 
- oesophagus (\(sr\)), stomach (\(mg\)), liver (\(lb\)) with gall-bladder (\(iv\)), pancreas (\(p\)), small intestine (\(dd\)) and large intestine (\(dc\)), 
- rectum and anus (\(a\)).

The body-cavity or coeloma (\(c\)) is divided by the diaphragm (\(z\)) into two—the thoracic-cavity (\(e\)), in which we have the heart (\(hz\)) in front of the lungs; and the abdominal-cavity, in which are most of the viscera. In front of the rectum is the female vagina (\(vg\)), which leads into the womb (uterus, \(f\)); in this the embryo (indicated by a small embryonic vesicle, \(em\)) develops. Between the uterus and the os pubis (\(sb\)) lies the bladder (\(hh\)), the remainder of the pedicle of the allantois. The horn-plate (\(h\)) covers the entire body as the epidermis, and also lines the cavities of the mouth, the anus, the vagina, and the womb. The mammary gland (\(md\)) also was originally formed from the corneous plate.

**NOTE.**—The four colours that are used on Plates VI. and VII. in explaining human organogenesis only correspond in part to the four secondary germinal layers. The skin-sense (cutaneous sensory) layer is orange, the gut-gland (intestino-glandular) layer green. On the other hand, all organs are blue in the episoma and red in the hyposoma—whether they are products of the parietal middle layer (skin-fibre layer) or the visceral mesoderm (gut-fibre layer).
CHAPTER XIV.

THE ARTICULATION OF THE BODY

Metamerism or articulation of the body of the higher animals: division into a chain of segments or consecutive parts. Internal articulation of the vertebrates and external segmentation of the articulates resemble each other, but differ profoundly. Beginning of articulation of the amniotes in the middle of the embryonic shield. Increase of the somites or primitive segments from front to back. Their number in man. Segments of the head and of the trunk. Articulation of the amphioxus. Severance of the somites from the fore-end of the coelom-pouches. Division of each primitive segment into a dorsal (myotome) and a ventral (gonotome) half. Segmentation of the craniiotes: segmental protovertebral plates and unarticulated lateral plates. Differentiation of the metamers in the fishes, amphibia, and amniotes. Segmentation of the epihoma and hypopoma. Original metamerism of the gonades and nephridia. Articulation of the fore-gut: gill clefts and arches. Primary and secondary metamerism. Monomeric organs: heart, lungs, liver, sense-organs, limbs. Similarity of vertebrate-embryos and its phylogenetic significance.

The vertebrate stem, to which our race belongs as one of the latest and most advanced outcomes of the natural biogenetic process, is rightly placed at the head of the animal kingdom. This privilege must be accorded to it, not only because man does in point of fact soar far above all other animals, and has been lifted to the position of "lord of creation"; but also because the vertebrate organism far surpasses all the other animal-stems in size, in complexity of structure, and in the advanced character of its functions. From the point of view of both morphology and physiology, the vertebrate phylum (stem) outstrips all the other, or invertebrate, animals.

There is only one among the twelve stems of the animal kingdom that can in many respects be compared with the vertebrates, and reaches an equal, if not a greater, importance in many points. This is the stem of the articulates, composed of three classes: 1. The annelids (rain-worms, leeches, and cognate forms); 2. The crustacea (crabs and tortoises, etc.); 3. The tracheata (peripatida, myriapods, spiders, and insects). The phylum of the articulates is superior not only to the
vertebrates, but to all other animal-stems, in variety of forms, number of species, size of individuals, and general importance in the economy of nature.

When we have thus declared the vertebrates and the articulates to be the most important and most advanced of the twelve stems of the animal kingdom, the question arises whether this special position is accorded to them on the ground of a peculiarity of organisation that is common to the two. The answer is that this is really the case; it is the segmental or transverse articulation, which we may briefly call metamerism. In all the vertebrates and articulates the developed individual consists of a series of successive members (segments or metamer = "parts"); in the embryo these are called primitive segments or somites. In each of these metama we have a certain group of organs reproduced in the same arrangement, so that we may regard each segment as an individual unity, or a special "individual" subordinated to the entire personality.

The similarity of the morphological segmentation, and the consequent physiological advance in the two stems of the vertebrates and articulates, has led to the assumption of a direct affinity between them, and an attempt to derive the former directly from the latter. The annelids were supposed to be the direct ancestors, not only of the crustacea and tracheata, but also of the vertebrates. We shall see later (Chapter XX.) that this annelid theory of the vertebrates is entirely wrong, and ignores the most important differences in the organisation of the two stems. The internal articulation of the vertebrates is just as profoundly different from the external metamerism of the articulates as are their skeletal structure, nervous system, vascular system, and so on. The metamerism has been developed in a totally different way in the two stems. The unarticulated chordula (Figs. 86–89), which we have recognised as one of the chief palingenetic embryonic forms of the vertebrate group, and from which we have inferred the existence of a corresponding ancestral form for all the vertebrates and tunicates, is quite unthinkable as the stem-form of the articulates.
All articulated animals came originally from unarticulated ones. This phylogenetic principle is as firmly established as the ontogenetic fact that every articulated animal-form develops from an unarticulated embryo. But the organisation of the embryo is totally different in the two stems. The palingenetic chordula-embryo of all the vertebrates is characterised by the dorsal medullary tube, the neurenteric canal, which passes at the primitive mouth into the alimentary canal, and the axial chorda between the two. None of the articulates, either annelids or arthropods (crustacea and tracheata), show any trace of this type of organisation. Moreover, the development of the chief systems of organs proceeds in the opposite way in the two stems, as is shown in Table XIV. Hence the typical metamerism of the two stems must have been acquired independently of each other. This is not at all surprising; we find analogous cases in the stalk-articulation of the higher plants and in several groups of other animal stems—for instance, in the tape-worm and gunda (among the platodes), in the star-fish and encrinite (among the echinoderms), in the scyphostoma (among the cnidaria), and so on.

The characteristic internal articulation of the vertebrates and its importance in the organisation of the stem are best seen in the study of the skeleton. Its chief and central part, the cartilaginous or bony vertebral column, affords an obvious instance of vertebrate metamerism; it consists of a series of homogeneous cartilaginous or bony pieces, which have long been known as vertebrae (or spondyli). Each vertebra is directly connected with a special section of the muscular system, the nervous system, the vascular system, etc. Thus most of the "animal organs" take part in this vertebration. But we saw, when we were considering our own vertebrate character (in Chapter XI.), that the same internal articulation is also found in the lowest primitive vertebrates, the acrania, although here the whole skeleton consists merely of the simple chorda, and is not at all articulated. Hence the primary articulation does not proceed from the skeleton, but from the muscular system, and is clearly phylogenetically
determined by the more advanced swimming-movements of the primitive chordonia-ancestors.

It is, therefore, wrong to describe the first rudiments of the metameric in the vertebrate embryo as primitive vertebrae or protovertebrae; the fact that they have been so called for some time has led to much error and misunderstanding. Hence we shall give the name of "somites" or primitive segments to these so-called "primitive vertebrae." If the latter name is retained at all, it should only be used of the sclerotom—i.e., the small dorso-medial part of the somites from which the later vertebra does actually develop.

Articulation begins in all vertebrates at a very early embryonic stage, and this indicates the considerable phylogenetic age of the process. When the chordula (Figs. 86–89) has completed its characteristic composition, often even a little earlier, we find in the amniotes, in the middle of the sole-shaped embryonic shield, several pairs of dark square spots, symmetrically distributed on both sides of the chorda (Figs. 134–138). Transverse sections (Fig. 141 u w) show that they belong to the stem-zone (episoma) of the mesoderm, and are separated from the parietal zone (hyposoma) by the lateral folds; in section they are still quadrangular, almost square, so that they look something like dice. These pairs of "cubes" of the median mesoderm are the first traces of the primitive segments or somites, the so-called "protovertebrae" (Figs. 158–160 u w).

Among the mammals the embryos of the marsupials have three pairs of somites (Fig. 134) after sixty hours, and eight pairs after seventy-two hours (Fig. 138). They develop more slowly in the embryo of the hare; this has three somites on the eighth day (Fig. 135), and eight somites a day later (Fig. 137). In the incubated hen's egg the first somites make their appearance thirty hours after incubation begins (Fig. 158). At the end of the second day the number has risen to sixteen or eighteen (Fig. 160). The articulation of the mesodermic stem-zone, to which the somites owe their origin, thus proceeds briskly from front to rear, new transverse constrictions of the "protovertebral plates" forming continuously
and successively. The first segment, which is almost half-way down in the embryonic shield of the amniote, is the foremost of all; from this first somite is formed the first cervical vertebra with its muscles and skeletal parts. It follows from this, firstly, that the multiplication of the primitive segments proceeds backwards from the front, with a

**Figs. 158-160.** Sole-shaped embryonic disk of the chick, in three successive stages of development, looked at from the dorsal surface, magnified about twenty times, somewhat diagrammatic. Fig. 158 with six pairs of somites. Brain a simple vesicle (hb). Medullary furrow still wide open from x; greatly widened at z. mp medullary plates, sp lateral plates, v limit of gullet-cavity (sh) and fore-gut (vd). Fig. 159 with ten pairs of somites. Brain divided into three vesicles: v fore-brain, m middle-brain, h hind-brain, c heart, dv yelk-veins. Medullary furrow still wide open behind (z), mp medullary plates. Fig. 160 with sixteen pairs of somites. Brain divided into five vesicles: v fore-brain, z intermediate-brain, m middle-brain, h hind-brain, n after-brain, a optic vesicles, g auditory vesicles, c heart, dv yelk-veins, mp medullary plate, uw primitive vertebra.
constant lengthening of the hinder end of the body; and, secondly, that at the beginning of segmentation nearly the whole of the anterior half of the sole-shaped embryonic shield of the amniote belongs to the later head, while the whole of the rest of the body is formed from its hinder half. We are reminded that in the amphioxus (and in our hypothetic primitive vertebrate, Figs. 101–105) nearly the whole of the fore half corresponds to the head, and the hind half to the trunk.

The mesoderm of the amniote head develops from the undivided "head-plates," which are clearly distinguished from the protovertebral plates of the trunk by the absence of articulation. But we shall see that this simplicity of the head-plates is not original, but cenogenetic. In the lower vertebrates even the head-part seems to be clearly articulated, and composed of at least nine somites; and in the embryo of certain palingenetic fishes as many as twelve to fourteen head-segments have recently been found. But in the higher vertebrates these head-somites (like head-metameres of the higher articulates) fuse together at such an early stage that it took the acute observations of Gegenbaur (1872) to prove them by comparative anatomic methods. The proof was afterwards confirmed by others with the aid of comparative ontogeny. We shall return to the point in discussing the theory of the skull in Chapter XXVI.

The number of the metameres, and of the embryonic somites or primitive segments from which they develop, varies considerably in the vertebrates, according as the hind part of the body is short or is lengthened by a tail. In the developed man the trunk (including the rudimentary tail) consists of thirty-three metameres, the solid centre of which is formed by that number of vertebrae in the vertebral column (seven cervical, twelve dorsal, five lumbar, five sacral, and four caudal). To these we must add at least nine head-vertebrae, which originally (in all the craniota) constitute the skull. Thus the total number of the primitive segments of the human body is raised to at least forty-two; it would reach forty-five to forty-eight if (according to recent investigations)
the number of the original segments of the skull is put at twelve to fifteen. In the tailless or anthropoid apes the number of metameres is the same as in man, and only differs by one or two; but it is much larger in the long-tailed apes and most of the other mammals. In long serpents and fishes it reaches several hundred (sometimes 400).

In order to understand properly the real nature and origin of articulation in the human body and that of the higher vertebrates, it is necessary to compare it with that of the lower vertebrates, and bear in mind always the phylogenetic connection of all the members of the stem. In this the palingenetic development of the invaluable amphioxus once more furnishes the key to the complex and cenogenetically modified embryonic processes of the craniota. Here, too, it is the masterly studies of Hatschek (of Vienna) that put most clearly before us these remarkable features of the lowest vertebrate, discovered by Kowalevsky thirty-six years ago. The articulation of the amphioxus begins at an early stage—earlier than in the craniotes. The two coelom-pouches have hardly grown out of the primitive gut (Fig. 161 c) when the blind fore part of it (farthest away from the primitive mouth, u) begins to separate by a tranverse fold (s): this is the first primitive segment. Immediately afterwards the hind part of the coelom-pouches begins to divide into a series of pieces by new transverse folds (Fig. 162). The transverse constrictions of the coelom-pouches lie in a plane vertical to the long axis, and begin at their dorsal side (Fig. 163). Proceeding downwards from there, they cut each other

Fig. 161.—Embryo of the amphioxus, sixteen hours old, seen from the back. (From Hatschek.) d primitive gut, u primitive mouth, p polar cells of the mesoderm, c coelom-pouches, m their first segment, n medullary tube, i entoderm, e ectoderm, s first segment-fold.
completely through in this transverse plane, and thus break up each cœlom-sac into a series of roundish cubic vesicles. The foremost of these primitive segments (us 1) is the first and oldest; in Figs. 162 and 163 there are already five formed. They separate so rapidly, one behind the other, that eight pairs are formed within twenty-four hours of the beginning of development, and seventeen pairs twenty-four hours later. The number increases as the embryo grows and extends backwards, and new cells are formed constantly (at the primitive mouth!) from the two primitive mesodermic cells (Figs. 164–166).

This typical articulation of the two cœlom-sacs begins very early in the lancelet, before they are yet severed from the primitive gut, so that at first each segment-cavity (us) still communicates by a narrow opening with the gut, like an intestinal gland. But this opening soon closes by complete severance, proceeding regularly backwards. The closed vesicular somites then extend more, so that their upper half grows upwards like a fold between the ectoderm (ak) and neural tube (n), and the lower half between the ectoderm and alimentary canal (ah; Fig. 167 c, left half of the figure). Afterwards
the two halves completely separate, a lateral longitudinal fold cutting between them (\( m k \), right half of Fig. 167). The dorsal segments (\( s d \)) provide the muscles of the trunk the whole length of the body (Fig. 165): this cavity afterwards disappears. On the other hand, the ventral

![Fig. 164, Fig. 165, Fig. 166.](image)

**Figs. 164-166.**—*Embryo of the amphioxus, twenty-four hours old, with eight somites.* (From Hatschek.) Figs. 164 and 165 lateral view (from left). Fig. 166 seen from back. In Fig. 164 only the outlines of the eight primitive segments are indicated, in Fig. 165 their cavities and muscular walls. \( V \) fore end, \( H \) hind end, \( d \) gut, \( du \) under and \( dd \) upper wall of the gut, \( ne \) canalis neurentericus, \( v \) ventral, \( nd \) dorsal wall of the neural tube, \( np \) neuroporus, \( dv \) fore pouch of the gut, \( ch \) chorda, \( mf \) mesodermic fold, \( pm \) polar cells of the mesoderm (\( ms \)), \( e \) ectoderm.

somites give rise, from their uppermost section, to the pronephridia or prorenal canals, and from the lower to the segmental rudiments of the sexual glands or gonades. The partitions of the muscular dorsal pieces (\( myotomes \)) remain, and determine the permanent articulation of the vertebrate organism. But the partitions of the extensive ventral pieces (\( gonotomes \)) become thinner, and afterwards disappear in
part, so that their cavities run together to form the metacoel, or the simple permanent body-cavity.

The articulation proceeds in substantially the same way in the other vertebrates, the craniota, starting from the coelom-pouches. But whereas in the former case there is first a transverse division of the coelom-sacs (by vertical folds) and then the dorso-ventral division, the procedure is reversed in the craniota; in their case each of the long coelom-pouches first divides into a dorsal (primitive segment plates) and a ventral (lateral plates) section by a lateral longitudinal fold. Only the former are then broken up into primitive segments by the subsequent vertical folds; while the latter (segmented for a time in the amphioxus) remain undivided, and, by the divergence of their parietal and visceral plates, form a body-cavity that is unified from the first. In this case, again, it is clear that we must regard the features of the younger craniota as cenogenetically modified processes that can be traced palingenetically to the older acrania.

We have an interesting intermediate stage between the acrania and the fishes in these and many other respects in the cyclostoma (myxinoides and petromyzontes, cf. Chapter XXI.). In particular, the development of their muscular segments (from the dorsal somites) is nearer to that of the amphioxus than of the other vertebrates (the gnathostoma). This is connected with the fact that the cyclostoma, like the acrania, have no vertebral column, and that the articulation of the body is very simple and primitive in both groups; the formation of the head, especially, remains at a very low stage, and there are no pairs of limbs. These embryonic processes are much more complex in the fishes, with which begins the long
series of gnathostome ("jaw-mouthed") vertebrates with two pairs of extremities.

Among the fishes the selachii, or primitive fishes, yield the most important information on these and many other phylogenetic questions (Figs. 168, 169). The careful studies of Rückert, Van Wijhe, H. E. Ziegler, and others, have given us most valuable results. The products of the middle

---

**Fig. 168.** Transverse section of shark-embryos (through the region of the kidneys). (From Wijhe and Hertwig.) In Fig. 169 the dorsal segment-cavities (h) are already separated from the body-cavity (lh), but they are connected a little earlier (Fig. 168). nr neural tube, ch chorda, sch subchordal string, ao aorta, sk skeletal plate, mp muscle-plate, cp cutis-plate, wk connection of latter (growth-zone), vn primitive kidneys, ug prorenal duct, uk prorenal canals, us point where they are cut off, tr prorenal funnel, mk middle germ-layer (mk, parietal, mk, visceral), ik inner germ-layer (gut-gland layer).

The outer or lateral wall of the dorsal segment yields the cutis-plate (cp), the foundation of the connective corium. From its inner or median wall are developed the muscle-plate (mp, the rudiment of the trunk-muscles) and
the skeletal plate, the formative matter of the vertebral column \((sk)\).

In the amphibia, also, especially the water-salamander \((triton)\), we can observe very clearly the articulation of the coelom-pouches and the rise of the primitive segments from their dorsal half (cf. Fig. 94, \(A, B, C\)). The cavity of the originally simple coelom-sacs (Fig. 94 \(A\) and right half of \(B\)) remains visible both in the dorsal and ventral segments, even after the two have been separated by the lateral fold (Fig. 94 \(C\) and left half of \(B\)). A horizontal longitudinal or frontal section of this salamander-embryo (Fig. 170) shows very clearly the series of pairs of these vesicular dorsal segments, which have been cut off on each side from the ventral side-plates, and lie to the right and left of the chorda.

The metamerism of the amniotes agrees in all essential points with that of the three lower classes of vertebrates we have considered; but it varies considerably in detail, in consequence of cenogenetic disturbances that are due in the first place (like the degeneration of the coelom-pouches) to the large development of the food-yolk. As the pressure of this seems to force the two middle layers together from the start, and as
the solid structure of the mesoderm apparently belies the original hollow character of the sacs, the two sections of the mesoderm, which are at that time divided by the lateral fold—the dorsal segment-plates and ventral side-plates—have the appearance at first of solid laminae of cells (Figs. 97–100). And when the articulation of the somites begins in the sole-shaped embryonic shield, and a couple of protovertebrae are developed in succession, constantly increasing in number towards the rear, these cube-shaped somites (formerly called protovertebrae, or primitive vertebrae) have the appearance of solid dice, made up of mesodermic cells (Fig. 141). Nevertheless, there is for a time a ventral cavity, or provertebral cavity, even in these solid “protovertebrae” (Fig. 157 wwh). This vesicular condition of the provertebra is of the greatest
THE ARTICULATION OF THE BODY

phylogenetic interest; we must, according to the coelom theory, regard it as an hereditary reproduction of the vesicular dorsal somites of the amphioxus (Figs. 161–167) and the lower vertebrates (Figs. 168–170). This rudimentary "provertebral cavity" has no physiological significance whatever in the amniote-embryo; it soon disappears, being filled up with cells of the muscular plate.

Another variation in the formation of the segments in the amniotes is that the development of the muscular plates from the inner (median) wall of their somites spreads to the outer (lateral) wall; hence here the cell-stratum of the "skin-fibre layer," which lies directly below the cutis-plate (the later corium-plate, Fig. 169 c), also takes a lively part in the further growth of the muscular plate. It grows out on all sides from this point, especially downwards into the lateral plates of the ventral wall (the ventral plates).

The innermost median part of the primitive segment plates, which lies immediately on the chorda (Fig. 172 ch) and the medullary tube (m), forms the vertebral column in all the higher vertebrates (it is wanting in the lowest); hence it may be called the skeleton plate. In each of the provertebrae it is called the "sclerotome" (in opposition to the outlying muscular plate, the "myotome"). From the phylogenetic point of view the myotomes are much older than the sclerotomes. The lower or ventral part of each sclerotome (the inner and lower edge of the cube-shaped provertebra) divides into two laminæ, which grow round the chorda, and thus form the foundation of the body of the vertebra (wh). The upper lamina presses between the chorda and the medullary tube, the lower between the chorda and the alimentary canal (Fig. 142 C). As the laminæ of two opposite provertebral pieces unite from the right and left, a circular sheath is formed round this part of the chorda. From this develops the body of a vertebra—that is to say, the massive lower or ventral half of the bony ring, which is called the "vertebra" proper and surrounds the medullary tube (Figs. 173–175). The upper or dorsal half of this bony ring, the vertebral arch (Fig. 172 wb) arises in just the same
way from the upper part of the skeletal plate, and therefore from the inner and upper edge of the cube-shaped primitive vertebra. As the median upper edges of two opposing somites grow together over the medullary tube from right and left, the vertebral arch becomes closed.

The whole of the secondary vertebra, which is thus formed from the union of the skeletal plates of two provertebral pieces and encloses a part of the chorda in its body, consists at first of a rather soft mass of cells; this afterwards passes into a firmer, second, cartilaginous stage, and finally into a third, permanent, bony stage. These three stages can generally be distinguished in the greater part of the skeleton of the higher vertebrates; at first most parts of the skeleton are softer, tender, and membranous; they then become cartilaginous in the course of their development, and finally ossify.

At the head part of the embryo in the amniotes there is not generally a cleavage of the middle germinal layer into provertebral and lateral plates, but the dorsal and ventral somites are blended from the first, and form what are called "the head-plates" (Fig. 153 k). From these are formed the skull, the bony case of the brain, and the muscles and corium of the body. The skull develops in the manner of the membranous vertebral column. The right and left halves of the head curve over the cerebral vesicle, enclose the foremost part of the chorda below, and thus finally form a simple, soft, membranous capsule about the brain. This is afterwards converted into a cartilaginous primitive skull,
such as we find permanently in many of the fishes. Much later this cartilaginous skull becomes the permanent bony skull with its various parts. The bony skull in man and all the other amniotes is more highly differentiated and modified than that of the lower vertebrates, the amphibia and fishes. But as the one has arisen phylogenetically from the other, we must assume that in the former no less than the latter the skull was originally formed from the slerootomes of a number of (at least nine) head-somites.

While the typical articulation of the vertebrate body is always obvious in the episcema or dorsal body, and is clearly expressed in the metamerism of the muscular plates and vertebrae (myotomes and slerootomes), it is more latent in the hyposema or ventral body. Nevertheless, these ventral hypo-somites of the vegetal half of the body are not less important than the episcema of the animal half. The segmentation in the ventral cavity affects the following principal systems of organs: 1. The gonades or sex-glands (gonotomes); 2. The nephridia or kidneys (nephrotoomes); and 3. The head-gut with its metamerous gill-clefts (branchio-tomes). (Plate VII., Fig. 12.)

The metamerism of the hyposema is less conspicuous because in all the craniotes the gonocoels—the cavities of the ventral segments, in the walls of which the sexual products are developed—have long since coalesced, and formed a single large body-cavity, owing to the disappear-ance of the partition. This cenogenetic process is so old that the metacoei in the lateral plates of the craniota has everywhere the appearance from the first of a simple unsegmented cavity, and that the rudiment of the gonades also is almost always unsegmented. It is the more interesting to learn that, according to the important discovery of Rückert, this sexual structure is at first segmental even in the actual selachii, and the several gonotomes only blend into a simple sexual gland on either side secondarily.

Amphioxus, the sole surviving representative of the acriana, once more yields us most interesting information; in this case the sexual glands remain segmented throughout
life, and so do the ventral body-cavities. The sexually mature lancelet has, on the right and left of the gut, a series of metamerous sacs, which are filled with ova in the female and sperm in the male. These segmental gonades are originally nothing else than the real gonotomes, separate body-cavities, formed from the hyposomites of the trunk. The reason why they have hitherto generally been misunderstood, and the amphioxus has wrongly been credited with a simple body-cavity, is that the latter has been confused with the large peribranial space.

The gonades are the most important segmental organs of the hyposoma, in the sense that they are phylogenetically the oldest. We find sexual glands (as pouch-like appendages of the gastro-canal system) in most of the coelenteria, even in the cnidaria (medusa), which have no nephridia. The latter appear first (as a pair of prorenal canals or excretory tubes) in the platodes (turbellaria), and have probably been inherited from these by the articulate (annelids) on the one hand and the unarticulated prochordonia on the other, and from these passed to the articulated vertebrates. The oldest form of the renal system in this stem are the segmental pro-nephridia or the metamerous prorenal canals, in the same arrangement as Boveri found them in the amphioxus. They are small canals that lie in the frontal plane, on each side of the chorda, between the episoma and hyposoma (Fig. 176 n); their internal funnel-shaped opening leads into the various body-cavities, their outer opening is the lateral furrow of the epidermis. Originally they must have had a double function, the carrying away of the urine from the myoccel of the episomites and the release of the sexual cells from the gonoccel of the hyposomites.

The recent investigations of Rückert and Van Wijhe on the mesodermic segments of the trunk and the excretory system of the selachii show that these "primitive fishes" are closely related to the amphioxus in this further respect. The transverse section of the shark-embryo in Fig. 168 shows the dorsal and ventral halves of the cælom-pouches still openly connected. In the middle of the section, in the frontal axis,
the narrow myoccel (or cleft-like "muscular cavity" of the dorsal segment) passes by a narrow connecting channel (vb) directly into the wide gonoccel (lh) or the body-cavity of the ventral segment, from the epithelium of which sexual cells develop. The narrow connecting channel (vb) becomes the pronephridium, or prerenal canal, which carries away the excretory products of both body-cavities (the urine of the dorsal muscular cavity and the sexual cells of the ventral sexual cavity). Afterwards (Fig. 169) the two cavities are divided by a partition. Then the inner opening of the renal canal only leads into the lower ventral cavity. The outer opening was in the surface of the outer skin, probably in the lateral furrow of the epidermis, from which the prerenal duct develops in the craniotes by constriction (Fig. 171 ung). In the amphioxus, as Boveri discovered, they still open in the corresponding part of the secondary "mantle-cavity."

In other higher vertebrates, also, the kidneys develop (though very differently formed later on) from similar structures, which have been secondarily derived from the segmental pronephridia of the acrania. The parts of the mesoderm at which the first traces of them are found are usually called the middle or mesenteric plates, and their segmental parts mesomera. As the first traces of the gonades make their appearance in the cœlous epithelium of these middle plates nearer inward (or the middle) from the inner funnels of the nephro-canals, it is better to count this part of the mesoderm with the hyposoma.
The chief and oldest organ of the vertebrate hyposoma, the alimentary canal, is generally described as an unsegmented organ. But we could just as well say that it is the oldest of all the metamerous organs of the vertebrate; the double row of the coelom-pouches grows out of the dorsal wall of the gut, on either side of the chorda. In the brief period during which these segmental coelom-pouches are still openly connected with the gut, they look just like a double chain of metamerous visceral glands. But apart from this, we have originally in all vertebrates an important articulation of the fore-gut, that is wanting in the lower gut, the segmentation of the branchial gut, or "branchiomerism."

Fig. 177.—Optical longitudinal section of the primitive vertebrate (prospondylus). a aorta, af anus, au eye, d small intestine, e parietal eye (epiphysis), f floating border of skin, g auditory vesicle, gh brain, h heart, k gill-gut, ka branchial (gill) artery, kg branchial vascular arches, ks gill-clefts, l liver, ma stomach, md mouth, ms muscles, na nose (olfactory pit), o outer skin, p gullet, r spinal cord, s sexual glands (gonades), t corium, v principal vein, x chorda, y hypophysis (urinary appendage).

The gill-clefts, which originally in the older acrania pierced the wall of the fore-gut and the gill-arches that separated them, were presumably also segmental, and distributed among the various metamera of the chain, like the gonades in the after-gut and the nephridia (Fig. 177 ks). In the amphioxus, too, they are still segmentally formed. Probably there was a division of labour of the hyposomites in the older (and long extinct) acrania, in such wise that those of the fore-gut took the function of breathing and those of the after-gut reproduction. The former developed into gill-pouches, the latter into sex-pouches. There may have been pronephridia in both. Branchiomerism is so much changed in the living vertebrates, and so reduced in the amniotes, that it has been
denied altogether by some scientists. Moreover, in the amniotes their respiratory function has disappeared. Nevertheless, certain parts of them have been generally maintained in the embryo by a tenacious heredity.

At a very early stage we notice in the embryo of man and the other amniotes, at each side of the head, the remarkable and important structures which we call the gill-arches and gill-clefts (Plates VIII.–XIII., Figs. 178–181 f). They belong to the characteristic and inalienable organs of the amniote-embryo, and are found always in the same spot and with the same arrangement and structure. There are formed to the right and left in the lateral wall of the fore-gut cavity, in its foremost part, first a pair and then several pairs of sac-shaped inlets, that pierce the whole thickness of the lateral wall of the head. They are thus converted into clefts, through which one can penetrate freely from without into the gullet. The wall thickens between these branchial folds, and changes into an arch-like or sickle-shaped piece—the gill, or gullet-arch. In this the muscles and skeletal parts of the branchial gut separate; a blood-vessel arch arises afterwards on their inner side (Fig. 177 ka). The number of the branchial arches and the clefts that alternate with them is four or five on each side in the higher vertebrates (Fig. 181 d, f, f′, f″). In some of the fishes (selachii) and in the cyclostoma we find six or seven of them permanently.

These remarkable structures had originally the function of respiratory organs—gills. In the fishes the water that serves for breathing and is taken in at the mouth still always passes out by the branchial clefts at the sides of the gullet. In the higher vertebrates they afterwards disappear. The branchial arches are converted partly into the jaws, partly into the bones of the tongue and the ear. From the first gill-cleft is formed the tympanic cavity of the ear. (Cf. Plates I., VIII.–XIII., first and second row.)

The primary articulation of the vertebrate body, which proceeds from the primitive segments of the mesoderm, affects most of its chief systems of organs: in the episoma especially the muscles and skeleton, in the hyposoma the kidneys and
gonades and the branchial gut. Then there is a secondary articulation of other systems of organs, which is dependent

---

**Fig. 178.—Head of a shark embryo (pristiusurus), eight mm. long, magnified twenty times.** (From Parker.) Seen from the ventral side.

**Fig. 179.**

**Fig. 180.**

**Fig. 181.—Head of a dog embryo,** seen from the front. a the two lateral halves of the foremost cerebral vesicle, b rudimentary eye, c middle cerebral vesicle, d e first pair of gill-arches (c upper-jaw process, d lower-jaw process), f, f' second, third, and fourth pairs of gill-arches, g h i k heart (g right, h left auricle; i left, k right ventricle); l origin of the aorta with three pairs of arches, which go to the gill-arches. (From Bischoff.)
The Articulation of the Body

on and determined by the preceding one. Thus we have in the later stages the development of a segmental arrangement of the peripheral nerves and blood-vessels; the one starts from the episoma, the other from the hyposoma. Especially important is the fact that in man and all other vertebrates the psychic organ is subject to this "secondary metamerism." It is readily recognisable in the human embryo in the fourth week, the ectodermic nerve-roots connecting with the corresponding mesodermic muscle-plates of the provertebrae (Fig. 182).

There are few parts of the vertebrate organism that are not subject to metamerism, like the outer covering or integument of the body. The outer skin (epidermis) is unsegmented from the first, and proceeds from the uniformly disposed horny plate. Moreover, the underlying cutis is also not metamerous, although it develops from the segmental structure of the cutis-plates (or lateral laminae of the epishmates, Figs. 168, 169 cp). The vertebrates are strikingly and profoundly different from the articulates in these respects also.

Further, most of the vertebrates still have a number of unarticulated or monomeric organs, which have arisen locally, by adaptation of particular parts of the body to certain special functions. Of this character are the sense-organs in the episoma, and the limbs, the heart, the spleen, and the large visceral glands—lungs, liver, pancreas, etc.—in the hyposoma. The heart is originally only a local spindle-shaped enlargement of the large ventral blood-vessel or principal vein, at the point where the subintestinal passes into the branchial artery, at the limit of the head and trunk (Figs. 181, 182). The three higher sense-organs—nose, eye, and ear—were originally developed in the same form in all the craniotes, as three pairs of small depressions in the skin at the side of the head.

The organ of smell, the nose, has the appearance of a pair of small pits above the mouth-aperture, in front of the head (Fig. 180 n). The organ of sight, the eye, is found at the side of the head, also in the shape of a depression (Figs. 180 l, 181 b), to which corresponds a considerable vesicular
hollowing of the foremost cerebral vesicle on each side. Farther behind, at each side of the head, there is a third depression, the first trace of the organ of hearing (Fig. 180g).

As yet we can see nothing of the later elaborate structure of these organs, nor of the characteristic build of the face (cf. Plate I., Figs. 1-5). When the human embryo has reached this stage of
development, it can still scarcely be distinguished from that of any other higher vertebrate (cf. Plate I. and p. 356). All the chief parts of the body are now laid down: the head with the primitive skull, the rudiments of the three higher sense-organs and the five cerebral vesicles, and the gill-arches and clefts; the trunk with the spinal cord, the rudiment of the vertebral column, the chain of metameria, the heart and chief blood-vessels, and the kidneys. At this stage man is a higher vertebrate, but shows no essential morphological difference from the embryo of the mammals, the birds, the reptiles, etc. (cf. p. 356, Plates VIII.-XIII., top row). This is an ontogenetic fact of the utmost significance. From it we can gather the most important phylogenetic conclusions.

There is still no trace of the limbs. Although head and trunk are separated and all the principal internal organs are laid down, there is no indication whatever of the "extremities" at this stage; they are formed later on. Here again we have a fact of the utmost interest. It proves that the older vertebrates had no feet, as we find to-day in the lowest living vertebrates (amphioxus and the cyclostoma). The descendants of these ancient footless vertebrates only acquired extremities—two fore-legs and two hind-legs—at a much later
stage of development. These were at first all alike, though they afterwards vary considerably in structure—becoming fins (of breast and belly) in the fishes, wings and legs in the birds, fore and hind legs in the creeping animals, arms and legs in the apes and man. All these parts develop from the same simple original structure, which forms secondarily from the trunk-wall (Figs. 183, 184). They have always the appearance of two pairs of small birds, which represent at first simple roundish knobs or plates. Gradually each of these plates becomes a large projection, in which we can distinguish a small inner part and a broader outer part. The latter is the rudiment of the foot or hand, the former that of the leg or arm. The similarity of the original rudiment of the limbs in different groups of vertebrates will be seen on Plates VIII.-XIII.

How the five fingers or toes with their blood-vessels gradually differentiate within the simple fin-like structure of the limbs can be seen in the instance of the lizard in Fig. 185. They are formed in just the same way in man; in the human embryo of five weeks the five fingers can clearly be distinguished within the fin-plate (Fig. 186).

The careful study and comparison of human embryos
THE ARTICULATION OF THE BODY

with those of other vertebrates at this stage of development is very instructive, and reveals more mysteries to the impartial student than all the religions in the world put together. For instance, let us compare attentively the three successive stages of development that are represented, in twenty

\[\text{Fig. 185.—Development of the lizard's legs (\textit{lacerta agilis}), with special relation to their blood-vessels.}\]

\[1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11\] right fore-leg; \[13, 15\] left fore-leg; \[2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12\] right hind-leg; \[14, 16\] left hind-leg; \[SRV\] lateral veins of the trunk, \[U\] umbilical vein. (From \textit{F. Hochstetter}.)

different amniotes, in the six following Plates (VIII.-XIII.). When we see that as a fact twenty different amniotes of such divergent characters develop from the same embryonic form, we can easily understand that they may all descend from a common ancestor.
In the first stage of development (the first row, I.), in which the head with the five cerebral vesicles is already clearly indicated, but there are no limbs, the embryos of all the vertebrates, from the fish to man, are only incidentally or not at all different from each other. In the second stage (the

Fig. 186. Human embryo, five weeks old, eleven mm. long, seen from the right, magnified ten times. (From Russel Bardeen and Harmon Lewis.) In the undissected head we see the eye, mouth, and ear. In the trunk the skin and part of the muscles have been removed, so that the cartilaginous vertebral column is free; the dorsal root of a spinal nerve goes out from each vertebra (towards the skin of the back). In the middle of the lower half of the figure part of the ribs and intercostal muscles are visible. The skin and muscles have also been removed from the right limbs; the internal rudiments of the five fingers of the hand, and five toes of the foot, are clearly seen within the fin-shaped plate, and also the strong network of nerves that goes from the spinal cord to the extremities. The tail projects under the foot, and to the right of it is the first part of the umbilical cord.
middle row, II.), which shows the limbs, we begin to see differences between the embryos of the lower and higher vertebrates; but the human embryo is still hardly distinguishable from that of the higher mammals. In the third stage (lowest row, III.), in which the gill-arches have disappeared and the face is formed, the differences become more pronounced. These are facts of a significance that cannot be exaggerated.¹

If there is an intimate causal connection between the processes of embryology and stem-history, as we must

¹ Because they show how the most diverse structures may be developed from a common form. As we actually see this in the case of the embryos, we have a right to assume it of the stem-forms. Nevertheless, this resemblance, however great, is never a real identity. Even the embryos of the different individuals of one species are usually not really identical.
assume in virtue of the laws of heredity, several important phylogenetic conclusions follow at once from these ontogenetic facts. The profound and remarkable similarity in the embryonic development of man and the other vertebrates can only be explained when we admit their descent from a common ancestor. As a fact, this common descent is now accepted by all competent scientists; they have substituted the natural evolution for the supernatural creation of organisms.
MAMMAL EMBRYOS

The Evolution of Man V Ed

B. Marsupial
Dide'phys

S. Pig
Sus.

C. Goat
Capreolus

R. Ox
Bos
EXPLANATION OF PLATES VIII.-XIII.

Six comparative plates of twenty amniote-embryos of fifteen different orders.

The six plates VIII.-XIII. show the more or less significant similarity that exists, in respect of most important structural features, between the human embryo and the embryo of the higher vertebrates (amniotes) in the earlier periods of development. The similarity is closer the earlier the stage of development at which we compare them. It persists the longer the closer is the stem-relation between the various animals, in harmony with the “law of the ontogenetic connection of related forms” (see following Chapter).

Plates VIII., IX., and X. represent the embryos of nine different sauropsids — six reptiles and three birds — at three different stages.

Plates XI., XII., and XIII. show the embryos of eleven different mammals of the three corresponding stages. The conditions of the three different stages, represented by the three rows (I., II., III.), are chosen so as to correspond as closely as possible.

The first (top) row, I., represents an early stage, with gill-clefts, without legs. The second (middle) row, II., shows a somewhat later stage, with the first traces of the legs, still with gill-clefts. The third (bottom) row represents a still later stage, with more advanced legs, after the disappearance of the gill-clefts. The envelopes and appendages of the embryo (amnion, yolk-sac, allantois) are omitted. The whole of the sixty figures are slightly magnified, the lower ones less than the upper. They have been almost reduced to a common size for the purpose of comparison. All the embryos are looked at from the left: the head-end is upward, the tail-end below, the curved back turned to the right. The letters have the same meaning in all the sixty figures:

1. Stem-reptile (*hatteria*) D.
2. Lizard (*lacerta*) E.
3. Serpent (*culeber*) A.
4. Crocodile (*alligator*) K.
5. Tortoise (*chelone*) T.
6. River-tortoise (*trionyx*) J.
7. Hen (*gallus*) G.
8. Kiwi (*apteryx*) Y.
9. Ostrich (*struthio*) Z.
10. Sea urchin (*echidna*) V.
11. Opossum (*didelphys*) B.
12. Dolphin (*phocena*) P.
13. Pig (*sus*) S.
14. Goat (*capreolus*) C.
15. Ox (*bos*) R.
16. Dog (*canis*) H.
17. Bat (*rhinolophus*) F.
18. Hare (*lepus*) L.
19. Gibbon (*hylobates*) X.
20. Man (*homo*) M.
### FOURTEENTH TABLE

**SYNOPSIS OF THE FUNDAMENTAL ANTITHESIS IN THE ORGANISATION AND ARTICULATION OF THE VERTEBRATES AND ARTICULATES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vertebration of the Vertebrates (Acrania and Craniota)</th>
<th>Articulation of the Articulates (Annelida, Crustacea, Tracheata)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Epidermis without Cutieula, not articulated, without chitine-covering.</td>
<td>1. Epidermis with cuticular mail (composed of chitine, articulated).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Skeleton axial, with Chorda and chorda-sheath. (Internal axial skeleton.)</td>
<td>2. Skeleton segmental, without chorda and without chorda sheath. (External cuticular skeleton.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Nervous centre dorsal, originally unarticulated (spinal marrow). (Simple medullary tube.)</td>
<td>4. Nervous centre ventral, originally articulated (ventral marrow). (Double chain of ventral ganglia.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Heart ventral, arising from the ventral vessel of the vermalia.</td>
<td>5. Heart dorsa developing from the dorsal vessel of the vermalia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Nephridia, originally segmental, with myocoel-connection, and with primary prorenal duct.</td>
<td>7. Nephridia, originally segmental, without myocoel-connection, and without primary prorenal duct.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Gonades, originally segmental, formed from the visceral mesoblast.</td>
<td>8. Gonades, originally segmental, formed from the parietal mesoblast.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Body-cavities (right and left) early divided by a frontal septum into a dorsal myocoel and a ventral gonocoel (episomites and hyposomites).</td>
<td>9. Body-cavities (right and left) without frontal septum; hence no division into dorsal episomites and ventral hyposomites; no antithesis of dorsal and ventral body.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER XV.

FOETAL MEMBRANES AND CIRCULATION

The mammal-organisation of man. Man has the same structure as all the other mammals, and his embryo develops in the same way as that of the higher vertebrates. The law of the ontogenetic connection of related forms. Application of it to man. Shape and size of the human embryo in the first four weeks. The human embryo is almost completely like that of other mammals in structure in the first month. In the second month certain notable differences begin to appear. The appendages and envelopes of the human embryo. Yolk-sac or umbilical vesicle. Allantois or urinary sac. Placenta. Ventral pedicle and peculiar placentation of man and the anthropoid apes. Amnion and serolemma (serous membranes). Exocelom. The heart, the first blood-vessels, and the blood are formed from the gut-fibre layer. Vascular layer and mesenchyma. The heart separates from the wall of the fore-gut. Double structure of the heart in the amniotes cenogenetic. The first embryonic circulation in the germinative area: vitelline arteries and veins. The second embryonic circulation in the allantois: umbilical arteries and veins. Sections of human embryology.

Among the many interesting phenomena that we have encountered in the course of human embryology, there is an especial importance in the fact that the development of the human body follows from the beginning just the same lines as that of the other viviparous mammals. As a fact, all the embryonic peculiarities that distinguish the mammals from other animals are found also in man; even the ovum with its distinctive membrane (zona pellucida, Fig. 14) shows the same typical structure in all mammals (apart from the older oviparous monotremes). It has long since been deduced from the structure of the developed man that his natural place in the animal kingdom is among the mammals. Linné (1735) placed him in this class with the apes, in one and the same order (primates), in his Systema naturae. This position is fully confirmed by comparative embryology. We

see that man entirely resembles the higher mammals, and most of all the apes, in embryonic development as well as in anatomic structure. And if we seek to understand this ontogenetic agreement, in the light of the biogenetic law, we find that it proves clearly and necessarily the descent of man from a series of other mammals, and proximately from the primates. The common origin of man and the other mammals from a single ancient stem-form can no longer be questioned; nor can the immediate blood-relationship of man and the ape.

The essential agreement in the whole bodily form and inner structure is still visible in the embryo of man and the other mammals at the late stage of development at which the mammal-body can be recognised as such. (Cf. Plates VIII.-XIII., second row.) But at a somewhat earlier stage, in which the limbs, gill-arches, sense-organs, etc., are already outlined, we cannot yet recognise the mammal embryos as such, or distinguish them from those of birds and reptiles (Plates VIII.-XIII., top row). When we consider still earlier stages of development, we are unable to discover any essential difference in bodily structure between the embryos of these higher vertebrates and those of the lower, the amphibia and fishes. If, in fine, we go back to the construction of the body out of the four germinal layers, we are astonished to perceive that these four layers are the same in all vertebrates, and everywhere take a similar part in the building-up of the fundamental organs of the body. If we inquire as to the origin of these four secondary layers, we learn that they always arise in the same way from the two primary layers; and the latter have the same significance in all the metazoa (i.e., all animals except the unicellulars). Finally, we see that the cells which make up the primary germinal layers owe their origin in every case to the repeated cleavage of a single simple cell, the stem-cell or fecundated ovum.

It is impossible to lay too much stress on this remarkable agreement in the chief embryonic features in man and the other animals. We shall make use of it later on for our
monophyletic theory of descent—the hypothesis of a common
descent of man and all the metazoa from the gastraea. The
first rudiments of the principal parts of the body, especially
the oldest organ, the alimentary canal, are the same every-
where; they have always the same extremely simple form.
All the peculiarities that distinguish the various groups of
animals from each other only appear gradually in the course
of embryonic development; and the closer the relation of the
various groups, the later they are found. We may formulate
this phenomenon in a definite law, which may in a sense be
regarded as an appendix to our biogenetic law. This is the
law of the ontogenetic connection of related animal forms. It
runs: The closer the relation of two fully-developed animals
in respect of their whole bodily structure, and the nearer they
are connected in the classification of the animal kingdom, the
longer does their embryonic form retain its identity, and the
longer it is impossible (or only possible on the ground of
subordinate features) to distinguish between their embryos.
This law applies to all animals whose embryonic develop-
ment is, in the main, an hereditary summary of their
ancestral history, or in which the original form of develop-
ment has been faithfully preserved by heredity. When, on
the other hand, it has been altered by cenogenesis, or distur-
bance of development, we find a limitation of the law, which
increases in proportion to the introduction of new features by
adaptation (cf. Chapter I., pp. 8-10). Thus the apparent
exceptions to the law can always be traced to cenogenesis.
When we apply to man this law of the ontogenetic con-
nection of related forms, and run rapidly over the earliest
stages of human development with an eye to it, we notice
first of all the morphological identity of the ovum in man and
the other mammals at the very beginning (Figs. 1, 14). The
human ovum possesses all the distinctive features of the ovum
of the viviparous mammals, especially the characteristic
formation of its membrane (*zona pellucida*), which clearly
distinguishes it from the ovum of all other animals. When
the human foetus has attained the age of fourteen days, it
forms a globular vesicle (or "embryonic vesicle") of about four
millimetres in diameter. A thicker part of its border forms a simple sole-shaped embryonic shield two millimetres long (Fig. 199). On its dorsal side we find in the middle line the straight medullary furrow, bordered by the two parallel dorsal or medullary swellings (m). Behind, it passes by the neurenteric canal into the primitive gut or primitive groove. From this the invagination of the two cœlom-pouches proceeds in the same way as in the other mammals (cf. Figs. 99, 100). In the middle of the sole-shaped embryonic shield the first primitive segments immediately begin to make their appearance. At this age the human embryo cannot be distinguished from that of other mammals, such as the hare or dog.

A week later (or after the twenty-first day) the human embryo has doubled its length; it is now about five millimetres long, and, when seen from the side, shows the characteristic bend of the back, the swelling of the head-end, the first outline of the three higher sense-organs, and the rudiments of the gill-clefts, which pierce the sides of the neck (Fig. 191, III.; Plate XIII., Fig. MI). The allantois has grown out of the gut behind. The embryo is already entirely enclosed in the amnion, and is only connected in the middle of the belly by the vitelline duct with the embryonic vesicle,
which changes into the yolk-sac. There are no extremities or limbs at this stage, no trace of arms or legs. The head-end has been strongly differentiated from the tail-end; and the first outlines of the cerebral vesicles in front, and the heart below, under the fore-arm, are already more or less clearly seen. There is as yet no real face. Moreover, we seek in vain at this stage a special character that may distinguish the

human embryo from that of other mammals (cf. the figures in the top row on Plates VIII.-XIII.).

A week later (after the fourth week, on the twenty-eighth to thirtieth day of development) the human embryo has reached a length of four to five lines, or about a centimetre (Fig. 191, IV.; Plate XIII., Fig. MII). We can now clearly distinguish the head with its various parts; inside it
the five primitive cerebral vesicles (fore-brain, middle-brain, intermediate-brain, hind-brain, and after-brain); under the

**Fig. 192.—** Very young human embryo of the fourth week, six mm. long (taken from the womb of a suicide eight hours after death). (From Rabl.) 

- n nasal pits, a eye, u lower jaw, z arch of bone of tongue, k₁ and k₂ third and fourth gill-arch, h heart, s primitive segments, vg fore-limb (arm), hg hind-limb (leg), between the two the ventral pedicle.

**Fig. 193.—** Human embryo of the middle of the fifth week, nine mm. long. (From Rabl.) Letters as in Fig. 192, except sk bend of skull, ok upper jaw, hb neck-indentation.
head the gill-arches, which divide the gill-clefts; at the sides of the head the rudiments of the eyes, a couple of pits in the outer skin, with a pair of corresponding simple vesicles growing out of the lateral wall of the fore-brain (Figs. 192, 193 a). Far behind the eyes, over the last gill-arches, we see the vesicular rudiment of the auscultory organ. The rudimentary limbs are now clearly outlined—four simple buds of the shape of round plates, a pair of fore (fg) and a pair of hind legs (hg), the former a little larger than the latter. The large head bends over the trunk, almost at a right angle. The latter is still connected in the middle of its ventral side with the embryonic vesicle; but the embryo has still further severed itself from it, so that it already hangs out as the yolk-sac. The hind part of the body is also very much curved, so that the pointed tail-end is directed towards the head. The head and face-part are sunk entirely on the still open breast. The bend soon increases so much that the tail almost touches the forehead (Fig. 191, V.; Fig. 193). We may then distinguish three or four special curves on the round dorsal surface—namely, a skull-curve in the region of the second cerebral vesicle, a neck-curve at the beginning of the spinal cord, and a tail-curve at the fore-end. This pronounced curve is only shared by man and the higher classes of vertebrates (the amniotes); it is much slighter, or not found at all, in the lower vertebrates. At this age (four weeks) man has a considerable tail, twice as long as his legs. A vertical longitudinal section through the middle plane of this tail (Fig. 194) shows that the hinder end of the spinal marrow extends to the point of the tail, as also does the underlying chorda (ch), the terminal continuation of the vertebral column. Of the latter, the rudiments of the seven coccygeal vertebrae are visible—thirty-two indicates the third and thirty-six the seventh of these. Under the vertebral column we see the hindmost ends of the two large blood-vessels of the tail, the principal artery (vorta caudalis or arteria sacralis media, Ao), and the principal vein (vena caudalis or sacralis media). Underneath is the opening of the anus (an) and the urogenital sinus (S.ug). From this anatomic structure of
the human tail it is perfectly clear that it is the rudiment of an ape-tail, the last hereditary relic of a long hairy tail, which has been handed down from our tertiary primate ancestors to the present day.

It sometimes happens that we find even external relics of this tail growing. According to the illustrated works of Surgeon-General Bernhard Ornstein, of Greece, these tailed men are not uncommon; it is not impossible that they gave rise to the ancient fables of the satyrs. A great number of such cases are given by Max Bartels in his essay on "Tailed Men" (1884, in the Archiv für Anthropologie, Band XV.), and critically examined. These atavistic human tails are often mobile; sometimes they contain only muscles and fat,
sometimes also rudiments of caudal vertebrae. They attain a length of 20–25 cm. and more. Granville Harrison has very carefully studied one of these cases of "pig-tail," which he removed by operation from a six months' old child in 1901. The tail moved briskly when the child cried or was excited, and was drawn up when at rest (Fig. 195 A–C).

In the opinion of many travellers and anthropologists, the atavistic tail-formation is hereditary in many isolated tribes (especially in south-eastern Asia and the archipelago), so that we might speak of a special race or "species" of tailed men (homo caudatus). Bartels has "no doubt that these tailed men will be discovered in the advance of our geographical and ethnographical knowledge of the lands in question" (*Archiv für Anthropologie*, Band XV., p. 129).

When we open a human embryo of one month (Fig. 196), we find the alimentary canal formed in the body-cavity, and
for the most part cut off from the embryonic vesicle. There are both mouth and anus apertures. But the mouth-cavity is not yet separated from the nasal cavity, and the face not yet shaped. The heart shows all its four sections; it is very large, and almost fills the whole of the pectoral cavity (Fig. 196 ov). Behind it are the very small rudimentary

**Fig. 196.**—**Human embryo, four weeks old,** opened on the ventral side. Ventral and dorsal walls are cut away, so as to show the contents of the pectoral and abdominal cavities. All the appendages are also removed (amnion, allantois, yolk-sac), and the middle part of the gut. \( n \) eye, \( j \) nose, \( g \) upper jaw, \( 5 \) lower jaw, \( b \) second, \( 6^\prime \) third gill-arch, \( o v \) heart (\( o \) right, \( o' \) left auricle; \( v \) right, \( v' \) left ventricle), \( b \) origin of the aorta, \( f \) liver (\( u \) umbilical vein), \( c \) gut (with vitelline artery, cut off at \( a' \)), \( f \) vitelline vein, \( m \) primitive kidneys, \( i \) rudimentary sexual glands, \( x \) terminal gut (cut off at the mesentery \( x \)), \( u \) umbilical artery, \( u \) umbilical vein, \( q \) fore-leg, \( q' \) hind-leg. (From Coste.)

**Fig. 197.**—**Human embryo five weeks old,** opened from the ventral side (as in Fig. 196). Breast and belly-wall and liver are removed. \( j \) outer nasal process, \( g \) upper jaw, \( 5 \) lower jaw, \( z \) tongue, \( v \) right, \( v' \) left ventricle of heart, \( o' \) left auricle, \( b \) origin of aorta, \( b' \), \( b'' \) first, second, and third aorta-arches, \( e, e' \), \( e'' \) vena cava, \( a e \) lungs (\( y \) pulmonary artery), \( e \) stomach, \( m \) primitive kidneys (\( f \) left vitelline vein, \( s \) cystic vein, \( a \) right vitelline artery, \( n \) umbilical artery, \( u \) umbilical vein), \( x \) vitelline duct, \( i \) rectum, \( S \) tail, \( g \) fore-leg, \( q' \) hind-leg. The liver is removed. (From Coste.)

lungs. The primitive kidneys (\( m \)) are very large; they fill the greater part of the abdominal cavity, and extend from the liver (\( f \)) to the pelvic gut. Thus at the end of the first month all the chief organs are already outlined. But there are at this stage no features by which the human embryo materially
differs from that of the dog, the hare, the ox, or the horse—in a word, of any other higher mammal. All these embryos have the same, or at least a very similar, form; they can at the most be distinguished from the human embryo by the total size of the body or some other insignificant difference in size. Thus, for instance, in man the head is larger in proportion to the trunk than in the ox. The tail is rather longer in the dog than in man. These are all negligible differences. On the other hand, the whole internal organisation and the form and arrangement of the various organs are essentially the same in the human embryo of four weeks as in the embryos of the other mammals at corresponding stages.

It is otherwise in the second month of human development. Fig. 191 represents a human embryo of six weeks (VI.), one of seven weeks (VII.), and one of eight weeks (VIII.) at natural size. The differences which mark off the human embryo from that of the dog and the lower mammals now begin to be more pronounced. We can see important differences at the sixth, and still more at the eighth, week, especially in the formation of the head (Plate XIII., Fig. MIII, etc.). The size of the various sections of the brain is greater in man, and the tail is shorter. Other differences between man and the lower mammals are found in the relative size of the internal organs. But even at this stage the human embryo differs very little from that of the nearest related mammals, the apes, especially the anthropomorphic apes. The features by means of which we distinguish between them are not clear until later on. Even at a much more advanced stage of development, when we can distinguish the human foetus from that of the ungulates at a glance, it still closely resembles that of the higher apes. At last we get the distinctive features, and we can distinguish the human embryo confidently at the first glance from that of all other mammals during the last four months of foetal life—from the sixth to the ninth month of pregnancy. Then we begin to find also the differences between the various races of men, especially in regard to the formation of the skull and the face. (Cf. Chapter XXIII.)
The striking resemblance that persists so long between the embryo of man and of the higher apes disappears much earlier in the lower apes. It naturally remains longest in the large anthropomorphic apes (gorilla, chimpanzee, orang, and gibbon). The physiognomic similarity of these animals, which we find so great in their earlier years, lessens with the increase of age. On the other hand, it remains throughout life in the remarkable long-nosed ape of Borneo (*nasalis larvatus*, Plate XXV.). Its finely-shaped nose would be regarded with envy by many a man who has too little of that organ. If we compare the face of the long-nosed ape with that of abnormally ape-like human beings (such as the famous Miss Julia Pastrana, Fig. 198), it will be admitted to represent a higher stage of development. There are still people among us who look especially to the face for the “image of God in man.” The long-nosed ape would have more claim to this than some of the stumpy-nosed human individuals one meets.

This progressive divergence of the human from the animal form, which is based on the law of the ontogenetic connection between related forms, is found in the structure of the internal organs as well as in external form. It is also expressed in the construction of the envelopes and appendages that we find externally to the foetus, and that we will now consider more closely. Two of these appendages—the amnion and the allantois—are only found in the three higher classes of vertebrates, while the third, the yolk-sac, is found in most of the vertebrates. This is a circumstance of great importance, and it gives us valuable data for constructing man’s genealogical tree.

As regards the external membrane that encloses the ovum in the mammal womb, we find it just the same in man as in the higher mammals. The ovum is, you will remember, first surrounded by the transparent structureless *ovolemma* or *zona
pellucida (Figs. 1, 14). But very soon, even in the first week of development, it is replaced by the permanent chorion. This arises from the external layer of the amnion, the serolemma, or "serous membrane," the formation of which we shall consider presently; it surrounds the foetus and its appendages as a broad, completely-closed sac; the space between the two, filled with clear watery fluid, is the seroceleom, or interamniotic cavity ("extra-embryonic body-cavity"). But the smooth surface of the sac is quickly covered with numbers of tiny tufts, which are really hollow out-growths like the fingers of a glove (Figs. 199, 204, 217 chz). They ramify and push into the corresponding depressions that are formed by the tubular glands of the mucous membrane of the maternal womb. Thus, the ovum secures its permanent seat (Figs. 199-207).

In human ova of eight to twelve days this external membrane, the chorion, is already covered with small tufts or villi, and forms a ball or spheroid of six to eight millimetres in diameter (Figs. 199-201). As a large quantity of fluid gathers inside it, the chorion expands more and more, so that the embryo only occupies a small part of the space within the vesicle. The villi of the chorion grow larger and more numerous. They branch out more and more. At first the villi cover the whole surface, but they afterwards disappear from the greater part of it; they then develop with proportionately greater vigour at a spot where the placenta is formed from the allantois.

When we open the chorion of a human embryo of three weeks, we find on the ventral side of the foetus a large round sac, filled with fluid. This is the yelk-sac, or "umbilical vesicle," the origin of which we have considered previously. The larger the embryo becomes the smaller we find the yelk-sac. Afterwards we find the remainder of it in the shape of a small pear-shaped vesicle, fastened to a long thin stalk (or pedicle), and hanging from the open belly of the foetus (Fig. 207). This pedicle is the vitelline duct, and is separated from the body at the closing of the navel. The wall of the umbilical vesicle consists, you
will remember, of an inner plate, the gut-gland layer and an outer plate, the gut-fibre layer. It is therefore made up of the same constituents as the gut-wall itself, and really forms a direct continuation of it. In birds and reptiles, in which the yolk-sac is much larger, it contains a considerable quantity of nutritive material, albuminous and fatty substances.

Fig. 199. Human ovum of twelve to thirteen days (?). (From Allen Thomson.) 1. Not opened, natural size. 2. Opened and magnified. Within the outer chorion the tiny curved fetus lies on the large embryonic vesicle, to the left above.

Fig. 200. Human ovum of ten days. (From Allen Thomson.) Natural size, opened; the small fetus in the right half, above.

Fig. 201. Human foetus of ten days, taken from the preceding ovum, magnified ten times. a yolk-sac, b neck (the medullary groove already closed), c head (with open medullary groove), d hind part (with open medullary groove), e a shred of the amnion.

Fig. 202. Human ovum of twenty to twenty-two days. (From Allen Thomson.) Natural size, opened. The chorion forms a spacious vesicle, to the inner wall of which the small fetus (to the right above) is attached by a short umbilical cord.

Fig. 203. Human foetus of twenty to twenty-two days, taken from the preceding ovum, magnified. a amnion, b yolk-sac, c lower-jaw process of the first gill-arch, d upper-jaw process of same, e second gill-arch (two smaller ones behind). Three gill-clefts are clearly seen. f rudimentary fore-leg, g auditory vesicle, h eye, i heart.
These pass by the vitelline duct into the visceral cavity, and serve as food, as in the oviparous monotremes. In the other (viviparous) mammals the yolk-sac is much less important for the nutrition of the embryo, and it atrophies at an early stage.

Fig. 204.—Human embryo of sixteen to eighteen days. (From Coste.) Magnified. The embryo is surrounded by the amnion (a), lies free with this in the opened embryonic vesicle. The belly is drawn up by the large yolk-sac (d), and fastened to the inner wall of the embryonic membrane by the short and thick pedicle (b). Hence the normal convex curve of the back (Fig. 203) is here changed into an abnormal concave surface. h heart, m parietal mesoderm. The spots on the outer wall of the serolemma are the roots of the branching chorion-villi, which are free at the border.

Behind the yolk-sac a second appendage, of much greater importance, is formed at an early stage at the belly of the mammal embryo. This is the allantois or "primitive urinary sac," an important embryonic organ, only found in the three
higher classes of vertebrates. In all the amniotes the allantois quickly appears at the hinder end of the alimentary canal, growing out of the cavity of the pelvic gut (Fig. 208, r, u, Fig. 209 ALC).

![Diagram of human embryo](image)

**Fig. 205.** Human embryo of the fourth week, seven and a-half mm. long, lying in the dissected chorion.

The allantois originated as a prolongation of the urinary bladder of the amphibia; in their descendants, the protamniotes (the ancestors of the amniotes), it has grown out of the coelom of the embryo, and has henceforth to take a part in its nutrition. The first trace of it is a small vesicle at the edge of the cavity of the pelvic gut; it represents a fold of the gut, and has (like the yelk-sac) a two-layered wall. The cavity of the vesicle is clothed with the gut-gland layer, and the outer

**Fig. 206.** Human embryo of the fourth week, with its membranes, like Fig. 205, but a little older. The yelk-sac is rather smaller, the amnion and chorion larger.
Fig. 207.—**Human embryo with its membranes**, six weeks old. The outer envelope of the whole ovum is the chorion, thickly covered with its branching villi, a product of the serous membrane. The embryo is enclosed in the delicate amnion-sac. The yolk-sac is reduced to a small pear-shaped umbilical vesicle; its thin pedicle, the long vitelline duct, is enclosed in the umbilical cord. In the latter, behind the vitelline duct, is the much shorter pedicle of the allantois, the inner lamina of which (the gut-gland layer) forms a large vesicle in most of the mammals, while the outer lamina is attached to the inner wall of the outer embryonic coat, and forms the placenta there. (Half diagrammatic.)

Fig. 208.—**Median longitudinal section of the embryo** of a chick (fifth day of incubation), seen from the right (head to the right, tail to the left). Dorsal body (episoma) dark, with convex surface. *d* gut, *o* mouth, *a* anus, *h* liver, *g* mesentery, *l* lungs, *v* auricle of heart, *k* ventricle, *b* arterial arches, *l* aorta, *c* yolk-sac, *m* vitelline duct, *u* allantois, *r* pedicle of the allantois, *n* amnion, *w* amniotic cavity, *s* serous membrane. (From Baer.)
lamina of the wall is formed of the thickened gut-fibre layer. The little vesicle gets bigger and bigger, and grows into a large sac, filled with fluid, in the wall of which large blood-vessels are formed. It soon reaches the inner wall of the foetal cavity, and spreads along the inner surface of the chorion (Fig. 209 ALC). In many mammals the allantois is so large that at last it surrounds the whole embryo and the other appendages as a wide membrane, and spreads over the whole of the inner surface of the prochorion. When we open

![Diagram of the embryonic organs of the mammal](image)

Fig. 209.—Diagram of the embryonic organs of the mammal (foetal membranes and appendages). (From Turner.) E, M, H, outer, middle, and inner germ layer of the embryonic shield, which is figured in median longitudinal section, seen from the left. am amnion, AC amniotic cavity, UV yolk-sac or umbilical vesicle, ALC allantois, al pericelom or serocelom (inter-amniotic cavity), se serolemma (or serous membrane), pc prochorion (with villi).

an ovum of this character, we encounter first a large cavity filled with fluid; this is the amniotic cavity. Only when this membrane is removed do we reach the amniotic vesicle which encloses the embryo proper.

The further development of the allantois varies considerably in the three sub-classes of the mammals. The two lower sub-classes, monotremes and marsupials, retain the simpler structure of their ancestors, the reptiles. The wall of the allantois and the enveloping serolemma remains smooth
and without villi, as in the birds. But in the third sub-
class of the mammals the serolemma forms, by invagination
at its outer surface, a number of hollow tufts or villi, from
which it takes the name of the chorion or mallochorion. The
gut-fibre layer of the allantois, richly supplied with branches
of the umbilical vessel, presses into these serous villi of the
primary chorion, and forms the “secondary chorion.” Its
embryonic blood-vessels are closely correlated to the
contiguous maternal blood-vessels of the environing uterus,

**Fig. 210.—Embryo of a dog, from the right.**

- a first, b second, c third, d fourth cerebral vesicle, e eye, f auditory vesicle, gh first gill-arch (g lower jaw, h upper jaw), i second gill-arch, klm heart (k right auricle, l right and m left ventricle), n origin of aorta, o heart-pouch, p liver, q gut, r vitelline duct, s yolk sac (torn away), t allantois (broken off), u amnion, v fore-leg, x hind-leg.

(From Bischoff.)

and thus is formed the important nutritive apparatus of the
embryo which we call the placenta.

The pedicle of the allantois, which connects the embryo
with the placenta and conducts the strong umbilical vessels
from the former to the latter, is covered by the amnion, and,
with this amniotic sheath and the pedicle of the yolk-sac,
forms what is called the *umbilical cord* (Fig. 212 *al*). As the
large and blood-filled vascular network of the foetal allantois
attaches itself closely to the mucous lining of the maternal
womb, and the partition between the blood-vessels of mother and child becomes much thinner, we get that remarkable nutritive apparatus of the foetal body which is characteristic of the placentia (or choriata). We shall return afterwards to the closer consideration of this (cf. Chapter XXIII.).

In the various orders of mammals the placenta undergoes many modifications, and these are in part of great phylogenetic importance and useful in classification. There is only one of these that need be specially mentioned—the important fact established by Selenka in 1890 that the distinctive human placentation is confined to the anthropoids. In this most advanced group of the mammals the allantois is very small, soon loses its cavity, and then, in common with the amnion, undergoes certain peculiar changes. The umbilical cord develops in this case from what is called the "ventral

---

**Fig. 211.—** Dog-embryo, twenty-five days old, from the ventral side, opened (as Figs. 196 and 197). Pectoral and abdominal walls are removed. a nose-pits, b eyes, c lower jaw (first gill-arch), d second gill-arch, efg heart (e right, / left auricle; g right, h left ventricle), i aorta (origin), kk liver (in the middle between the folds the umbilical vein cut through), l stomach, m gut, n yolk-sac, o primitive kidneys, p allantois, q fore-leg, r hind-leg. The curved embryo has been straightened out. (From Bischoff.)
pedicle.” Until very recently this was regarded as a structure peculiar to man. We now know from Selenka that the much-discussed ventral pedicle is merely the pedicle of the allantois, combined with the pedicle of the amnion and the rudimentary pedicle of the yolk-sac. It has just the same structure in the orang and gibbon (Figs. 213-216), and very probably in the chimpanzee and gorilla, as in man; it is, therefore, not a disproof, but a striking fresh proof, of the blood-relationship of man and the anthropoid apes.

Hence the allantois is interesting in three ways in connection with man’s genealogical tree: firstly, because this appendage is wanting in the lower classes of vertebrates, and is developed only in the three higher classes of the stem, the reptiles, birds, and mammals; secondly, because the placenta develops from the allantois only in the placentals, or the higher mammals and man, and not in the lower mammals (marsupials and monotremes); thirdly, because the remarkable peculiarities of human placentation are only found outside man in the anthropoid apes, not in the other placentals.

We find only in the anthropoid apes—the gibbon and orang of Asia and the chimpanzee and gorilla of Africa—the peculiar and elaborate formation of the placenta that characterises man (Fig. 217). In this case there is at an early
Figs. 213-215.—Embryos of the kalawet-gibbon of Borneo (Hylobates concolor). Fig. 213 embryo of seventeen mm. from head to buttocks, magnified four times; seen from the left. Fig. 214 the same, seen from the front. Fig. 215 embryo of one hundred mm. from head to buttocks, three-fourths natural size, in the same position as found in uterus, with which it is still connected by the umbilical cord. Only the dorsal half of the dissected uterus is shown, and the placenta is attached to the central part of this.
stage an intimate blending of the chorion of the embryo and the part of the mucous lining of the womb to which it attaches. The villi of the chorion with the blood-vessels they contain grows so completely into the tissue of the uterus, which is rich in blood, that it becomes impossible to separate them, and they form together a sort of cake. This comes away as the "after-birth" at parturition; at the same time the part of the mucous lining of the uterus that has united inseparably with the chorion is torn away; hence it is

called the decidua ("falling-away membrane"), and also the "sieve-membrane," because it is perforated like a sieve. We find a decidua of this kind in most of the higher placentals; but it is only in man and the anthropoid apes that it divides into three parts—the outer, inner, and placental decidua. The external or true decidua (Fig. 212 du, Fig. 218 g) is the part of the mucous lining of the womb that clothes the inner surface of the uterine cavity wherever it is not connected with the placenta. The placental or spongy decidua
(placentalis or serotina, Fig. 212 ds, Fig. 218 d) is really the placenta itself, or the maternal part of it (placenta uterina)—namely, that part of the mucous lining of the womb which unites intimately with the chorion-villi of the foetal placenta. The internal or false decidua (interna or reflexa, Fig. 212 dr, Fig. 218 f) is that part of the mucous lining of the womb which encloses the remaining surface of the ovum, the smooth chorion (chorion laeve), in the shape of a special thin membrane. The origin of these three different deciduous membranes, in regard to which quite erroneous views (still retained in their names) formerly prevailed, is now quite clear; the external decidua vera is the specially modified and subsequently detachable superficial stratum of the original mucous lining of the womb. The placental decidua serotina is that
part of the preceding which is completely transformed by the ingrowth of the chorion-villi, and is used for constructing the placenta. The inner decidua reflexa is formed by the rise of a circular fold of the mucous lining (at the border of the decidua vera and serotina), which grows over the foetus (like the amnion) to the end.

The peculiar anatomic features that characterise the human foetal membranes are found in just the same way in the higher apes. The lower apes and the other discoplacentals show more or less considerable variations, and, in general, simpler features. This applies especially to the delicate structure of the placenta itself, the blending of the chorion-villi with the decidua serotina. The mature human placenta is a circular (less frequently oval) disk of a soft, spongy texture, six to eight inches in diameter, about one
inch thick, and one to one and a half pounds in weight. Its convex outer surface (uniting with the uterus) is very uneven and tufted. Its concave inner surface (facing the uterine cavity) is quite smooth, and covered by the amnion. As a rule, the umbilical cord (funiculus umbilicalis) starts from about the middle of the placenta; we have considered the origin of this from the ventral pedicle. This also is covered or sheathed by the amnion, which passes directly into the abdominal skin at the navel end of the cord (Fig. 218). The mature umbilical cord is a cylindrical string, twisted spirally on its axis, generally about twenty inches long and half an inch thick. It consists of a gelatinous connective tissue (the "Whartonian jelly"), in which we find the remainder of the vitelline vessels and the large umbilical vessels—the two umbilical arteries which conduct the blood of the embryo to the placenta and the strong umbilical vein that conveys the blood from the latter to the heart. The countless fine branchlets of this foetal umbilical vessel enter the ramified chorion-villi of the foetal placenta, and finally join in a peculiar way with these to form the wide blood-filled cavities that expand in the uterine placenta and contain the maternal

---

**Fig. 219.—Mature human foetus** (at the end of pregnancy, in its natural position, taken out of the uterine cavity). On the inner surface of the latter (to the left) is the placenta, which is connected by the umbilical cord with the child's navel. (From Bernhard Schulze.)
blood. The very complicated and difficult anatomic relations that develop here between the foetal and maternal placenta are found in this form only in man and the anthropoid ape; they differ more or less considerably in all the other deciduates. The umbilical cord is also proportionately longer in man and the apes than in the other mammals.

Fig. 220.—Median section of the lower half of the trunk of a woman in advanced pregnancy. The head of the child is already in the pelvis (in the normal head-position. The foetal vesicle (the size of an apple) is still whole in the vagina; the foetal water has not yet escaped. (From Braune.)

Until recently it was thought that the human embryo was distinguished by its peculiar construction of a solid allantois and a special ventral pedicle, and that the umbilical cord developed from this in a different way from in the other mammals. The opponents of the unwelcome "ape-theory" laid great stress on this, and thought they had at last discovered an important indication that separated man from
all the other placentals. But the remarkable discoveries published by the distinguished zoologist Selenka in 1890 proved that man shares these peculiarities of placentation with the anthropoid apes, though they are not found in the other apes. Thus the very feature which was advanced by our critics as a disproof became a most important piece of evidence in favour of our pithecoid origin.

The new facts that Selenka discovered during his investigation of this question in India are so important, and yield such far-reaching conclusions, that I will give the results in his own words:

Some embryonic organs are developed earlier and some later in the apes and man than in the other mammals. Among the anticipated structures are:

1. the innumerable chorion-villi,
2. the cælom-sacs, by the expansion of which the yelk-sac is early removed and the amnion closed, and
3. the pedicle of the allantois.

On the other hand, we have the following retarded structures:

1. the yelk-sac. It is true that it quickly separates from the wall of the embryonic vesicle, but its vascular network only develops later on. As it has completely lost its earlier function of respiratory and nutritive organ, it must be regarded as a rudimentary organ. It sends no vessels into the chorion, all the blood-vessels of which are exclusively allantoic.

2. The rise of the allantoic cavity also is delayed, and
3. the differentiation of the germinative area. As special structures we may designate:

1. the looser texture of the somatopleura, which lines the chorion;
2. the persistence of the pedicle of the allantois;
3. the expansion of the amnion and its blending with the chorion;
4. the formation of two placental side by side, one of which may remain rudimentary;
5. the degeneration of the yelk-sac into a rudimentary organ; and
6. the attachment of the non-placental part of the foetal membrane—whether it be the chorion laeve or the decidua reflexa—to the surrounding wall of the uterus.

A third embryonic appendage, which we have already mentioned—the amnion or “water-membrane”—is also, like the allantois, one of the characteristic features of the three higher classes of vertebrates. We have introduced the amnion when dealing with the severance of the embryo from the embryonic vesicle (p. 308). We found that its walls rise about the embryonic body in the form of a circular fold. In front this fold rises to some height in what is called the hood or sheath of the head (Fig. 222 ks); behind also it curves over considerably as the hood or sheath of the tail (ss); to the right and left the fold is at first lower, and is known as the side-hood or sheath (Fig. 226). All these “hoods” or “sheaths” are merely portions of a continuous circular fold.
Figs. 221-225.—Five diagrammatic longitudinal sections of the maturing mammal embryo and its envelopes. In Figs. 221-224 the longitudinal section goes through the sagittal or middle plane of the body, which cuts it into right and left halves; in Fig. 225 the fetus is seen from the left. In Fig. 221 the prochorion (d), dotted with villi (d'), encloses the embryonic vesicle, the wall of which consists of the two primary germinal layers. Between the outer (a) and inner (i) germinal layer the middle layer (m) has developed in the region of the germinative area. In Fig. 222 the embryo (e) begins to separate from the embryonic vesicle (ds), while the wall of the amniotic fold rises round it (in front as head-sheath, ks, behind as tail-sheath, ss). In Fig. 223 the edges of the amniotic fold (am) meet over the back of the embryo, and thus form the amniotic cavity (ah); the embryo (e) separating still more from the embryonic vesicle (ds), the alimentary canal (dd) is formed, the allantois (al) growing out of its hinder end. In Fig. 224 the allantois (al) is larger, the yolk-sac (ds) smaller. In
that runs round the embryo. It grows higher and higher, rises up like a rampart, and at last curves like a grotto over the body of the embryo. The edges of the circular fold touch and join (Fig. 227). Thus in the end the embryo is enclosed in a membranous sac, which is filled with the amniotic fluid (Figs. 224, 225 ah).

When the sac is completely closed, the inner plate of the fold, which forms the real wall of the amniotic sac, separates altogether from the outer. The latter attaches itself internally to the prochorion, replaces it, and becomes itself the permanent outer envelope of the embryo, described by Baer as the "serous membrane." This serolemma consists, like the thin wall of the amnion-sac, of two layers—the neural and the parietal germ-layers. The latter is in this case very thin and delicate, but can easily be recognised as a direct continuation of the skin-fibre layer. Naturally, in harmony with the folding process, the parietal middle layer is turned inwards in the serolemma and outwards in the amnion. The space between it and the allantois is the pericælom or the inter-amniotic cavity (the extra-embryonic body-cavity, Fig. 209 al).

The phylogenetic cause of this ontogenetic formation of the amnion is to be sought on mechanical lines in the fact that the body of the embryo has gradually sunk into the underlying yelk-sac, thus leaving a circular fold of membrane around it. The growth of the latter into a completely closed sac, filled with fluid, is explained on the theory of selection by the great service which so admirable a protective structure offers to the delicate embryo.

Of the three vesicular appendages of the amniote embryo which we have now described the amnion has no blood-vessels at any moment of its existence. But the other two

---

Fig. 225 the embryo already shows the gill-clefts and the rudiments of the two pairs of legs; the chorion has branched villi. In all five figures: e embryo, a outer germinal layer, m middle germinal layer, i inner germinal layer, am amnion (ks head sheath, ss tail sheath), ah amniotic cavity, as amniotic sheath of the umbilical cord, kh embryonic vesicle, ds yelk-sac (umbilical vesicle), dg vitelline duct, df gut-fibre layer, dd gut-gland layer, al allantois, vl—hh place of heart, d ovolemma or prochorian, d' villi of same, sh serous membrane (serolemma), ss villi of same, ch chorion, chz villi of same, st terminal vein, r pericælom or serocælom (the space between the amnion and chorion, filled with fluid). (From Kölïker.) Cf. Plate VII., Figs. 14 and 15.
vesicles, the yolk-sac and the allantois, are equipped with large blood-vessels, and these effect the nourishment of the embryonic body.

We may take the opportunity to make a few general observations on the first circulation in the embryo and its central organ, the heart. The first blood-vessels, the heart, and the first blood itself, are formed from the gut-fibre layer. Hence it was called by earlier embryologists the "vascular layer." In a sense the term is quite correct. But it must not be understood as if all the blood-vessels in the body came from this layer, or as if the whole of this layer were taken up only with the formation of blood-vessels. Neither of these suppositions is true. Blood-vessels may be formed independently in other parts, especially in the various products of the skin-fibre layer. The tissue that composes the blood-vessels belongs to those secondary products of the mesoderm that do not divide as
epithelial plates, but may arise anywhere in holes between the epithelial products of the germ-layers, and were marked off by Hertwig under the title of intermediate layer or mesenchyma. However, according to some observers, the inner vascular epithelium originates from the entoderm.

The heart and the blood-vessels and the vascular system generally are by no means among the oldest parts of the animal organism. Aristotle believed that the heart was one of the first organs to be formed in the chicken; and many later writers adopted this opinion. But this is not at all the case. The chief parts of the body—the four secondary germ-layers, the medullary tube and chorda—are formed long before there is any trace of the vascular system. As we shall see later, this fact is in complete harmony with the phylogeny of the animal kingdom. The cœlenteria (gastœads, sponges, cnidaria, and platodes), to which a section of our earliest animal ancestors belonged, have neither blood nor heart. The vermalia were developed at a comparatively late date from these bloodless cœlenteria, and the higher vermalia in which a vascular system of the simplest form develops (*frontonia*) later still from the non-vascular lower vermalia (*rotatoria*); from the higher vermalia are descended the much younger vertebrates.

The first blood-vessels of the mammal embryo have been considered by us previously in the transverse sections on Figs. 148–151 (p. 314). They are, firstly, the two primitive

Fig. 228.—*Transverse section of the embryo* of a chick in the region of the shoulder (of the fifth day of incubation). The section passes through the rudimentary foreleg (or wing, e). The amniotic folds are joined over the back of the embryo. (From *Remak*.) Cf. Figs. 225, 226, and 227; also Plate VII., Fig. 14.
arteries or aortas, which lie in the narrow longitudinal clefts between the provertebrae, the lateral plates, and the gut-gland layer (Figs. 141 ao, 148 ao); and, secondly, the two principal or cardinal veins, which appear a little later, farther out than the former, above the primitive renal ducts (Figs. 149-157 cav).

The heart arises in just the same way and in connection with these first vessels, in the lower wall of the fore-gut, at the throat, where the heart remains throughout life in the fish. The heart of the vertebrate is originally only a local enlargement of the median visceral vessel, which runs on the lower wall of the gut, and which we have called the principal vein in our study of the primitive vertebrate (Figs. 101, 103 7). The simple, spindle-shaped heart, that we assume to have been here at the limit of the head and trunk, is found at the same spot, immediately behind the gill-gut, in the embryos of the acrania and the cyclostoma (Plate XIX., Fig. 16 h) and the fishes. By the contraction of its muscular wall the venous blood that is brought by the subintestinal vein is driven forward into the branchial artery (on the under side of the branchial gut).

The rudimentary heart is single in the amphibia also. In the amniotes, however, it is double from the first, having two distinct halves (Fig. 137 h). But the two halves soon degenerate and unite, in the ventral middle line of the wall of the fore-gut, to form a single simple tube. The double structure is a later cenogenetic phenomenon, mechanically determined by the flat expansion of the embryonic shield on the large yolk-vesicle.

Fig. 229.—**Human embryo** of fourteen to eighteen days, opened on the ventral side. Under the frontal process of the head (1) the heart (c) is seen in the cardiac cavity (p), with the base of the aorta (b). The yolk-sac (a) has been removed for the most part (at x the incision of the fore-arm). g primitive aortas (lying under the primitive vertebrae), i rectum, a allantois (u its pedicle), v amnion. (From Caster.)
The simple, spindle-shaped structure of the heart, which separates from the ventral wall of the head-gut, consists of the two germinal layers of the gut-wall, a small fold of the gut-gland layer being taken into the tube. From this is formed the endocard, the epithelial inner cellular lining of the heart. Its thick muscular wall, the myocard, is formed by the cells of the gut-fibre layer or visceral middle layer. From this also come the red blood-cells, and the first traces of the vessels that are connected with the heart. These also are at first solid, round strings of cells. They are then hollowed out by the secretion of fluid at their axis. Some of the cells are detached and float in the fluid, and thus become blood-cells. This applies both to the arteries (which convey the blood from the heart) and the veins (which convey it to the heart). The white blood-cells (lymph-cells or leucocytes) are traveling cells, originating in the mesenchyma and passing subsequently into the blood-vessels.

The heart of every vertebrate lies at first in the ventral wall of the fore-gut, or in the ventral (or cardiac) mesentery, by which it is connected for a time with the wall of the body. But the heart soon severs itself from the place of its origin, and lies freely in a cavity—the cardiac cavity (Fig. 230 c). For a short time it is still connected with the former by the thin plate of the mesocardium (hg). Afterwards it lies quite free in the cardiac cavity, and is only directly connected with the gut-wall by the vessels which issue from it (Fig. 230).
The fore-end of the spindle-shaped tube, which soon bends into an S-shape (Fig. 232), divides into a right and left branch. These tubes are bent upwards arch-wise, and represent the first arches of the aorta. They rise in the wall of the fore-gut, which they enclose in a sense, and then unite above, in the upper wall of the fore gut-cavity, to form a large single artery, that runs backward immediately under the

Fig. 231.—Vitelline vessels in the germinative area of a chick-embryo, at the close of the third day of incubation. (From Balfour.) The detached germinative area is seen from the ventral side: the arteries are dark, the veins light. _H_ heart, _A.A_ aorta-arches, _Ao_ aorta, _R.Of.A_ right omphalomesenteric artery, _S.T._ sinus terminalis, _L.Of_ and _R.Of_ right and left omphalomesenteric veins, _S.V._ sinus venosus, _D.C_ ductus Cuvieri, _S.Cu V._ and _I.Ca_ fore and hind cardinal veins.

chorda, and is called the aorta (Fig. 231 _Ao_). The first pair of aorta-arches rise on the inner wall of the first pair of gill-arches, and so lie between the first gill-arch (_k_) and the fore-gut (_d_), just as we find them throughout life in the fishes. The single aorta, which results from the upper conjunction of these two first vascular arches, divides again immediately
into two parallel branches, which run backwards on either side of the chorda. These are the primitive aortas which we have already mentioned; they are also called the posterior vertebral arteries. These two arteries now give off at each side, behind, at right angles, four or five branches, and these pass from the embryonic body to the germinative area; they are called omphalo-mesenteric or vitelline arteries. They represent the first rudiment of a foetal circulation. Thus, the first blood-vessels pass over the embryonic body and reach as far as the edge of the germinative area. At first they are confined to the dark or "vascular" area. But they afterwards extend over the whole surface of the embryonic vesicle. In the end, the whole of the yolk-sac is covered with a vascular net-work. These vessels have to gather food from the contents of the yolk-sac and convey it to the embryonic body. This is done by the veins, which pass first from the germinative area, and afterwards from the yolk-sac, to the farther end of the heart. They are called vitelline, or, frequently, omphalo-mesenteric, veins.

Thus, the first embryonic circulation (Figs. 231–234) is arranged in the following simple way in the three higher classes of vertebrates. The simple tubular heart (Fig. 234 d) divides, both in front and behind, into two vessels.
vessels are the afferent vitelline veins. They absorb nutritive matter from the embryonic vesicle or the yolk-sac, and convey it to the embryonic body. The anterior vessels are the efferent branchial arteries, which pass round the fore part of the gut in the shape of the rising aortic-arches; they unite to form the aorta. The two branches that are formed by the splitting of the main artery—the primitive aortas—give off vitelline arteries to right and left, and these pass from the

Fig. 233.—Embryonic shield and germinative area of a hare, in which we see the first outline of the blood-vessels, seen from the ventral side, magnified about ten times. The hind end of the simple heart (a) divides into two strong vitelline veins, and these form a vascular network in the dark area (which looks light on the black ground). At the head-end we can see the fore brain with the two optic vesicles (b, b). The darker middle of the embryo is the wide-open visceral cavity. On each side of the chorda we see ten proto-vertebræ. (From Bishoff.)

body of the embryo to the germinative area. Here, and in the periphery of the umbilical vesicle, we distinguish two layers of vessels, the surface-layer of arteries and the lower layer of veins. The two are connected. At first this vascular system only extends over the periphery of the germinative area to its border. Here, at the edge of the dark vascular area, all the branches unite in a large terminal vein (Fig. 234 a). This vein disappears later on, when the
formation of vessels proceeds further in the course of development, and then the vitelline vessels cover the whole of the yolk-sac. These vessels naturally atrophy with the degeneration of the umbilical vesicle; their importance is restricted to the first period of the life of the embryo.

This vitelline circulation is afterwards replaced by a second, that of the allantois. Large blood-vessels are developed in the wall of the urinary sac or the allantois, as before, from the gut-fibre layer. These vessels grow larger and larger, and are very closely connected with the vessels that develop in the body of the embryo itself. Thus, the secondary, allantoic circulation gradually takes the place of the original vitelline circulation. When the allantois has attached itself to the inner wall of the chorion and been

Fig. 234.—Embryonic shield and germinative area of a hare, in which the first vascular system is fully formed, seen from the ventral side, magnified about five times. The posterior end of the S-shaped heart (d) divides into two strong vitelline veins, each of which gives off a fore (b) and hind (c) branch. The ends of these unite in the circular terminal vein (a). In the germinative area we see the coarser (deeper-lying) venous net and the finer (more superficial) arterial net. The vitelline arteries (f) open into the two primitive aortas (e). The dark area, which surrounds the head like an aureole, corresponds to the depression of the head-hood. (From Bischoff.)
converted into the placenta, its blood-vessels alone effect the nourishment of the embryo. They are called umbilical vessels, and are originally double—a pair of umbilical arteries and a pair of umbilical veins. The two umbilical veins (Fig. 196 n), which convey blood from the placenta to the heart, open at first into the united vitelline veins. The latter then disappear, and the right umbilical vein goes with them, so that henceforth a single large vein, the left umbilical vein, conducts all the blood from the placenta to the heart of the embryo. The two arteries of the allantois, or the umbilical arteries (Figs. 196 n, 197 n), are merely the ultimate terminations of the primitive aortas, which are strongly developed afterwards. This umbilical circulation retains its importance until the nine months of embryonic life are over, and the human embryo enters into the world as an independent individual. The umbilical cord (Fig. 212 al), in which these large blood-vessels pass from the embryo to the placenta, comes away, together with the latter, in the after-birth, and with pulmonary respiration begins an entirely new form of circulation, which is confined to the body of the infant.

There is a great phylogenetic significance in the perfect agreement which we find between man and the anthropoid apes in these important features of embryonic circulation, and the special construction of the placenta and the umbilical cord. We must infer from it a close blood-relationship of man and the anthropomorph apes, a common descent of them from one and the same extinct group of lower apes. Huxley's "pithecometra-principle" applies to these ontogenetic features as much as to any other morphological relations: "The differences in construction of any part of the body are less between man and the anthropoid apes than between the latter and the lower apes."

This important Huxleian law, the chief consequence of which is "the descent of man from the ape," has lately been confirmed in an interesting and unexpected way from the side of the experimental physiology of the blood. The experiments of Hans Friedenthal at Berlin have shown that human blood, mixed with the blood of lower apes, has a poisonous
effect on the latter; the serum of the one destroys the blood-cells of the other. But this does not happen when human

blood is mixed with that of the anthropoid ape. As we know from many other experiments that the mixture of two different kinds of blood is only possible without injury in the case of

Fig. 235.—Lar or white-handed gibbon (hylobates lar or albimanus) from the Indian main-land. (From Brehm.)
two closely related animals of the same family, we have another proof of the close blood-relationship, in the literal sense of the word, of man and the anthropoid ape.

The existing anthropoid apes are only a small remnant of a large family of eastern apes (or catarrhinae), from which man was evolved about the end of the tertiary period. They fall into two geographical groups—the Asiatic and the
African anthropoids. In each group we can distinguish two genera. The oldest of these four genera is the gibbon (*hylobates*, Fig. 235); there are from eight to twelve species of it in the East Indies. I made observations of four of them during my voyage in the East Indies (1901), and had a specimen of the ash-grey gibbon (*hylobates leuciscus*) living for several months in the garden of my house in Java. I have described the interesting habits of this ape (regarded by the Malays as the wild descendant of men who had lost their way) in my *Malayischen Reisebriefen* (chap. xi.). Psychologically, he showed a good deal of resemblance to the children of my Malay hosts, with whom he played and formed a very close friendship.
The second, larger and stronger, genus of Asiatic anthropoid ape is the orang (*satyrus*): he is now found only in the islands of Borneo and Sumatra. Selenka, who has lately published a very thorough *Study of the Development and Cranial Structure of the Anthropoid Apes* (1899), distinguishes ten races of the orang, which may, however, also be regarded as "local varieties or species." They fall into two sub-genera or genera: one group, *dissatyrus* (orang-bentang, Fig. 237), is distinguished for the strength of its limbs, and the formation of very peculiar and salient cheek-pads in the elderly male; these are wanting in the other group, the ordinary orang-outang (*eusatyrus*, Figs. 236, 238).
Several species have lately been distinguished in the two genera of the black African anthropoid apes (chimpanzee and gorilla). In the genus *anthropithecus* (or *anthropopithecus*,...
formerly *troglodytes*) the bald-headed chimpanzee, *A. calvus* (Fig. 230), and the gorilla-like *A. mafuca* (Fig. 241) differ very strikingly from the ordinary *anthropithecus niger* (Fig. 240), not only in the size and proportion of many parts of the body, but also in the peculiar shape of the head, especially the ears and lips, and in the hair and colour. The controversy that still continues as to whether these different forms of chimpanzee and orang are "merely local varieties" or "true species" is an idle one; as in all such disputes of classifiers there is an utter absence of clear ideas as to what a species really is.

Of the largest and most famous of all the anthropoid apes, the gorilla, Paschen has lately discovered a giant-form in the
interior of the Cameroons, which seems to differ from the ordinary species (gorilla gina, Fig. 242), not only by its unusual size and strength, but also by a special formation of the skull. This giant gorilla (gorilla gigas, Figs. 243, 244) is two metres and seven centimetres [six feet, ten inches] long; the span of its great arms is 280 centimetres [nine feet]; its powerful chest is twice as broad as that of a strong man.

The whole structure of this huge anthropoid ape is not merely very similar to that of man, but it is substantially the same. "The same 200 bones, arranged in the same way, form our internal skeleton; the same 300 muscles effect our movements; the same hair covers our skin; the same groups of ganglionic cells compose the ingenious mechanism of our brain; the same four-chambered heart is the central pump of
our circulation.” The really existing differences in the shape and size of the various parts are explained by differences in their growth, due to adaptation to different habits of life and unequal use of the various organs. This of itself proves morphologically the descent of man from the ape. We will return to the point in the twenty-third Chapter. But I wanted to point already to this important solution of “the question of questions,” because that agreement in the formation of the embryonic membranes and in foetal circulation which I have described affords a particularly weighty proof of it. It is the more instructive as even cenogenetic

Fig. 242.—Female gorilla. (From Brehm.)
Fig. 243.—Male giant-gorilla (gorilla gigas), from Yaunde, in the interior of the Cameroons. Killed by H. Paschen, stuffed by Umlauff.
structures may in certain circumstances have a high phylogenetic value. In conjunction with the other facts, it affords a striking confirmation of our biogenetic law.

Fig. 244. Giant-gorilla (*gorilla gigas*), held by three negroes, killed and photographed by H. Paschen in the interior of the Cameroons, at Yaunde. (From the Umlauf Museum at Hamburg, bought for 20,000 marks by the Rothschild Museum at Tring.) Total length of the body, from vertex to middle toe, 2.07 metres [six feet eight inches]; the span of the outstretched arms, from one middle-finger to the other, 2.8 metres [six feet nine inches].
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Blastophylls.</td>
<td>Blastoplat.</td>
<td>1. Outer skin.</td>
<td>Epithelial tissue of the outer skin, the mouth, and the anus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### A. Ectoderm.

Outer germinal layer.
Epiblast or ectoblast.
Upper limiting layer.
Skin-layer.

- **1. Horn-plate.** Lamella cornalis.
- **2. Medullary-plate.** Lamella medullaris.
- **3. Sense-plates** (local products of the sense-layer).
- **5. Muscle-plate.** Lamella muscularis.
- **7. Pronephridia.** Prostatic canals (later primitive kidneys and kidneys).
- **8. Sexual-plate.** Gonotoma.
- **9. Vascular strings.** Vas sanguiniferum.
- **10. Mesenteric-plate.** Lamella mesenterica.
- **11. Chorda-plate.** Endoblastus chordalis.
- **12a. ** Head-gut. Cephalogaster, branchial gut.
- **12b. ** Trunk-gut. Hepatogaster, liver-gut.

### B. Entoderm.

Inner germinal layer, hypoblast, or endoblast.
Lower limiting layer.
Gut-layer.

- **1. Chorda (axial rod).** Chorda dorsalis.
- **12a. ** Respiratory epithelium of the gullet and gill-plate, the hypobranchial groove, and the lungs.  
- **12b. ** Digestive epithelium of the stomach, liver, small and large intestines.  

### C. Mesoderm: Products of the coelom-somites.

- **12a. ** Head-gut. Cephalogaster, branchial gut.
- **12b. ** Trunk-gut. Hepatogaster, liver-gut.

### C. 1. Episomites (epimera) dorsal somites.

Primitive segments of the dorsal half. "Stem-zone" of the amniotes.

### C. 11. Hypo somites (hypomera) ventral somites.

Primitive segments of the ventral half. "Lateral plates" of the amniotes.

### C. II. Hyposomites.

Primitive segments of the ventral half. "Lateral plates" of the amniotes.

- **7. Pronephridia.** Prostatic canals (later primitive kidneys and kidneys).
- **8. Gonades (ovaries and spermaries).**
- **9. Dorsal artery** aorta and ventral vein (heart).
- **10. Mesentery and muscular wall of the gut.**
- **11. Chorda (axial rod).** Chorda dorsalis.
- **12a. ** Respiratory epithelium of the gullet and gill-plate, the hypobranchial groove, and the lungs.  
- **12b. ** Digestive epithelium of the stomach, liver, small and large intestines.  

**Epithelial tissue of the outer skin, the mouth, and the anus.**

**Ganglionic cells and nerve-fibres.**

**Differentiated sense epithelia.**

**Cutis, connective tissue, and smooth muscles of the mesenchyma.**

**Animal muscular tissue (striated).**

**Supporting tissue of the skeleton, cartilage and bones.**

**Urinary epithelium of the pronephridia and the later renal canals.**

**Gonidia (ova and spermatozoa).**

**Tissues of the vascular walls.**

**Lymph-cells.**

**Smooth muscles and mesenchym of the gut.**

**Chorda-tissue.**
EXPLANATION OF PLATES XV. AND XVI.

Human embryos in the foetal membranes. The six figures of these Plates are copied from the fine steel engravings illustrating The Development of Man and the Chick in the Egg, which Professor Erdl (Munich) published in 1845. All six figures represent human embryos in their natural size, enveloped in their membranes. In the first four figures (from the second to the sixth week of development) the malleohorion is cut away, and we see the tiny embryo enclosed in the amnion. The small umbilical vesicle (or rudimentary yolk-sac) hangs by a thin stalk out of the belly of the embryo, and lies in the pericardum or serocelom (the extra-embryonic body-cavity). (Cf. Plate XIV. and p. 305.)

Plate XV., Fig. 1. A human embryo with the foetal membranes of about the tenth day, natural size (Erdl, Plate III., Fig. 1).

Plate XV., Fig. 2. A human embryo with the foetal membranes of about the fourteenth day, natural size (Erdl, Plate III., Fig. 2).

Plate XV., Fig. 3. A human embryo with the foetal membranes of three weeks, natural size (Erdl, Plate III., Fig. 3).

Plate XV., Fig. 4. A human embryo with the foetal membranes of six weeks, natural size (Erdl, Plate III., Fig. 5).

Plate XV., Fig. 5. A human embryo of twelve weeks, within the foetal membranes, natural size (Erdl, Plate XI., Fig. 2). The embryo is completely enclosed in the amniotic sac, filled with water, as in a bath. The umbilical cord, which passes from the navel of the embryo to the chorion, is sheathed with a continuation of the amnion, which makes folds at its points of juncture. Above, the thickly clustered and branched chorion-villi form the placenta. The lower part of the chorion (cut away and lying in delicate folds) is smooth and tuftless. Underneath it the uterine decidua, also cut away and spread out, hangs in coarser folds. Head and limbs are already far advanced.

Plate XVI. A human embryo of five months, natural size (Erdl, Plate XIV.). The embryo is enclosed in the delicate, transparent amnion, which is cut open in front, so that the face and limbs stand out. The back is curved, the limbs drawn up, so that the embryo takes up as little space as possible in the ovum. The eyes are closed. From the navel the thick umbilical cord passes, in serpentine folds, over the right shoulder to the back, and from there to the spongy placenta (to the right below). The thin outermost membrane, lying in many folds, is the external foetal membrane, the chorion.